

AN ANALYTIC ENGLISH GRAMMAR

分析英语
语法

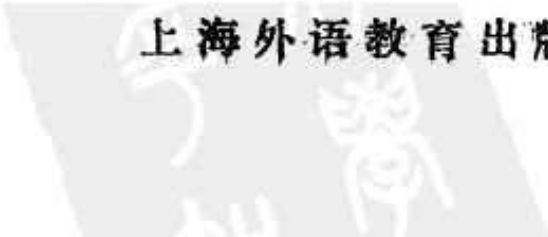
上海外语教育出版社

分析英语语法

AN ANALYTIC ENGLISH GRAMMAR

黄任 编著
顾绍熹 审校

上海外语教育出版社



分析英语语法
AN ANALYTIC ENGLISH GRAMMAR
黄任编著 顾绍熹审校

上海外语教育出版社出版

(上海外国语学院内)

江苏宜兴市印刷厂印刷

总发行所上海发行所发行

850×1156毫米 1/32 13.5印张 336千字

1988年2月第1版 1988年2月第1次印刷

印数：1—23,000册

ISBN 7—81009—316—9

H·202 定价：3.45元

序

本书取名《分析英语语法》(AN ANALYTIC ENGLISH GRAMMAR), 有两个方面的意思: 一是突出“分析性语言”(ANALYTIC LANGUAGE) 的特点, 二是吸收“话语分析”(DISCOURSE ANALYSIS) 的长处。”

“分析性语言”和“综合语言”(COMPREHENSIVE LANGUAGE) 的基本区别在于: 前者以词序和使用助动词、介词等表示词语间的语法关系, 而后者的语法关系则以词语本身的“屈折变化”(INFLECTION) 来说明。现代英语虽还保留着某些屈折变化形式, 但总的来说属分析性语言。本书从现代英语的实际出发, 将英语中的分析形式和综合形式结合起来加以说明, 既讲区分, 又讲联系; 既吸收了新鲜的理论, 又继承了传统的成果。这有助于比较全面地反映现代英语的使用情况, 也适合中国学生的接受习惯。

编排方法新颖是本书的一个明显特色。它摆脱了“词法——句法”的传统路子, 从英语句子的基本结构入手, 展开对句子划分及句型转化的描述, 并将主要词类与句法有机结合起来。对于不同的句法结构既作分类叙述, 又注意到不同结构之间的对照与转换, 不少章节还用图表或公式归纳说明某种用法, 以方便读者掌握基本要领。这本书的另一特色是以“话语分析”的某些理论为基础, 概述不同语言形式如何在交际过程中加以应用, 提出将形式、意义和使用作为语言教学中三个相互关联的环节。书中所引的例证均以现代英语语言材料为主要依据, 绝大部分取材于原著。例句选用时注意保留必要的上下文, 有的地方加上英语或汉语释义, 这有助于初学者比较准确地理解和使用。

许国璋教授看过本书稿后, 认为它“说理到家, 有益自学”。

这是一本实践性较强的语法读物，对英语专业学生、中等学校教师和广大英语爱好者都有参考价值。从试用的情况看，本书也是英语实践语法课的适宜教材，是一本值得推荐的好书。

上海外国语学院副院长

戴炜栋

1986. 12. 18

目 录

第一章	基础句型及其转换	1
1.1	引言	1
1.2	五种基础句型	2
1.3	基础句型的几种基本转换形式	3
1.4	基础句型的扩展	7
1.5	句子成份与词类	9
第二章	名词短语——性、格、数	11
2.1	引言	11
2.2	名词的性	11
2.3	名词的格	14
2.4	名词的数	20
第三章	限定词	29
3.1	引言	29
3.2	限定词与名词的搭配关系	29
3.3	关于限定词连用的两个问题	34
3.4	关于冠词使用的几点补充说明	37
3.5	限定词的修饰语	40
第四章	动词短语——动词的类别、形式与含义	43
4.1	引言	43
4.2	动词的主要类别与基本形式	43
4.3	动词的两种基本含义——动作与状态	50
第五章	时态(一): 一般现在时和一般过去时	55
5.1	引言	55
5.2	“一般现在时”	56
5.3	“一般过去时”	59

5.4	一般现在时形式与一般过去时形式的互换使用	61
第六章	时态(二): 将来时	63
6.1	引言	63
6.2	将来时的谓语动词形式	64
6.3	不同将来时结构的比较	70
6.4	“过去将来”	71
第七章	时态(三): 进行体与完成体	75
7.1	引言	75
7.2	“体”的结构及人称、时间概念	75
7.3	进行体	76
7.4	完成体	80
第八章	时态(四): 对比与转换	87
8.1	引言	87
8.2	一般现在时与现在进行体	87
8.3	一般过去时与现在完成体	89
8.4	一般过去时与过去进行体	90
8.5	一般现在时与一般将来时	92
8.6	几个常用句型的时体选择	93
8.7	时体转换	95
第九章	助动词	101
9.1	引言	101
9.2	助动词的屈折变化形式	101
9.3	助动词的否定形式	103
9.4	情态助动词的几种主要含义	105
9.5	情态助动词与肯定、否定及疑问句的搭配	110
第十章	被动	113
10.1	引言	113
10.2	被动结构的几种形式	114
10.3	主动结构表示被动含义的句型	121
10.4	关于被动结构的使用	122

第十一章	虚拟语气和条件句	125
11.1	引言	125
11.2	BE 型和 WERE 型虚拟式的用法	125
11.3	一般过去时和过去完成体表示“虚拟”的场合	129
11.4	分析型虚拟形式的使用	132
11.5	两类条件句	132
第十二章	修饰	141
12.1	引言	141
12.2	修饰语的类别	141
12.3	前置定语与后置定语	144
12.4	限制性与非限制性修饰语	147
12.5	三种类型的状语	149
12.6	修饰语使用中应注意的几个问题	155
第十三章	形容词与副词(一)	159
13.1	引言	159
13.2	形容词与副词的词形特点	159
13.3	形容词、副词的动态含义与静态含义	165
13.4	形容词、副词在句中的位置	170
第十四章	形容词与副词(二)	175
14.1	引言	175
14.2	比较级与最高级的词形变化	175
14.3	比较结构的四种基本类型	178
14.4	类似比较结构的几种形式	184
第十五章	介词	189
15.1	引言	189
15.2	介词短语的结构	189
15.3	介词与某些词类的习惯搭配	193
15.4	介词短语的几类基本含义	195
第十六章	并列与主从	203
16.1	引言	203

16.2	以 and 为代表的并列连词	203
16.3	以 but 为代表的并列连词	208
16.4	以 or 为代表的并列连词	210
16.5	以 for 为代表的并列连词	211
16.6	以 nor 为代表的并列连词	213
16.7	平行并列	214
16.8	顺序并列	215
16.9	并列结构的使用	218
16.10	主从结构	221
第十七章	主从复合句(一): 名词性分句	225
17.1	引言	225
17.2	名词分句作主语	225
17.3	名词性分句作宾语	227
17.4	名词性分句作主语补语	229
17.5	名词性分句作同位语	230
17.6	名词性分句连接词的选用	231
第十八章	主从复合句(二): 形容词性分句	235
18.1	引言	235
18.2	限制性定语分句与非限制性定语分句	235
18.3	关系代词的选用	238
18.4	三个常用的关系副词: when, where, why	245
18.5	定语分句的理解与翻译中的两个问题	247
第十九章	主从复合句(三): 副词性分句	249
19.1	引言	249
19.2	修饰性状语分句	249
19.3	评注性状语分句	257
19.4	连接性状语分句	259
第二十章	非限定动词与非限定分句(一)——词性特征及句法作用	263
20.1	引言	263

20.2	非限定动词的多重词性	263
20.3	不定式的句法作用	264
20.4	-ing 分词的句法作用	271
20.5	-ed 分词的句法作用	274
第二十一章 非限定动词与非限定分句(二)——搭配与含义		
.....		277
21.1	引言	277
21.2	非限定分句的逻辑主语	277
21.3	不定式结构和 -ing 分词结构与动词的搭配	279
21.4	-ed 分词的含义	285
第二十二章 非限定动词与非限定分句(三)——句型转换		
.....		291
22.1	引言	291
22.2	非限定分句转换为名词性分句	291
22.3	非限定分句转换为形容词性分句	294
22.4	非限定分句转换为副词性分句	295
22.5	非限定分句转换为并列分句	300
22.6	非限定分句与限定分句转换中应注意的几个问题	301
第二十三章 附加疑问句		305
23.1	引言	305
23.2	陈述部分与附加疑问部分的对应	305
23.3	附加疑问句的含义与使用	310
第二十四章 THERE 句型和 IT 句型		315
24.1	引言	315
24.2	THERE 句型与其他句型间的转换	315
24.3	THERE 引导的分句	318
24.4	IT 的几种基本用法	322
24.5	THERE 与 IT 句型的转换及使用	327
第二十五章 否定		329
25.1	引言	329

25.2	英语否定结构的几种基本类型	329
25.3	否定范围	334
25.4	多余否定与含蓄否定	340
第二十六章	替代与省略	345
26.1	引言	345
26.2	替代与省略的几种基本类型	345
26.3	替代与省略使用中的几点说明	348
第二十七章	主题与重心	359
27.1	引言	359
27.2	句子的主题	359
27.3	句子的重心	367
第二十八章	变体与共核	373
28.1	引言	373
28.2	变体与共核的含义	373
28.3	美国英语和英国英语	375
28.4	口语与书面语	383
第二十九章	语法分析与话语分析	389
29.1	引言	389
29.2	日常交际话语	389
29.3	语句衔接	396
29.4	话语结构模式	400
29.5	话语分析与文章写作	404
索引	409
编后记	418

第一章 基础句型及其转换

1.1 引言

英语句子有短有长，有的结构简单，有的结构复杂，形式上千变万化。但从单个句子的基本结构上看，一般都是“主语+谓语”。例如：

Time flies.

Time and tide wait for no man.

A man who makes the best use of his time has none to spare.

近年来国外和国内出版的语法书中，有的将英语句子的基本结构概括为“名词短语+动词短语”，即：Sentence — Noun phrase + Verb phrase。以字母代号表示为： $S \rightarrow NP + VP$ 。

所谓名词短语和动词短语，都是从句法角度而言。名词短语的核心是名词，动词短语的核心是动词。它们分别称之为名词短语或动词短语的中心词。上述第一个例句里只有一个名词和一个动词，它们也分别构成名词短语和动词短语，因为它们不同于词典里的单词，而是分别担任句中的一个成分，并有相应的词形变化包括句首字母大写和动词的第三人称单数一般现在时形式。

关于名词短语和动词短语的构成可以用下面的公式表示：

$NP - Det + N.$

$VP - Aux + V.$

上述 NP 公式中的 Det 代表限定词。关于限定词，我们将

在第三章讨论。关于 VP, 见第四章引言。

1.2 五种基础句型

A. S. Hornby 在 Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English 中列出了二十五种句型, 作为英语句子的一些基本形式。这些句型分主语和谓语两部分。由于谓语动词的不同特点, 在一些句型里出现宾语或补语等连带成分。从这数十种句型里, 可以归纳出五个基础句型:

- 1) Intransitive verb pattern — Intransitive verb with zero object:

不及物动词句型: S · V (主语 · 谓语动词)

Every little helps.

Extremes meet.

- 2) Link verb pattern — Link verb with complement:

系表句型: S · V · SC (主语 · 谓语动词 · 主语补语)

Delays are dangerous.

Time is money.

- 3) Monotransitive verb pattern — Transitive verb with one object:

单宾及物动词句型: S · V · O (主语 · 谓语动词 · 宾语)

Failure teaches success.

Haste makes waste.

- 4) Ditransitive verb pattern — Transitive verb with two objects:

双宾及物动词句型 S · V · IO · DO (主语 · 谓语动词 · 间接宾语 · 直接宾语)

Studies will give you directions.

Children tell people the truth.

- 5) Complex transitive verb pattern — Transitive verb

with object and complement: (宾补动词句型)

宾补动词句型 (S·V·O·OC (主语·谓语动词·宾语·宾语补足语))

The mathematics makes men subtle.

You should call a spade a spade.

不及物动词句型和单宾及物词句型中,有些动词要求带状语。因此,有的语法书在上述五种基础句型之外,还加上两种带状语的句型:

S·V·A (主语·谓语动词·状语)

Shelley lived from 1792 to 1822.

Mr Harrison is flying to Australia.

S·V·O·A (主语·谓语动词·宾语·状语)

The king put him into prison.

This firm has treated its workers well.

1.3 基础句型的几种基本转换形式

基础句型的基本转换属于基础句型单句本身的结构变化,不增加修饰语,也不与其他基础句型组合。基础句型的基本转换形式有否定句、疑问句、被动句、祈使句等。

1.3 A 否定句

1) 用否定词 not. 例如:

The Rhine is in Europe, but the Nile is not in Europe.

The slaves has much sufferings. They had not any freedom.

Loretta might have been away. She can not have been waiting.

Many drops make a shower. Two blacks do not make a white.

2) 用否定词 *no* 例如:

John had *no* job. (= He hadn't a job.)

There is *no* milk. (= There isn't any milk.)

The frost did *no* damage. (= It didn't do any damage.)

cf: Miss Green is *no* beauty. (= She is not at all beautiful.)

That man is *no* fool. (= He is intelligent.)

3) 用否定副词。例如:

He has *never* been out in the west.

He is eighty-five now and *hardly ever* (= almost never) goes out these days.

Although we are in the same school, we *seldom* see each other.

She was a sports fan but was *scarcely at all* (= not at all) interested in music.

1.3 B 疑问句

1) 一般疑问句, 也称 Yes-No 疑问句, 例如:

This book is for you. — Is the book for me?

I have an umbrella. — Have you an umbrella?

cf: Do you have an umbrella? (AmE)

They have gone. — Have they gone?

He painted the door red — Did he paint the door red?

2) 特殊疑问句, 也称 Wh 疑问句, 分两种情况:

若就原句的主语部分或主语中心词的修饰语提问, 则在句首用以 Wh 开首的疑问词 *who*, *what*, *which* 等, 原句词序不变。例如:

The Chairman gave him the floor. — *Who gave him the floor?*

The cat is in the bag. — *What is in the bag?*

This is Henry's signature. — *Which is Henry's signature?*

That apple tastes sour. — *Which apple tastes sour?*

China's team won the Champion. — *Which team won the Champion?*

Taylor's record has been broken. — *Whose record has been broken?*

如果提问是主语以外的其他成份,则除句首用 Wh 疑问词以外,都须用一般疑问句的词序。例如:

She is going to stay at home. — *Where is she going to stay?*

The flower smells fragrant. — *How does the flower smell?*

I lent him a few books. — *What did you lend him?*

The professor is giving a lecture. — *What is the professor doing?*

The boy handed her the coffee. — *Who did the boy hand the coffee?*

She is wearing her mother's shirt-waist. — *Whose shirt-waist is she wearing?*

The plane is to take off at 1305. — *At what time is the plane to take off?*

3) 选择疑问句, 问句本身包含着两个或两个以上的答案, 供对方选择其一, 供选择的答案之间通常用 or 连接, 句末用降调。例如:

Would you like coffee or cocoa?

Shall we go home or stay here for the night?

Which do you prefer, black tea or green tea?

How are you going there? By air or by sea?

Can I give you a gin, or a whisky, or a beer?

4) 附加疑问句,由“陈述句+附加疑问”构成。例如:

It's a fine day, isn't it?

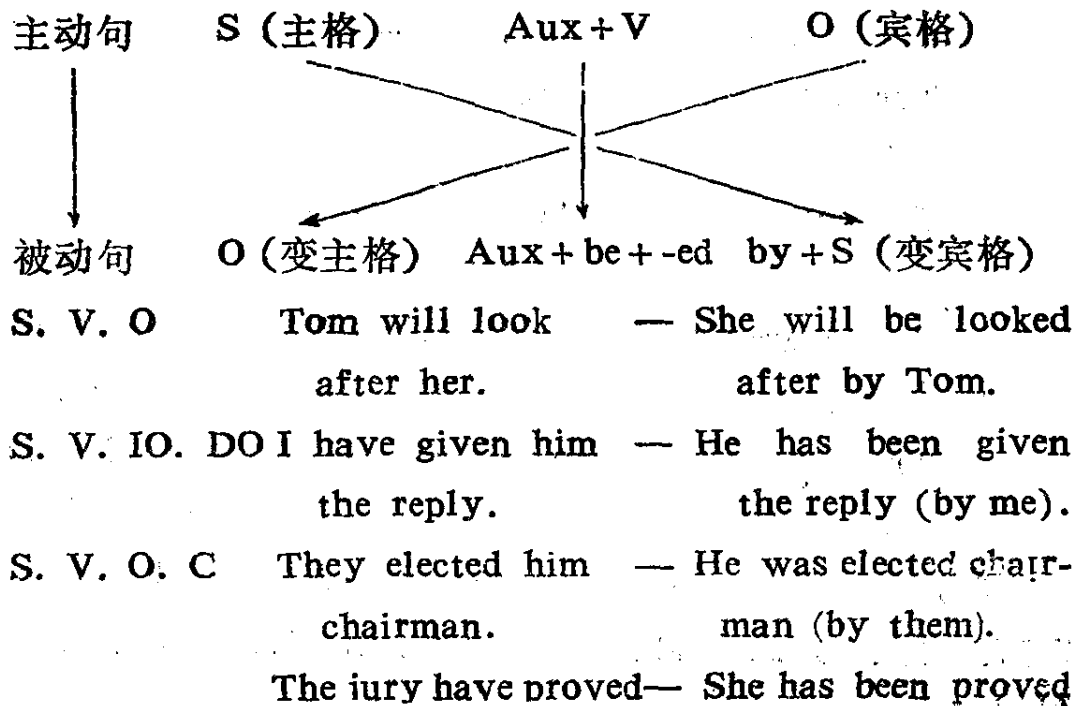
There is no room for my car, is there?

Mary failed her exams, didn't she?

We ought to go, oughtn't we?

1.3 C 被动句

一般说来,带宾语的三种基本句型都可以转化为被动句:将原句的宾语移到主语位置(代词由宾格变为主格形式);原谓语中的 Aux 保留(注意数的变化),主动词为“be+ -ed 分词”;原句的主语变作介词 by 的宾语置句尾(注意代词用宾格形式)。以图式表示为:



her innocent.

innocent by the jury.

His friends persuaded — He was persuaded to
him to marry her. marry by his friends.

1.3 D 祈使句

祈使句用于下达命令、指示，提出要求、劝告或建议等。句中动词用原形。祈使句中的第二人称主语通常不表示出来。例如：

Stop working on Section B.

Don't put off till tomorrow what you should do today.

Do as you are told, will you?

Wait for the next bus, why don't you?

有时用主语，是为了提醒听话人注意，也可能是表示说话人的急躁、厌烦或恼怒等不愉快的情绪。例如：

Now you get back to the queue!

Helen do the note-taking.

You let me pass!

You mind your own business!

用于第一、三人称的祈使句通常用 Let 起首的句型。例如：

Let's go together. (Meaning: Won't you go together with us/me?)

Let us try again if you don't want to. (Meaning: Please allow us to try again.)

Let him be there by ten o'clock tomorrow.

Please let us go, will you?

1.4 基础句型的扩展

基础句型的扩展是比较复杂的句型转换形式，它包括增加修饰语和由单句组成复合句。

1.4A 增加修饰语

修饰语主要分形容词性修饰语和副词性修饰语，前者通常叫做定语，以修饰名词的形容词为代表，后者叫做状语，修饰动词、形容词或整个句子，以副词为代表。介词短语兼有上述两种修饰语的功能。例如：

Rida passed the exam.

-- Rida passed the *final* exam *yesterday*.

The engineer was my teacher.

— The *old* engineer *in the research center* was my *former* teacher of physics at Eden.

注意英语中修饰语的位置：一般说来，单个词作定语时位于修饰对象之前，介词短语位于修饰对象之后，状语大都位于修饰对象之后(详见 12.2B)

1.4B 单句组成复句

两个或两个以上的单句通过一定的形式组成复句后，这些单句称为分句。从分句间的关系可将复句划分为两大类：

1) 通过并列连词 *and*, *or*, *but* 等组成的复句称为并列复句，简称为并列句 (Compound Sentence) 例如：

The acting is excellent *and* the music is fascinating.

Three boys went for the exam *but* only one passed.

You can come yourself *or* someone else may come instead.

2) 由一个分句(也称从句)充当另一个分句(也称主句)的主语、宾语、补语、定语、状语或同位语等的句子，称为主从复合句，简称为复合句 (Complex Sentence)，或称包孕句 (Embedding Sentence)。主从复句中的连接词较多，包括从属联词、关系代词、关系副词，如 *what*, *when*, *where*, *which*, *who*, *that*, etc. (详见第十六章)。例如：

What you've told us will be taken into consideration.

(主语)

I can't imagine *why he hasn't shown up* (宾语)

My point is *that we must try and see*. (补语)

They will show you the house *where Lu Xun once lived*.

(定语)

He didn't come yesterday *because he was running a fever*.

(状语)

I quite agree with the saying *that life is measured by thought and action, not by time*. (同位语)

1.5 句子成份与词类

前面讲过，英语句子的基本结构是主语加谓语，其中主语和谓语动词称为句子的主要成份，由不同谓语动词引出的表语、宾语或补语称为句子的连带成份，句子基本结构扩大引出的定语、状语称为句子的修饰成份，不同的句子成份要求不同的词类担任，而有时一类词又可以充当不同的句子成份。现将句子成份和词类的关系列表如下：

句子成份		常用的词类
主要成份	主语 谓语动词	名词、代词 动词 (包括助动词)
连带成份	宾语 补语	名词、代词 名词、代词、形容词、副词
修饰成份	定语 状语	形容词、名词 副词

三点说明

1) 动词的非限定形式，包括不定式。-ing 和 -ed 分词，它们除了动词的特征外，还有名词的功能，有时能起形容词或副词的作用，然而 -ed 分词多用于形容词或副词。关于动词非限定形式

的用法，详见本书第20、21、22章。

2) 介词、限定词、连词等均属结构词，须与名词、动词等构成一定的词组形式担任句子成份，或仅在分句间起纽带作用。参见第3、15、16章。

3) 在用词造句时，我们有时直接用某个句子成分，有时则要将它们变为短语，特别是名词短语和动词短语。例如我们用英语表达“昨晚小熊猫作了精采表演”这句话时，可以从词典里查出 yesterday, young, panda, give, wonderful, show 等词，但不能依照汉语的词序直接将它们组成句子，而应该说：

The young panda gave a wonderful show yesterday.

在上面这句话中，只有 young, wonderful 和 yesterday 三个词是直接用作句中的修饰语，其中 yesterday 的位置还根据英语的一般习惯放在句子末尾；“the panda”和“a show”都是名词短语，gave 是“give 变为过去时”时形成的动词短语。

第二章 名词短语

——性、格、数

2.1 引言

前面讲过,名词短语由“限定词 + 名词”构成。英语中的名词在句中出现时往往冠以 a, an, the, my, every, these 等词,它们即为限定词。由限定词和名词构成的名词短语在句中担任主语、宾语、补语等等成份。名词短语中的名词称为“中心词”(HEAD WORD),它有性、数、格的区别。

2.2 名词的性

英语中的名词的性主要是两种,即阳性(MASCULINE GENDER)和阴性(FEMININE GENDER),有生命的名词有时还用通性(COMMON GENDER),既可以用来表示阳性,也可以表示阴性;而表示非生物及抽象概念的名词无性别之分,称为中性(NEUTER GENDER)名词。

2.2A 不同性别名词的表示法

1) 以不同的名词表示不同的性。例如:

阳性	阴性	通性
man	woman	person
father	mother	parent
husband	wife	spouse
son, boy	daughter, girl	child, baby, infant
king	queen	monarch, sovereign, ruler
cock	hen	chicken, fowl



boar	sow	pig
stallion	mare	horse

有些名词只有阳性、阴性,但无通性;也有些名词只用通性。

例如:

阳性	阴性	通性
uncle	aunt	**
nephew	niece	**
widower	widow	**
bridegroom	bride	**
**	**	cousin
**	**	human being

2) 阳性名词加后缀构成阴性名词,这是英语中综合语言特征的表现形式之一。例如:

阳性	阴性	阳性	阴性
actor	actress	waiter	waitress
host	hostess	sculptor	sculptress
master	mistress	lion	lioness
prince	princess	tiger	tigress

注意上述后缀并不是一概简单地将阳性名词加上 -ess, 往往还会在拼法及读音上引起某些变动。另外, hero 变阴性 heroine, executor 变阴性 executrix 等, 其后缀源自外来语。

3) 通过加阳性、阴性名词于通性名词构成不同性别的复合名词, 这叫做“合成法”, 包括:

在通性名词前边加表示不同性别的名词, 如: boy/male cousin, girl/female cousin; boy/man student, girl/woman student; manservant, maidservant; etc. 又如: King's Counsel, Queen's Counsel; paternal plant, maternal plant 等也属此类。

在中性或通性名词后面加表示不同性别的名词，如：baby-boy, baby-girl; congressman, congresswoman; landlord, landlady; militiaman, militiawoman; policeman, policewoman; etc.

加 cock, hen 表示禽鸟的雄雌，如：cock sparrow, hen sparrow; peacock, peahen; Turkey cock, Turkey hen。

加 bull, cow 表示某些较大动物的公母，如：bull-elephant, cow-elephant; bull-whale, cow-whale; bull-seal, cow-seal。

加 buck, doe 表示某些较小动物的雄雌；如：buck-mouse, doe-mouse; buck-rabbit, doe-rabbit。

以不同性别的代词表示不同的性，如：he-bear, she-bear; he-goat, she-goat; he-wolf, she-wolf。

加某些常见的男女名称表示不同的性，也是一种可能见到的形式，如：billy-goat, nanny-goat; tom-cat, queen cat; etc。

2.2B 代词的性别表示法

1) 一般说来，代替阳性单数名词用 he，代替阴性单数名词用 she，代替中性单数名词或不可数名词用 it，而各类复数名词一律用 they 来代替。

2) 表示泛指人的单数通性名词，传统习惯是用 he，(包括 his, him, himself 等)。例如：

Every cook praises *his* own broth.

He is a good friend that speaks well of us behind our backs.

3) 为了照顾女性因素，有时用 he or she, his or her 等。例如：

If a player wins these three rounds, *he or she* will get the championship.

An examinee who moves to another seat must write the new seat number on *his or her* answer sheet.

4) 有时用 *they* (*their*, *them*) 与泛指第三人称单数呼应。例如:

Every criminal's guilt is not written in *their* foreheads.

Every member may have *their* recreations.

No child can be independent of *their* parents.

3) 地理、组织名称、一般动物、无生命的物体、表示抽象概念的名词等,单数通常用中性代词 *IT*。但若突出感情色彩,用拟人化手法,也用表示人的 *HE/SHE*。例如:

England lies to the west of the European continent, separated from *it* by the English Channel.

China has a history of over 5,000 years. We are proud of *her* great culture.

The hovercraft (气垫船) is a sort of boat which moves over land or water with a strong force air underneath lifting *it* above the ground, sea, etc.

What a lovely ship! *She* is another 10,000-ton oceangoing steamer we've turned out this year.

Experience keeps no school; *She* teaches *her* pupils only.

The wolf in sheep's clothing hid *himself* among the flock of sheep.

2.3 名词的格

2.3A 三种属格的形式

名词有三种格:主格、宾格和属格。主格与宾格同形。本节只讲属格的三种形式: S属格 OF 属格和双重属格。

1) S 属格,指在名词词尾加 “S” 或 “'” 总的原则是:如该名词词尾是字母 s, 则一般只需加 “'” 就可以了。具体说来可以分以下四种情况:

一、不以 S 字母结尾的名词 (不论单、复数) 一律加 “'s”;
brother's, women's, Elizabeth's, etc.

二、以 S 字母结尾的名词单数两种方式均可 boss'(s),
Thomas'(s), etc.

三、以 S 字母结尾的名词复数只应加 “'”; brothers',
officers', etc.

四、上述原则同样适用于复合名词或名词词组: James the
First's foreign policy, the woman next door's husband,
my brother-in-law's invitation, the husband and wife's
obligations, the sons and daughters' right for education, etc.

至于在介词短语 for God's/goodness (')/pity (')/mercy's
sake, for safety(') sake, for convenience' sake, for conscience
(')s sake 中,情况比较特殊,是加 “'s”, “'”, 还是全都省去,
应随使用习惯决定。

另外,某些以 S 结尾的希腊或拉丁语源的专有名称只需加
“'”: Jesus' words, Cervantes' Don Quixote, etc.

2) OF 属格都是在 of 右边加名词短语 (包括代词)如 a brief
account of the matter, the story of the captain and his team,
the ten of us, ten of their books, ten of theirs, etc.

3) 上属两种属格并用时构成双重属格。例如: a law of
Newton's, several paintings of the teenagers', etc.

2.3B S 属格与 OF 属格的某些相同含义与用法

1) 表示所属关系,如: China's territory, the territory of
China; Mr Henry's address, the address of Mr Henry; etc.

2) 表示主谓关系,如: her father's death, the death of her
father; the train's arrival, the arrival of the train etc.

3) 表示动宾关系,如: the king's overthrow, the overthrow
of the king; the prisoners' release, the release of the prisoners

(注：表示动宾关系时，常用 of 属格，使用 S 属格的情况少。)

4) 表示事物的来源、出处，如：the editor's words, words of the editor; the company's new products, new products of the company; etc.

2.3C S 属格与 OF 属格使用中的几点区别

1) 通常习惯是 S 属格用来指人或较高级的动物，OF 属格用来指无生命的东西。例如：

Helen's new school is not far from here.

We need to repair the roof of the barn.

That blind man happened to get hold of the elephant's trunk.

在实际使用中，有两点值得注意：

一是 OF 属格往往用于较长的名词短语，包括指人的短语。例如下述各组中的 (b) 句在结构形式上较匀称，含义表达也确切些：

(a) *The man on the street's opinion is often odd.*

(b) *The opinion of the man on the street is often odd.*

(a) *The people who live next door to my sister's junk-filled yard is an eyesore.*

(b) *The junk-filled yard of the people who live next door to my sister is an eyesore.*

二是避免将一种属格形式连用。例如下述各句由于 S 或 OF 属格连用，读起来别扭，意思也不明白：

(?) *My wife's first husband's only child's grandfather was there.*

(?) *The grandfather of the only child of the first husband of my wife was there.*

象这样的句子，拟改为下述结构较好：

The grandfather of the only child of my wife's first husband was there.

或干脆改为: The father of my wife's first husband was there.

2) 在下列几种情况下须用 S 属格而不用 OF 属格:

一是表示人或物的类别、属性。例如:

Professor Hofman graduated from a *teachers' college* 15 years ago. (相当于 a college for teachers.)

There's a good variety of *children's clothing* at the exhibition.

A *bachelor's degree* refers to a first university degree in any of several subjects, such as Bachelor of Science (B.Sc.).

Mr Gunter once worked as a *ship's carpenter*, and his wife was a *lady's maid*.

其次,表示某人的家,或表示某个地方(如教堂、学校、店铺等),也要用 S 属格。例如:

Shall we meet at your *sister's (house)* or at my *aunt and uncle's*?

Joe lives near *St. Paul's (Cathedral)* in London:

Where's *St. Jame's (Palace)*?

She was graduated at *Barnard's (College)*.

Pickford's have imported a wide range of Chinese cotton prints. (注意句中店铺一般作集体名词看,后跟动词复数。)

You can send the laundry to the *cleaner's*.

上句中 the cleaner's 也可省略为 the cleaners. 但注意这种 S 属格的省略形式不同于专有名词复数表示某人的一家。

试比较: I've invited *the Dickenses* to our garden party.

第三,在某些习语中惯用 S 属格。例如:

To know one's self is true progress.

The grocery store is only a stone's throw away. You can walk there within a few minutes.

类似的习语还有 *at one's fingers' ends/tips*, *at one's wit's end*, *at the death's door*, *at the sword's points*, *a hair's breath*, *in one's mind's eye*, *in life's struggle*, *out of harm's way*, *to one's heart's content*, *a bird's eye view*, etc.

3) 下述两类结构中须用 OF 属格:

一是以“限定词 + 形容词 (或分词)”表示一类人的结构(此结构形式详见13.3C1)。例如:

The care of the aged should never be neglected.

Her poem exemplifies the great ambitions of the young.

Whatever you have done to improve the livelihood of the poor will be noted in my book.

The committee have examined the demands of the sick and wounded, and a resolution is said to have been adopted.

二是带有后置修饰语或同位语的名词短语也用 OF 属格。例如:

John Smith Junior lived up to the expectations of his father, known to be the uncrowned king in (playing) billiards.

Who's the coach of the woman chess team which was reorganized last week?

Can you tell the story of the widow woman who kept a hen that laid an egg every morning?

The tutor of Rawlinson, the post-graduate you met the other day, will come and guide our studies as well.

2.3D 双重属格的使用

1) 双重属格形式的使用可以概括为如下结构:不定含义的限定词 + 名词(指人或物) + 双重属格(确指某人)。例如:

There is an introduction to *The Cloud*, a poem of Shelley's.

Which book of Dr Du Bois' did you quote from?

Some questions of young Edison's baffled his schoolmaster completely.

The child can recite two sonnets of William Shakespeare's.

上述结构要求的所谓“不定含义的限定词”,包括不定冠词、疑问代词、不定代词以及基数词等。注意不可以用定冠词 *the*。但,有时却能见到 *this*, *that* 等带确指意义的限定词组成的双重属格,这时句子往往带有特殊感情色彩。例如:

This brilliant description of John Keat's brings us to the great beauties of autumn. (表示赞美之情。)

To be frank, that perfect plan of your brother's is no thing but wishful thinking. (表示否定态度)。

Where's that pen of yours? (没有特殊感情色彩。注意不可以用 *the* 代替 *that*。)

2) 当中心词是 *autography*, *bust*, *photography*, *picture*, *printing*, *portrait*, *statue* 等词时,用双重属格修饰,是指某人的收藏品。例如:

Here's an autograph of Mr. Harry's, whose collections of signature are all by famous figures.

试比较下面两句:

(a) This is an autograph of Mr Harry.

(b) This is Mr Harry's autograph.

上述句 (a) 的意思是指“哈利先生本人签的名”,又如 *a book autographed by the author, Mr Harry*” (作者哈利先生亲自签

名的一本书), “an autographed photo of Mr Harry” (一张哈利先生的签名照片)。

上述句 (b) 的含义不确切, 可以理解为他亲自签的名, 也可以理解为他所收藏的别人的笔迹。

3) 当中心词是 criticism, condemnation, invasion 等带动态含义的名词时, 如用双重属格修饰, 通常表示主谓关系; 若用 of 属格修饰, 通常表示宾动关系。试比较:

Here's a criticism of Mr Stevenson's; It's so helpful that I feel very much obliged to him.

(Meaning: opinions by Stevenson — 史蒂文森提出的批评意见。)

I've heard a lot of criticism of Mr Stevenson, but I don't agree to any; in fact, Stevenson is right.

(Meaning: opinions about Stevenson — 别人对史蒂文森的批评。)

这里如果用 Mr Stevenson's criticism, 则和前面的 Harry's autography 一样, 有时会产生歧义。

4) 若中心词是其他一般名词, 用双重属格修饰, 意在说明“几个中的一个”即强调“不止一个”。例如:

Joseph is a student of Professor Henry's.

(含义: He is one of the students of Professor Henry.)

Do you mean that tall young man? Well, he's a student of Professor Henry.

(这里也可以说: “... he's Professor Henry's student.”)

2.4 名词的数

2.4A 名词由单数到复数的规则变化

1) 大部分名词是加 -s 词尾, 如: accident — accidents; bath — baths; image — images; etc.

2) 以 -s, -x, -z, -ch, -sh 等结尾的名词需加 -es, 如: glass — glasses; prefix — prefixes; buzz — buzzes; watch — watches; brush — brushes; etc.

3) 以“辅音字母 + Y 结尾的名词应变 y 为 i 后加 -es, 如: story — stories; lily — lilies; duty — duties; etc.

4) 以 -f 或 -fe 结尾的名词通常是将核词尾变 v 后加 -es, 如: shelf — shelves; knife — knives; leaf — leaves; life — lives; etc.

5) 以“辅音字母 + O”结尾的名词中, 一些专有名词或缩写词加 -s 词尾, 如: Filipino — Filipinos, Eskimo — Eskimos; photo — photos, piano — pianos; etc.

少数既可加 -s, 也可加 -es, 如: cargo — cargo (e)s, domino — domino (e)s, buffalo — buffalo (e)s, etc.

其余的一般加 -es, 例如: hero — heroes, potato — potatoes, Negro — Negroes, tomato — tomatoes, volcano — volcanoes, etc.

但是, 规则变化中也有某些例外, 如: loch — lochs, stomach — stomachs, Germany — two Germanys, Henry — Henrys, roof — roofs, chief — chiefs, cliff — cliffs, gulf — gulfs, safe — safes, dwarf — dwarfs (dwarves), handkerchief — handkerchiefs (handkerchieves), etc.

2.4 B 名词复数的不规则变化形式

对名词复数的不规则变化形式, 有时可根据其变化特征归类, 以助记忆。例如: foot — feet, tooth — teeth; mouse — mice; louse — lice; child — children, ox — oxen; addendum — addenda, erratum — errata, stratum — strata; analysis — analyses, ellipsis — ellipses, basis — bases, thesis — theses, synopsis, synopses, diagnosis — diagnoses; etc.

2.4C -s 词尾与名词复数

1) 通常作复数用的以 -s 结尾的名词有:

表示群岛、山脉、瀑布的专有名词, 如: the Philippines, the Himalayas, the Niagara Falls, etc.

某些表示由两个部分构成的物体的名词, 如: scissors, trousers, spectacles, shears, tongs, etc.

某些以“-ing + s”结尾的名词(有的书称之为动名词复数), 如: bookings, belongings, earnings, lodgings, surroundings, sweepings, etc.

此外, 还有一些通常用于复数形式的名词, 如: archives (档案)、contents (目录、要旨)、eaves (房檐)、outskirts (郊外)、suburbs (郊区、边缘)、paper-backs (平装书)、the Middle Ages (中世纪)、the Shanghai Mansions (上海大厦)、annals (编年史), 等。

2) 通常作单数用的以 -s 结尾的名词有:

一些表示“学科”的名词, 如: classics (经典著作)、politics (政治)、electronics (电子学)、linguistics (语言学)。

一些表示游戏项目的名词, 如: billiards (弹子戏)、bowls (滚木球戏)、draughts (西洋象棋),

一些表示疾病的名称, 如 arthritis (关节炎)、diabetes (糖尿病)。

一些地名或机构名称, 如: the United States, Athens, Brussels, Wales, the United Nations, General Motors, etc.

3) 一些不以 -s 结尾的集体名词, 如 militia, police, clergy, cattle, poultry, vermin 等, 在句中常用于复数含义。

但有些集体名词, 如 merchandise, machinery, foliage 等, 通常用作单数。

还有些集体名词, 如 audience, board, class, couple, crew, committee, family, firm, government, jury, party, public 等

既可用作单数也可用作复数。作单数时是在意义上将该集体名词看作一个整体,作复数意义时是指该集体的成员们。试比较:

The football team has been reorganized. (单数含义)

— How are the team? (复数含义)

— Oh, they are very optimistic.

2.4D 数的形式与意义

1) 前节中的一些例句表明,名词数的形式与意义之间并不是简单的对应关系。有时形式上是复数,含义上却是单数;反之,有时单数的名词形式却表示复数意思。因此,往往需要结合句中的使用情况来判断某个名词是表示单数还是复数。例如:

The vanguards made a route sign at every crossroads. (复数形式单数意义)

Man/A man should not look down upon Woman/a woman. (单数形式复数意义)

2) 有时名词由单数形式变复数形式后,不仅表示数量上的增加,还会引起某些含义上的变化。这包括:

一是某些名词的复数形式可能出现与单数不同的其他含义。

例如:

{ to post a letter / two letters (信件)
{ a man of letters (学问)

{ a fine spectacle / splendid spectacles (壮观场面)
{ to wear spectacles (眼镜)

{ a red colour/to distinguish between the colours (颜色)
{ to salute the colours (旗帜)

{ a slave to custom/to stand against social customs (风俗习惯)
{ to pass the Customs (海关)

二是有些外来词原有复数形式,引入英语以后,又产生一种

复数形式,这两种复数形式有时含义不同。例如:

外来词	语源	英语复数	外来复数
appendix	L.	appendixes (盲肠)	appendices (附录)
index	L.	indexes (索引)	indices (指数)
genius	L.	geniuses (天才)	genii (精灵)
stamen	L.	stamens (雄蕊)	stamina (耐力)

三是有些名词的原形既可以用来指单数,又可用来指复数,即单、复数同形;有的也可变为复数形式,强调说明该事物的不同类型。例如:

a sheep, two sheep, various kinds of sheep;

a fish, two fish, various kinds of fishes;

a fruit, two fruits, various kinds of fruits

四是有些物质名词有复数形式,含义有所不同。试比较:

{ to sell hot coffee (卖热咖啡)

{ to have two coffees (喝两杯咖啡)

{ fresh water (淡水)

{ territorial waters (领海)

{ a cargo of grain (一船谷物)

{ a few grains of rice (几粒米)

{ some white paper (一些白纸)

{ the evening papers (晚报)

2.4E 单位词与数

英语里的单位词,大都与不可数名词搭配,有些要与可数名词搭配,构成“限定词 + 单位词 + of + 名词”这样的名词短语形式。单位词与名词的搭配情况大体可以分为四类:

1) 表示“个数”(一片、一个等)的单位词通常与不可数名词搭配。例如:

限定词	单位词举例	of	名 词 举 例
a	piece	of	advice, bacon, bread cake, work, music furniture
a	bit	of	chalk, cloth, evidence, paper, news, information ink warmth
an	item	of	news, information
an	article	of	clothing, luggage
a	cake	of	soap, mud
a	bar	of	chocolate, soap, gold, iron
a	drop	of	food, oil, water
an	ear	of	wheat, rice, maize, or any other
a	grain	of	cereals,
a	loaf	of	bread, cheese
a	lump	of	sugar, clay, money
a	slice	of	bread, meat, territory; life, good luck

2) 表示容积(一瓶、一桶等)的单位词通常与物质名词(不可数名词)相搭配。例如:

a bowl of thin gruel, a pail (ful) of water, a bucket (ful) of milk, a glass (ful) of beer, a cup of black tea, a spoonful of soup, a truckload of coal, a lorryload of cement, etc.

3) 表示行为、动态(一阵、表现等)的单位词通常与带动作含义的名词或某些动词的 -ing 形式(或称动名词)相搭配。例如:

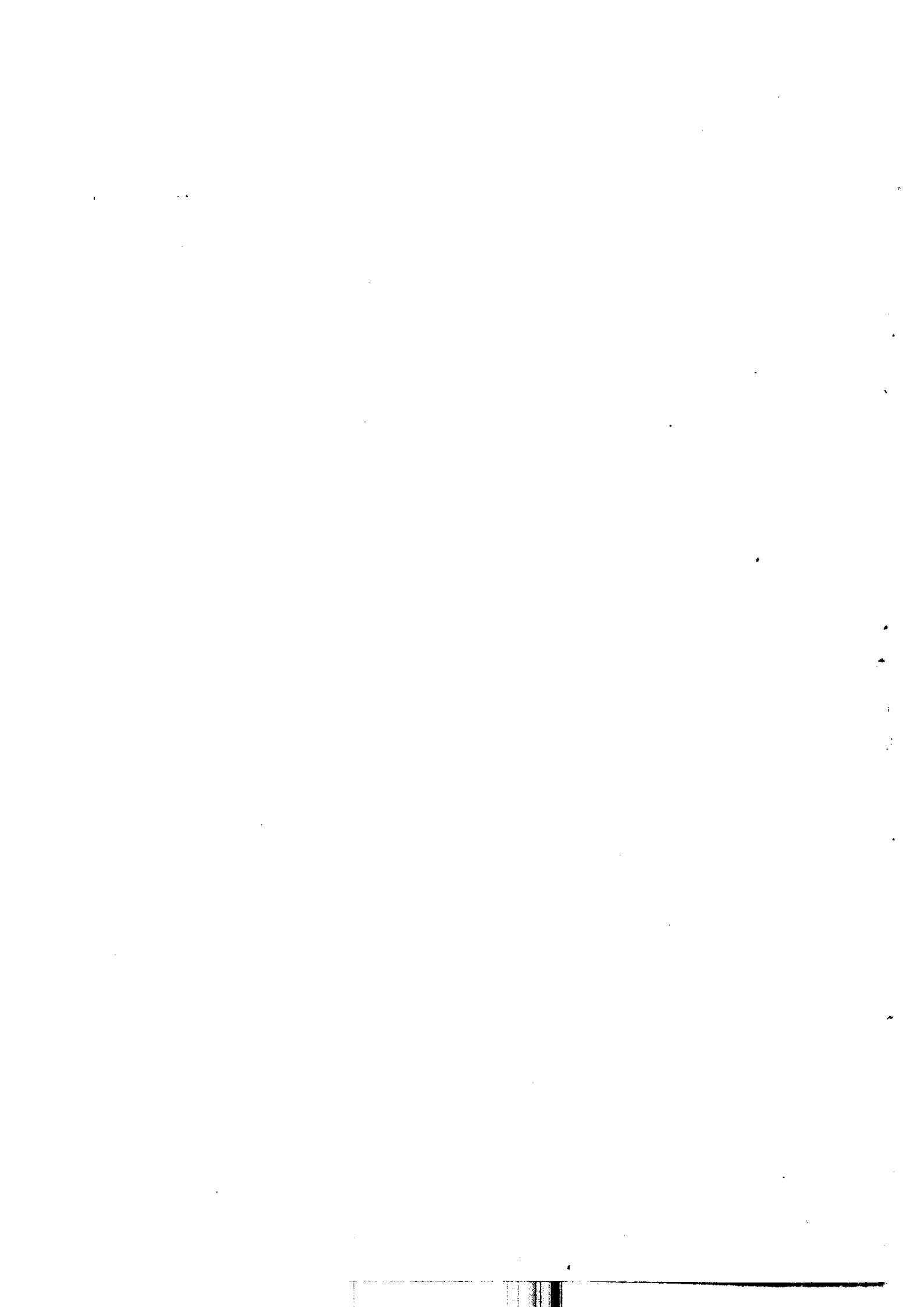
a fit of	anger, sever, coughing, laughing, etc.
a peal of	applause, laughter, thunder, etc.
a flash of	hope, light, lightning, etc.
a display of	courage, force, power, skill, etc.

4) 表示成双、成组、成群的单位,通常与可数名词搭配。例如: a couple of birds, a pair of socks, a flock of wild geese, a herd of goats, a litter of kittens, a swarm of bees, a bench of judges, a troupe of actors, a pack of thieves, a bundle of letters, a shoal of fresh water fish, a school of edible sea fish, a brood of chickens, a crowd of people, etc.

注意:与单位词搭配的名词,有时要求单数,有时要求复数,也有时二者均可;另外,名词与单位词搭配构成的整个短语,也有数的区别,并要求有关的动词相呼应。兹列表举例如下:

限定词	单位词	相搭配名词类别		整个短语的数		举 例 (以 is, are 分别与整个短语的数呼应)
		不可数	可数	单数	复数	
a	number		+		+	a number of robots (are)
the	number		+	+		the number of accidents (is)
a	series		+	+		a series of lectures (is)
several	series		+		+	several series of verdicts (are)
a, one	pair		+	+		a pair of shoes (is)
two, three, etc.	pairs		+		+	two pairs of shoes (are)
a	panel		+		+	a panel of specialists (are)
a	flock, pack		+		+	a pack of wolves (are)

限定词	单位词	相搭配名词类别		整个短语的数		举 例 (以 is, are 分别与整个短语的数呼应)
		不可数	可数	单数	复数	
a	variety		+		+	a variety of dishes (are)
the	portion	+		+		the greater portion of his life (is)
a	portion	+	+	+		a portion of the income (is) a portion of fried eggs (is)
two, three, etc.	portions	+			+	several portions of mutton (are)
a large	amount	+		+		a large amount of money (is)
(large)	amounts	+			+	Large amounts of cement (were)
an, any (half) amount the		+		+		There is still quite an amount of prejudice against them. Only half the amount of the money was paid.
a (great, small) quantity		+	(+)	+	(+)	a small quantity of water(is) a large quantity of apples (are/is)
(large)	quantities	+	+		+	large quantities of steel (are) quantities of farm machines (are)
a	suit	+	+	+		a suit of armour (is) a suit of clothes (is)
a	suite	+	+	+		a suite of furniture (is) a suite of rooms (is)



第三章 限定词

3.1 引言

限定词是以冠词为代表的一类词,除冠词 *a, an, the* 外,还有:形容词性物主代词 *my, your, his* 等;形容词性指示代词 *this, that, these those* 等;名词属格形式如 *Henry's, the boy's* 和数量词如 *one, first, some, much* 等等,还有限定词的零形式 ϕ (见3.2C)。限定词对名词起特指、泛指、定量或不定量等限定修饰作用(不同于形容词等修饰语的描写修饰作用)如 *this, that* 等表示特指,*a, an* 等表示泛指,*three, two-thirds* 等表示定量,*many, little* 等表示不定量。

限定词是构成名词短语的必要组成部分。例如:

The desk needs repairing.

上句中的 *the* 是限定词,如果将它去掉了,担任主语的名词短语结构上不完整,整个句子也成了病句。当然,也可以用其他适当的限定词来代替句中的定冠词 *the*, 如改用 *this, that; my, your, Mary's, etc.* 以及 *one, every, no, neither* 等。但注意:这里不能用带复数含义的限定词,如 *these, those* 等。另外,汉语中“我的那张书桌”这个意思也不能直译为 *my that desk*。因为限定词与名词之间及限定词彼此之间都有一定的搭配关系。

3.2 限定词与名词的搭配关系

3.2A 限定词与名词“数”的一致

限定词具有定量、不定量等含义区别,在与不同“数”的名词搭

配时,应注意选用不同类型的限定词。兹列表说明如下:

搭配要求	限定词	举 例
与单数可数 名词搭配	a, an, one, each, every, either, neither, etc.	<i>One pen is hers.</i> <i>Neither pen is mine.</i>
与复数可数 名词搭配	both, (a) few, several, these, those, a number of, two, three, ..., etc.	<i>Both pens are theirs.</i> <i>A number of pens are needed.</i>
与不可数名 词搭配	(a) little, less, (the) least, much, a great amount/deal of, large quantities of, etc.	<i>There is (a) little ink.</i> <i>They buy less beer and fewer cigarettes now.</i>
与不可数名 词或可数名 词复数搭配	more, (the) most, enough, lots of, a lot of, plenty of, etc.	<i>Plenty of men are here.</i> <i>There is plenty of sugar.</i>
与上述各类 名词搭配	the; my, your, etc; John's, the eagle's etc; some, any, no; etc.	<i>What does the word mean?</i> <i>The words are well chosen.</i> <i>The wording is quite exact.</i>

几点补充说明:

1) 通常与可数名词搭配的限定词 *this, that* 等有时与不可数名词连用, 其含义不是“这个”、“那个”, 而是指“这一种”、“那一种”, 用于表示类别。例如:

This tea tastes better than that (tea).

2) 通常与可数名词单数搭配的限定词 *every, this, that* 等, 有时同“数词 + 复数名词”结构搭配, 表示一个整体概念。例如:

He flies home every two weeks (= every other week).

They've been watching you this ten minutes.

What about that five pounds you borrowed from me last month?

3) 通常与不可数名词搭配的限定词,有的也能与可数名词的复数连用,如在非正式场合用 *less* 代替 *fewer*:

If only there were *less* holes in the roof!

3.2 B 与名词的 OF 属格相搭配的限定词——不定代词

限定词 *all*, *both*, *each*, *either*, *neither*, *any*, *none*, 等,也可以用作不定代词,和名词的 OF 属格相搭配,例如 *all the balls* 和 *all of the balls* 这两个短语表示的含义相同,前面的 *all* 为限定词,后面的 *all* 为代词。这些词不论用作限定词 (*every* 只用作限定词),还是用作代词 (*none* 只用作代词),都带有数量概念,其中有些只能用来指两个人或物,有些只用于指两个以上的人或物。兹列表说明如下:

限定词	只指两个	指三个或三个以上	通常表示的含义
<i>all</i>		+	所有的…都(是)
<i>both</i>	+		两者都(是)
<i>every</i>		+	个个都(是)
<i>each</i>	+	+	每个都(是)
<i>either</i>	+		两个中的任何一个(或每一个)(是)
<i>neither</i>	+		两者都(不是)
<i>any</i>		+	任何一个(是)
<i>no</i>		+	一个都(不是)

几点补充说明:

1) 限定词 *any* 和 *some* 均可用作不定代词,区别在于: *any* 通常用于否定句或疑问句, *some* 常见于肯定句。试比较:

Can I get *any* (of the) ink here?

You can get *some* (of the) ink here.

You can't get *any* (of the) ink here.

有时, *some* 也用于疑问句, 但其含义仍带肯定意味, 即提问者预期得到肯定的回答。试比较:

Is there *any* milk left? (完全不知道是否有。)

Is there *some* milk left? (估计会有的。)

2) 限定词 *either*, *neither* 与单数名词搭配, 若用作代词与 OF 属格搭配时, 则跟复数名词(指两个); 与之相关的动词以往惯于用单数形式, 现在也可用复数形式, 而且后者更为常见。例如:

Neither record was reliable.

Neither of the records were/was reliable.

3) 限定词 *every*, *each* 都有“每一个”的意思, 但 *every* 只能用作限定词; *each* 还可以用作代词, 它在句中可以出现在三个不同的位置。例如:

Every boy / *Each* boy had a try in the experiment.

Each of the boys had a chance in the contest.

The boys have been given a toy *each* on New Year's Eve.

(*each* 在宾语之后)

They *each* have got some birthday gifts.

(*each* 在主语之后)

The delivery boys have *each* received a Christmas-box.

(*each* 在作用词之后)

4) 限定词 *little*, *a little*, *few*, *a few* 等亦能用作代词, 与 OF 属格搭配。区别在于: *little*, *a little* 通常与不可数名词搭配, 意为“少量”, *few*, *a few* 通常与可数名词搭配, 意为“少数”。试比较:

Little / *A little* of the ink is simple colour.

Few / *A few* of the words are wrongly spelt.

另外, a little, a few 带肯定含义,表示“还有一些”, little, few 带否定含义,强调“不多”或“太少”。试比较:

{ This paper is very neat and there're few mistakes.
Be more careful next time. There're (quite) a few blunders in your paper.
{ There's (very) little ink left. Please go and get some.
There's (still) a little ink here. You can take some.

3.2 C 限定词的零形式

有时名词短语里只有中心词而不见限定词。这时的限定词处于零形式。一般语法书将限定词的零形式称为零冠词,用符号 ϕ 代替,它和中心词搭配构成名词短语,公式为: NP \rightarrow ϕ + N.

限定词的零形式主要在下列四种名词短语中:

1) 以代词作中心词。代词不只是代替名词,而是代替名词短语,其中已经有限定词的意思包含在内。例如:

The girl is seven. *She* is their only child. (she: the girl)

There is a tricycle in that corner. *It's* yours, isn't *it*?

(it: the tricycle)

These tigers are from north-east China, aren't *they*?

(they: the tigers)

2) 以专有名词作中心词。专有名词和代词相似,它是以特殊的名词形式来表示某个名词短语。例如:

Shall I introduce you to that man? He is *Thomas Fingar*.

(Thomas Fingar: the man)

Sun is a short fiction by the author.

(Sun: the short fiction)

Dianshanhu is a newly-opened spot of interest in the Shanghai suburbs.

(Dianshanhu: the newly-opened spot ...)

如果在专有名词前面冠以限定词,则该专有名词普通化了。例如:

The Paul in my team is 0.3 inches taller than that (Paul) in yours. (句中 the Paul 相当于说话人和听话人都知道的 the man called ...)

A *Johnson* came to see you yesterday. (句中的 a Johnson 相当于 a certain man called ...)

3) 以不可数名词、可数名词的单数或复数作中心词,与限定词的零形式搭配构成泛指类别的名词短语。例如:

Water turns into *ice* below 0°C. (Water: a kind of liquid; ice: a kind of solid.)

Man is mortal. (= *All men* must die.)

Pandas are very cute. (= *A panda* / *The panda* is ...)

4) 用于呼语、排比结构或并列结构的名词短语。这类结构中有的不用限定词,有的是省略了限定词,也可以看作是限定词的零形式,其中仍有特指、泛指等含义,并可引伸出相应的限定词。例如:

Come here, *boy*! (含特指 the 的含义)

Man or boy, I don't like him. (有泛指 a 的含义)

The boys and girls in my class all like mathematics.

(省略了 the)

3.3 关于限定词连用的两个问题

3.3A 按位置划分的三类限定词

在一个名词短语中,有时会出现两个到四个限定词。这时,限定词之间有一定的词序。常见的五十多种限定词,大致分为前、中、后三个位置,分别称为前位限定词、中位限定词和后位限定词。兹列表说明如下:

前位限定词	中位限定词	后位限定词
all, both, half, etc; double, twice, three times, etc; one-thirds, two-thirds, three-fifths, etc.	a, an, the; this, that, these, those; my, your, etc; Mary's, the young gentleman's, etc; some, any, no, every, each, either, neither, much, enough, etc; what (ever), which (ever), whose, etc.	first, second, third, etc; next, last, other; another, etc; one, two, three, etc; many, little, few, several, more, less, etc; such

在一个名词短语中,如果出现上述三类限定词连用的情况,通常都是遵循前、中、后的次序;出现某类限定词的空缺时,其他两类的次序不乱。例如:

In *all the four* choices, only one should be used to fill in the blank. (前、中、后三位齐全)

What a pity! I only heard *half* his lecture. (只有前、中位)

Can you spare *some more* tickets? (只有中、后位)

All other boys are in the third group. (只有前、后位)

3.3B 相互排斥与后位限定词的次序

前位限定词之间和中位限定词之间都有相互排斥的特性,即在同一个名词短语中,前位限定词只能用一个,中位限定词也只能用一个。例如用英语表示“他五分之二的钱都用于抽烟”这个意思时,不能将 *all* 和 *two-fifths* 这两个前位限定词连用,而应将 *all* 作副词,即:

Two-fifths his money has *all* gone to smoking.

又如,不能将“她的一个叔叔”译成 *her an uncle*, 因为 *her* 和 *an* 都是中位限定词, 而应改为 *an uncle of hers* 或者 *one of her*

uncles,有时也可以用 her one uncle 表示。

但是,后位限定词之间不一定相互排斥,有时两个后位限定词可以在同一个名词短语中连用。不过,在连用时也有一定的先后次序。关于后位限定词连用,主要有下述四种情形:

一是序数词(包括 next, another 等)与基数词连用,序数词在前,基数词居后: (the) first two (poems), another three (questions) etc.

二是序数词(包括 next, another 等)与 few 连用,序数词在前, few 在后: (the) first few (forms), (her) next few (choices), etc.

三是基数词(包括 many, several 等)与 more, other 等连用,基数词在前, more, other 等在后: one more (coffee), twenty more (words), many more (fools), several more (pandas), many other (samples), etc.

四是 such 与其他后位限定词连用,其他限定词在前, such 居后: few such (cases), many such (stories), several such (bottles), four such (marks), little such (interest), another such (animal), etc.

几点说明:

1) such 和其他限定词(包括后位限定词)连用时总是处于最后位,唯独碰上中位限定词 a 和 an 时却要“越位”,如 such a day, such an owner 等。类似这样不规则的情况还有:后位限定词 many 和中位限定词 what 也都能与不定冠词 a 和 an 搭配,并出现在它们的前面,如:

What an idea!

Many a chance has lost (=Many chances have lost)

2) 并不是所有的后位限定词都能随意搭配,还须根据一定的习惯使用。例如 little 或 few 都不能单独与 more 连用, other

也不能单独与基数词连用；然而，当前面出现中位限定词冠词时，就又可以连用了，如：a little more (salt), a few more such (flowers), the other twenty-nine (steps), etc.

3) 有时，还会出现前、中、后位限定词之间发生排斥的情况。例如前位的 all 就不能与中位及后位那些表示不定量含义的限定词搭配，中位的 my, your 等也不便与后位的 more, less 等并用，等等。

3.4 关于冠词使用的几点补充说明

冠词，包括定冠词和不定冠词，都是使用得十分普遍的限定词。关于冠词同名词的搭配及与其他限定词之间的搭配使用，在本章前面集中讨论过了，这里再就冠词本身的含义和使用作几点补充说明。

3.4A 定冠词与不定冠词的基本区别

所谓定冠词和不定冠词，顾名思义，前者表示比较“确定”的意思，后者表示比较“不确定”的意思；含义上的差别导致使用场合上的不同。

1) 定冠词主要用于表示下述含义：

a. 独指，与表示独一无二事物的名词连用，如：the sun, the earth, the universe, the year 2000, the English language, etc.

b. 专指，与专有名词连用，如：the Queen Mary, the Times, the Europeans, the White House, the Soviet Union, the Tianshan Mountain, etc.

c. 特指，指一定场合或上下文中特定的人或物，如：

Would you mind my opening *the* window?

Where did you find *the* child?

Hercules heard something roaring and he knew that must be *the* creature.

I'll never forget *the* day when we succeeded in *the* exper-

iment.

She is the girl that played *the* heroine in *the* tragedy.

The accused was taken out of *the* court.

2) 不定冠词主要用于表示下列含义:

a. 表示“一”、“个”、“件”等意思,如:

He has been away for *a* week.

They will arrive in *an* hour or so.

The president used to be *a* film star.

This painting is *a* national treasure.

Can you lend me *an* umbrella?

用于这种含义时与 *one* 同义,但语气较轻。试比较:

The gorilla behaves like *a* man. (那大猩猩动作象人)

The team behaves like *one* man. (这个队配合得象一个人)

It will take more than *a* year to build the subway.

(指一年以上,两年之内)

It will take more than *one* year to build the subway.

(强调不止一年,可能两年三年)

b. 表示“每”的意思,如:

The postman calls twice *a* day (= each day).

Carry them three *at a* time. (= each time).

The car ran at forty miles *an* hour (= per hour).

It is sold at seventy-five shillings *a* pound (= per pound).

c. 表示“一样”的意思,如:

Birds of *a* feather flock together. (*a* = the same)

We are now of *a* mind (*a* = the same)

She works so hard as to become *a* Marie Curie. (Meaning: a scientist like ...)

3.4B 不同冠词的通用场合

定冠词,不定冠词,还有冠词的零形式(零冠词),在表示下列含义时可以通用。

1) 用于表示类别,即指某一类人或物。例如下面的三句话意思相同:

The ox is a useful animal.

An ox is a useful animal.

Oxen are useful animals.

但是,由于不同冠词基本含义上存在差别,在具体使用中有时还要根据整个句子的意思选用冠词。如要英译“牛已被拖拉机代替”这句话时,就不宜用不定冠词,而应用定冠词或者零冠词,即:

The ox has been replaced by the tractor.

Oxen have been replaced by tractors.

2) 用于表示特指。例如:

Who bought the house?

“Where’s mother now?” Sophy wondered.

They elected George captain.

We came across a man with long and thick hair over his naked body.

注意不定冠词表示的“特指”仍带有“不定”含义,相当于“某一个”或“那样一个”之类的意思,而不及定冠词表示的特指那样确切;另一方面,也要将不定冠词所表示的特指含义(a certain)与它所表示的泛指含义(any)相区别。试比较:

He lives in the flat facing south. (指那个唯一的朝南套间)

He lives in a flat facing south. (指朝南的某个套间)

He asks for a flat facing south. (不论哪个套间,朝南即可)

3.4C 冠词的一些习惯用法

有时不同冠词的选用并不一定是由于特指或泛指含义上的需

要,主要还是根据习惯用法决定的。例如:

1) 有些短语习惯上用定冠词,如: *in/during the night, to the view, on the mending hand, etc.*

2) 有些短语习惯上用不定冠词,如: *to have a good night, with a view to, with an iron hand, etc.*

3) 有些短语不用冠词,或用零冠词,如: *at night, in view of, at hand, with clean hands, etc.*

上述短语多为“介词 + 名词短语(+介词)”结构。它们搭配不同,有的意义上没有什么不同,有的略有差别,有的差异甚大。下面再举几组例句作比较:

- { Does he write plays for radio, too?
- { The prime minister is going to speak over the radio.
- { She can't come today. She's got a (bad) cold.
- { Put on more! Be careful not to catch (a) cold.
- { Dinner is on the table.
- { Don't talk or watch TV at table.
- { Don't worry! To persuade him to go is out of question.
- { To persuade him to go? That's out of the question. He won't listen to anyone:

3.5 限定词的修饰语

本章开头讲过,限定词是名词短语的必要组成部分,也可看作是名词中心词的一种必要的修饰语。同时,限定词本身也可能被某些词语所修饰,称之为限定词的修饰语。例如:

Over thirty guests were present at the party.

Nine, or *about* two-thirds her pastoral poetry were written in that period.

She left *nearly* a month ago.

You've made *too* many promises, my dear.

限定词及其修饰语之间有一定的搭配习惯。现选择某些常见的搭配列表如下：

修饰语	限定词									
	a	half	any	much	a few	many	little	few	one-third	two three...
a great						+				
a good						+		+		
about	+	+							+	+
almost	+	+							+	+
hardly/ scarcely	+	+	+						+	+
quite	+				+					
over									+	+
so				+		+	+	+		
very				+			+	+		
too				+		+	+	+		
more than less than	+	+							+	+



第四章 动词短语

——动词的类别、形式与含义

4.1 引言

前面 1.1 节曾提到, 动词短语的基本结构可以用公式表示为 VP - Aux + V. 这是“转换生成语法”的一条短语结构规则。其中 V 为中心词 (HEADWORD), 也称主要动词 (MAIN VERB); Aux 表示中心词的人称、数及时态。从动词本身的屈折变化看, 只有两种时态变化形式, 即“一般现在”和“一般过去”。然而, 作为分析性语言, 英语又能借助动词表示“将来”(见第六章)。

正如限定词是名词短语的一个必要组成部分一样, Aux 是动词短语中的一个必要组成部分。我们中国学生初学英语时容易将词汇表里的动词直接用进句子中去, 往往造成语法错误, 因此必须明确英语动词短语中存在 Aux 的概念。例如:

A cat *has* nine lives. (Aux 为第三人称单数现在时, 它与 have 结合变为 has)

The Alis *are* flying to Shanghai. (Aux 为现在时复数, 与 be 结合成为 are)

Care *killed* the cat. (Aux 为过去时, 与动词 kill 的原形结合为 killed)

Everything *must* have a beginning. (Aux 为助动词 must)

4.2 动词的主要类别与基本形式

4.2A 动词的主要类别

从句法作用看，首先可将动词分为“限定动词”(FINITE VERB)与“非限定动词”(NON-FINITE VERB)。前者在形式上受主语人称、数及时态等制约，担任谓语的动词短语(简称谓语动词)均属此类。非限定动词指不定式(Infinitive)，-ing分词和-ed分词等(参见第20—22章)。

从含义上看，动词又分实义动词(NOTIONAL VERBS)，连系动词(LINK/LINKING VERBS, COPULAS)和助动词(AUXILIARY VERBS)。助动词包括基本助动词(PRIMARY AUXILIARIES)和情态动词(MODAL VERBS)等两类(见第8章)。

本书1.2节介绍基础句型时，曾讲到及物动词和不及物动词，它们均属于实义动词，其本身有完全的词义，并能独立作谓语动词。“系表句型”中的V即为连系动词。英语中的连系动词除be(是)外，seem(似乎)、look(看来)、become(变成)、get(变得)、grow(变得)、feel(感到)、turn(变得、变成)、appear(显得)、remain(仍旧是)等等，也能用作系动词，其后跟表语，组成S. V. C. 句子形式。

除上述单个动词外，有的动词还能和其他词类(如副词、介词等)搭配构成固定的动词组(PHRASAL VERBS)，也叫短语动词，或词组动词。它们有的及物，有的不及物(参见10.2 D)。

分析动词的类别，有助于我们更好地掌握不同类型动词的特征及使用，同时还应注意两点：

一是有时一种动词形式可能转化为另一种动词形式，如非限定动词与限定动词之间的转换(见第22章)。研究转换会使我们进一步了解不同动词形式之间的异同点，有助于理解和灵活运用。

二是要注意动词的跨类现象。如有时某个动词在这句里用于及物，在另一句里不及物，或由实义动词变成了系动词，等等；并且在含义上也会出现差别。兹将动词keep的不同用法举数例如下：

Does this watch *keep* good time?

(MONO-TRANSITIVE VERB: 单宾及物动词)

We'll *keep* you informed about the matter.

(COMPLEX-TRANSITIVE VERB: 宾补及物动词)

I hope you'll *keep* cool in all cases, will you?

(LINK VERB: 系动词)

This fish won't *keep*: we must eat it now.

(INTRANSITIVE VERB: 不及物动词)

Please slow down a little bit; I can't *keep up with* you.

(TRANSITIVE PHRASAL VERB: 及物词组动词)

He is not at all well, but he *keeps up*.

(INTRANSITIVE PHRASAL VERB: 不及物词组动词)

You should *keep up* your French, or it'll soon grow rusty.

(TRANSITIVE PHRASAL VERB: 及物词组动词)

4.2B 动词的四种基本形式

动词短语的中心词 V 主要以四种形式出现于句中，即原形 (base form), -s 形, -ed 形和 -ing 形。例如 *work, works, worked, working*。不规则动词的 -ed 形式可能有两种如 *saw* 和 *seen*，一般语法上将它们分别名之为该动词的“一般过去时”和“过去分词”形式，本书将它们统称为 -ed 形式。

1) 原形

原形就是动词在句中的形式和在词汇表中的形式一致，如同第一、二人称和第三人称的复数主语搭配和用于不定式，包括带 *to* 的不定式和不带 *to* 的不定式；此外，情态助动词和助动词 *do, did, does* 后面跟的主动词也都用原形。例如：

I / You / They *have* food with chopsticks.

It is going to *be* cloudy tomorrow.

He used to *swim* every day when he was young.

Do you *remember* Bacon's saying "knowledge is power"?

All I can *do* is offer you some advices.

2) -s 形

动词原形变 -s 形的方法和名词单数变复数相类似, 也分规则变化和 irregular 变化两种, 但不规则变化只有 *be — is*, *have — has* 等几个动词, 一般都属于规则变化, 如: *read — reads*, *write — writes*, *say — says*; *kiss — kisses*, *rush — rushes*, *watch — watches*, *box — boxes*, *go — goes*; *carry — carries*, *fly — flies*, 等。

动词 -es 形式用于一般现在时第三人称单数, 例如:

He *laughs* best who *laughs* last.

One swallow *does* not make a summer.

This picture *matches* the story perfectly.

No one will ever regret if he *relies* upon my word.

The new piano *plays* well.

The tea house *opens* until 11 p. m. every day.

3) -ed 形

动词由原形变 -ed 形的方法也分规则变化和 irregular 变化两种:

对规则动词来讲, 由原形变 -ed 形是在动词后边加 -ed 或 -d, 例如: *work — worked — worked*, *play — played — played*, *watch — watched — watched*, *rush — rushed — rushed*, *box — boxed — boxed*, *kiss — kissed — kissed*, *laugh — laughed — laughed*; *reply — replied — replied*, *study — studied — studied*; *smoke — smoked — smoked*, *like — liked — liked*, *waste — wasted — wasted*, etc. 注意: 以字母 l, r 或

p 结尾的动词应重写该字母后再加 -ed, 如 travel — travelled — travelled, occur — occurred — occurred, kidnap — kidnaped — kidnapped, etc.

不规则变化比较复杂, 常用的一百六十多个不规则动词变化要反复熟记。不规则变化主要有下列六种情况:

i) 原形和 -ed 形式保持一致, 如: cost, put, cut, burst, cast, hit, hurt, let, set, shut, split, etc.

ii) 原形和表示一般过去时的 -ed 形式不同, 而与用作分词的 -ed 形式一样, 如: come—came come—, run—ran—run, become —became—become, overcome—overcame—overcome, etc.

iii) 表示一般过去时和用作分词的两种 -ed 形式相同, 如: buy—bought—bought, fight—fought—fought, bring—brought—brought, think—thought—thought, seek—sought—sought; teach—taught—taught; catch—caught—caught; find—found—found, wind—wound—wound, bind—bound—bound; bend—bent—bent, send—sent—sent; bleed—bled—bled, breed—bred—bred, feed—fed—fed, speed—sped—sped, flee—fled—fled, lead—led—led, meet—met—met; keep—kept—kept, creep—crept—crept, leave—left—left, sleep—slept—slept; build—built—built, burn—burnt—burnt; cling—clung—clung, dig—dug—dug, fling—flung—flung, swing—swung—swung, win—won—won; hold—held—held; tell—told—told; dwell—dwelt—dwelt; get—got—got; have—had—had; lay—laid—laid, pay—paid—paid, say—said—said; lose—lost—lost; shine—shone—shone; sit—sat—sat, spit—spat—spat; stand—stood—stood, understand—understood—understood; etc.

iv) 原形和两种 -ed 形式各不相同, 如: begin—began—began, shrink—shrank—shrunk, spring—sprang—sprung; ring—

rang—rung; tear—tore—torn, swear—swore—sworn, wear—wore—worn; blow—blew—blown, choose—chose—chosen, (over) throw—(over) threw—(over) thrown, grow—grew—grown, know—knew—known; freeze—froze—frozen, speak—spoke—spoken; drive—drove—driven, rise—rose—risen, write—wrote—written, forget—forgot—forgotten, forgive—forgave—forgiven, etc.

v) 有些动词的一般过去时形式和分词形式可能各有两种, 含义相同。例如:

awake	awoke	awoke / awaked
burn	burnt / burned	burnt / burned
clothe	clothed	clothed / clad
dream	dreamed / dreamt	dreamed / dreamt
leap	leapt / leaped	leapt / leaped
learn	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
light	lit / lighted	lit / lighted
smell	smelled / smelt	smelled / smelt
spell	spelled / spelt	spelled / spelt
spill	spilled / spilt	spilled / spilt
spoil	spoiled / spoilt	spoiled / spoilt

上述不同的 -ed 形式大都互相通用, 也有时存在某些差别:

a) 现代英语中较多地使用规则变化形式, 有的不规则变化形式已属老式用法, 如 clad。但在复合形容词中沿用下来的不规则过去分词形式则仍然照用。如 clean-shaven, well-shaven, etc.

b) 有时虽然两种形式均可用于谓语动词或用作形容词, 但由于使用习惯或从修辞角度考虑, 有时有不同的选择。试以 light 和 lit 为例:

The caves were *lighted* / *lit* by electricity day and night.

She went on reading in a *dimly lit* room. (固定搭配)

One bulb here equals a 1000 *lighted* candles. (习惯用法)

Her face *lit up with pleasure* when she heard the news.

(比喻用法, 不用 *lighted*)

A smile *lit up her face*. (比喻用法, 同样不用 *lighted*)

c) 动词的 *-ed* 形式用于一般过去时, 其分词形式用于完成体、被动式, 或起形容词、副词的作用。例如:

Did they paint the windows? They *Painted* them last week. (过去时)

They *have painted* the windows milk-white. (完成体)

Those windows *were painted* orange last time. (被动结构)

4) *-ing* 形

由原形变为 *-ing* 形的方法有六种情况:

i) 一般情况下, 直接在动词原形后加 *-ing*, 例如: look—*looking*, say—*saying*, fuss—*fussing*, buzz—*buzzing*, catch—*catching*, box—*boxing*, go—*going*, hurry—*hurrying*, etc.

这里和名词复数、动词的 *-s (-es)* 形变化不同, 词尾如为“辅音字母 + *y*”时, *y* 不用变, 其后直接加 *-ing*, 如 carry — *carrying*, study — *studying*, etc.

ii) 以不发音的字母 *e* 结尾的动词, 去掉 *e* 再加 *-ing*: 例如: come — *coming*, take — *taking*, make — *making*, etc. 少数以 *-e* 结尾的动词是直接加 *-ing*, 如 be — *being*, agree — *agreeing*, free — *freeing*, see — *seeing*, dye — *dyeing*, etc.

iii) 动词原形是闭音节的单音节词, 或者是以重读闭音节结尾的双音节词, 而且末尾只有一个辅音字母时, 这个辅音字母须双写, 然后再加 *-ing*。如: sit — *sitting*, stop — *stopping*, begin — *beginning*, admit — *admitting*, forget — *forgetting*, forbid

— forbidding, etc. (注意 send, think 等词尾有两个辅音字母, 应直接加 -ing 变为 sending, thinking.)

iv) 少数双音节的动词, 尽管重音在第一个音节, 在英国英语中仍双写末尾的辅音字母, 然后再加 -ing。如: 'travel — 'travelling, 'total — 'totalling, 'level — 'levelling, 'model — 'modelling, 'quarrel — 'quarrelling, 'signal — 'signalling, etc.

v) 少数几个以 -ie 结尾的动词, 须将 ie 变作 y, 再加 -ing 如: die — dying, tie — tying, lie — lying.

vi) panic, frolic 等用作动词时, 应在原形后加 k, 然后加 -ing (亦适于 -ed 变化)。例如: panicking, picnicking, frolicking.

动词的 -ing 形式用于进行体, 也可在句中分别起名词、形容词或副词的作用。例如:

They are singing and dancing on the lake.

Learning a foreign language requires pains taking efforts.

The falling satellite is descending faster.

The Tortoise went off jogging along, without a moment's stopping.

4.3 动词的两种基本含义——动作与状态

4.3A 动态动词与静态动词

英语中的动词, 有的是明确表示动作, 即用于动态含义; 有的主要是表示状态, 即用于静态含义。

1) 通常表示动态的动词主要有以下四类:

一是表示瞬间发生的短暂动作, 如 jump, hit, knock, kick, nod, throw, etc.

二是表示起迄于一般时间里的动作, 自开始就具有终止目的, 这类动词亦称“限界动词”, 如 build, bind, gather, make, mend,

produce, write, etc.;

三是表示持续特征的动作, 本身似无终止时限, 如 continue, lie, remain, stand, stay, etc.;

四是表示位置转移或变化过程的动作, 如 arrive, leave, land, change, die, grow, widen, etc.;

2) 通常表示静态的动词也可以大体分为四类:

一是表示思想认识的动词, 如 believe, know, realize, suppose, think, understand, etc.;

二是表示好恶等感情的动词, 如 hate, like, prefer, love, etc.;

三是表示五官知觉或肉体感觉的动词, 如 see, hear, smell, etc.; ache, itch, feel, hurt, etc.;

四是表示相互关系的动词, 如 be, belong, contain, have, own, possess, etc.

3) 动态动词与静态动词之间并无截然的界线, 有些动词, 如 feel, remember, think, smell, etc. 一般表示静态含义, 也可用于动态含义。试比较:

- { She says she *feels* cold. (Meaning: be consciously.)
She *felt* in her pocket for a penny. (Meaning: search with the hand)
- { I shall always *remember* that terrible day. (Meaning: keep in the memory.)
My dear aunty always *remembers* me at Christmas. (Meaning: give presents to.)
- { I *think* they are coming. (Meaning: believe.)
Think hard and you'll have an idea. (Meaning: use the mind.)

{ This flower *smells* sweet. (Meaning: have an odour.)
 Here, *smell*; what do you think this liquid is? (Mean-
 ing: use the sense of your nose.)

4.3B 动词的含义与状语的选择

1) 动态动词一般与时间状语搭配, 其中短暂动作往往带表示时间点的状语, 而持续动作往往带表示时间段的状语。试比较:

(短暂动作 + 时间点)

The second show *begins at*
2:30 p.m.

World War One *broke out*
in 1914.

Arafat *arrived* in China *on*
Friday.

(持续动作 + 时间段)

The fighting *continued for*
a whole week.

How long will you *stay*
there?

China will not *forget* its
friends in the developing
world *after* it makes eco-
nomic progress.

2) 状态动词通常与表示程度或量度的状语搭配。例如:

My head aches *terribly*. Can I have a day off?

He knows *a lot* about biology.

She hates (=dislikes *greatly*) being spoken to like that.

As a writer, he *really* belongs to the 18th century.

3) 汉译英时, 应根据内容选用适当的动词形式与状语。例
如:

李先生(已经)走了。

Mr Li has (already) gone.

李先生二十年前离开了故乡。

Mr Li left / went away from his hometown twenty
years ago.

李先生(已经)离开故乡二十年了。

Mr Li has been away from his hometown for 20 years.
It is (already) 20 years since Mr Li left his hometown.
Twenty years have passed since Mr Li left his hometown.

4.3C 动词的含义与进行体的关系

1) 在无状语的情况下,动作动词能比较自由地用于现在进行体,却不随使用于一般现在时;反之,状态动词通常用于一般现在时,而不用用于现在进行体。试比较:

I'm writing an important letter.

* I write an important letter.

The old man is dying.

* The old man dies.

I suppose they are coming.

* I am supposing ...

Who owns this house?

* Who is owning ... ?

2) 表示瞬间动作的动词若用于进行体,则强调该动作的反复。试比较:

The teacher *nodded* his agreement. (点头同意)

The teacher *was nodding* his agreement. (频频点头表示同意)

The boys *jumped* for joy. (高兴得跳了)

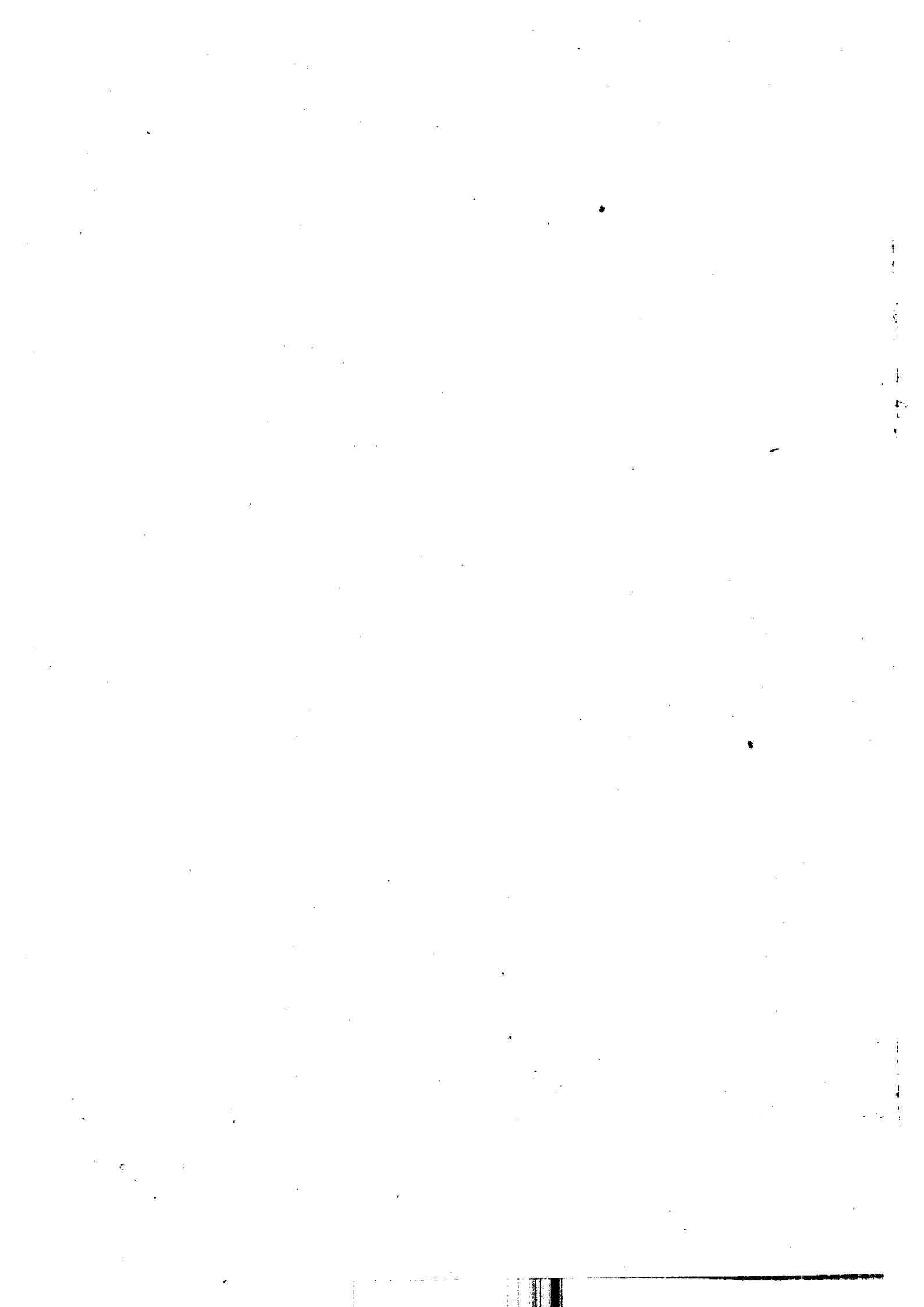
They *were jumping* for joy. (高兴得连跳带蹦)

3) 某些表示持续动作的动词及表示肉体感觉的动词既能用于一般体,又能用于进行体,含义上无甚差别。例如:

An open magazine *lay* / *was lying* on her knee and one arm *hung* / *was hanging* down loosely.

Do you feel / *Are you feeling* better?

六斤



第五章 时态(一): 一般现在时和一般过去时

5.1 引言

英语中的 TENSE 通常汉译为“时态”,表示句中所述动作(或状态)的时间和体貌。从时间 (TIME) 角度看,有现在、过去、将来之分;从体貌 (ASPECT) 上看,又有一般、进行与完成之别,另外还可加上“过去将来”(时间)与“完成进行”(体貌),即分别为四种时间和四种体貌。每一种“时间+体貌”构成一种时态,总共可构成十六种时态。试以动词 eat 用于第三人称单数为例,将英语十六种时态列表如下:

时间 体貌	现 在	过 去	将 来	过去将来
一般	He eats ...	He ate ...	He will eat ...	He would eat ...
进行	He is eating ...	He was eating ...	He will be eating ...	He would be eating ...
完成	He has eaten ...	He had eaten ...	He will have eaten ...	He would have eaten ...
完成进行	He has been eating ...	He had been eating ...	He will have been eating ...	He would have been eating ...

上述十六种“时态”中,除“过去将来完成”、“过去将来完成进行”和“将来完成进行”三种,实际上不常使用,仍有十三种。它们之间有时区别细微,有时还能交换使用,某些使用与其说是含义上的

需要,不如说是习惯上的选择。因此,英语“时态”历来是一个复杂的语法范畴,对中国学生尤其如此。

近年来国外和国内出版的英语语法著作中,有的将“时态”作了新的处理,采用“两时”(一般现在和一般过去)、“两体”(完成和进行),加上“将来时间表示法”。有人误以为英语时态变得相当简单了,其实不是那么回事,因为上面那十六种时态的大多数形式仍然在英语中出现。

当然,这并不是说我们不应当删繁就简,问题是注意不要将“简化”与“简单化”混为一谈。本章开头不厌其烦地列出十六种时态,目的就在于避免造成简单化的错觉。

从英语动词的屈折变化上看,只有“现在”与“过去”两种。讲时态,首先要掌握“一般现在”和“一般过去”。关于“将来”,英语作为分析性语言,有其独特的表现形式(见第六章)，“过去将来”可并入“将来时”处理。从“体”上看“一般体”在上述三个“一般时态”中都有了,剩下“进行”和“完成”须单独处理,“完成进行”是两者的结合,亦可合并。这样,就突出“三时”和“两体”。

5.2 “一般现在时”

5.2A 一般现在时的谓语动词

英语一般现在时用原形或 -S 形式(见4.2 B),后者与第三人称单数的主语搭配,前者与其他人称主语搭配。

5.2B 不带状语的一般现在时句型

这类句子表示不受时间限制的意思,因而不用时间状语修饰。主要用于:

1) 表示客观真理或事实,常见于科学论断、地理、文化等方面的客观事实以及谚语、格言等。例如:

Eleven times four is forty-four.

Chemical changes either absorb energy or give off energy.

The Mississippi River flows from Minnesota to the Gulf

of Mexico.

Alexander Pope *occupies* a high place among English poets.

Time and tide *wait* for no man.

He *lives* most who *thinks* most, *feels* the noblest and *acts* the best. (P.J. Bailey)

2) 表示主语(人)目前的想法、愿望、或其性格、特征、能力等。

例如:

I *suppose* this book is still available.

We *want* to reserve a double room with bath. Are there any vacancies?

Jack not only *thinks* big but *talks* big as well.

Mr Henry *is* punctual and *hates* to be kept waiting.

That guy *dresses* in a queer-looking way and *speaks* with a strange accent.

3) 用于某些特定场合的动作,不论该动作是正在进行还是已经完成。例如:

比赛现场解说:

Pedro *receives* the ball, he *dribbles* and (gives) a long pass to Jeffrey, who *heads* it. Yes, a goal!

West Ham goalkeeper Phil Parkes *drives* to save a shot from Liverpool's David Hodgson, but he just *misses* it.

操作示范或魔术表演:

I *take* three eggs and *beat* them in this basin. Then I *add* sugar ...

I *place* the rabbit in the box and *close* the lid. Now ...

在正式会议、法庭或其他正式场合宣布决定:

I *declare* the meeting closed (open, adjourned);

I *sentence* you to two-year imprisonment.

I *name* this ship Titanic.

I *pronounce* you man and wife.

新闻标题或舞台指导:

China gets clean water for 300 m. rural people.

Reagan vows to cut deficits.

Tom *enters* as a merchant sailor from alley, stage left, and *strolls* across the front of the fire escape. There he *stops* and *lights* a cigarette. He *addresses* the audience.

5.2C 句中带状语的一般现在时句型

这类句子中通常带有 *everyday*, *usually*, *often*, *these days*, etc 状语,表示包括目前时间在内的某些经常习惯、反复动作或存在的情况等。例如:

He gets up *at five thirty* and goes out for a walk *every morning*.

Katharine used to take bus, but *at present* she cycles to work.

Each item *usually* lasts four to five minutes.

Do you know where Helen lives *at the moment*? I *seldom* see her.

Does your daughter *often* write to you, Felix?

Take the medicine (*regularly*) *three times a day*.

5.2D 用于从句的一般现在时句型

这类句型是用一般现在时的动词形式表示将来含义,包括:

1) 主句(将来时) + WHEN 从句(现在时)例如:

I'll tell him *when he comes*.

We are going to see him off *when he leaves*.

I'll discuss it with you *whenever you like to come*.

cf:

The Queen will visit the town in May, when (=at which time) she *will* open the new hospital.

Whenever (=every time) we see him, we find him busy working in his study. (Note: Not * we will find ...)

2) 主句(将来时) + IF 从句(现在时)。例如:

If it rains on Saturday, the sports meet will be postponed.

I'll see *if he wants* to talk to you.

cf:

If you will wait a moment (=Please wait a moment and) I'll go and tell the manager that you are here,

3) 主句 see (to it) / make sure / make certain + THAT 从句(现在时)例如:

A: What time will the visitors come?

B: Nine a.m. *See that* you are ready at 8:30.

A: Surely. I'll *make certain that* everything is in order then.

B: That's fine. Thank you.

If you are not sure which choice should be made, you can guess; but you must *see to it that* you don't make two choices for one question.

5.3 “一般过去时”

5.3A 动词的形式

一般过去时动词的形式为 -ed 时态形式(见 4.2 C), 注意不规则动词的过去时形式和过去分词形式可能不同, 不要用错。

5.3B 一般过去时的句法特征

1) 带有表明“过去”含义的时间或地点状语。例如:

Charles Dickens lived *in* 1812—1870.

The two governments made public a joint statement *on*
September 29, 1972.

Long, long ago, there was a war between the birds and
the beasts.

At last the one that was beaten crept into a corner of
the hen-house.

Whitman left school *at eleven* to become an office boy
in a law firm, *then* worked for a doctor.

She began to love mathematics *in primary school.*

People cut down their forests *in ancient Babylonia,* and
that brought their country to ruin.

2) 句中不带过去时间状语,但本身含义是指过去。例如:

Where were you born?

Rome was not built in a day.

Did you enjoy your trip to China?

It was a cold winter morning.

Joshua Slocum was the first man to sail round the world
in a small boat with none but himself as captain, mate
and crew.

3) 下述句型的宾语从句要用过去时。例如:

It is time you *behaved* like an adult.

I'd rather (=I wish) you *lived* closer to us.

(参见8.6B)

cf:

It is time for us to leave now.

I'd rather live closer to them.

5.4 一般现在时形式与一般过去时形式的互换使用

在口语中，有时一般现在时形式所表示的是过去的动作或情况；反之，一般过去时形式又是表示现在的含义。

1) 一般现在时表示过去。如：

- { — You'd better take an umbrella. It looks as if it's going to rain.
- { — But the weather broadcast says it's going to clear up.
- { — Has there been any news of the Browns? I *hear* they had trouble last month.
- { — Tom *tells* me there was nothing serious.

上述句式往往用于比较熟悉的人之间，显得比较生动活泼。这样用的动词常带有声响意味，给人以“声犹在耳”之感。

2) 一般过去时表示现在，如：

- { — *Might* I make a suggestion, Mr Chairman?
- { — Yes, please do.
- { — *Did* you want me for something, sir? / Were you wanting ...?
- { — I *wondered* if you *could* help me with the typing. / I was wondering ...

上述句型的特点是语气婉转，显得客气和富有礼貌，不仅用于对上级讲话、与陌生人交谈，或在比较正式的场合向对方提出某种请求等，而且上级对下属或日常谈话时也多用这样的礼貌语言形式。



第六章 时态(二): 将来时

6.1 引言

英语里要不要讲“将来时”?这是语法界中长期争论的问题。以夸克(R. Quirk), 利奇(G. Leech) 等为代表的语法学者坚持叶斯帕森(O. Jespersen), 帕尔默(F. R. Palmer) 等的观点, 认为英语里没有与现在时“等量齐观”的将来时动词形式, 因而没有将来时, 而只有“将来时间表示法”, 包括七种基本形式: “will/shall + 不定式”, “be going to + 不定式”, “will/shall + 不定式进行体”, “be to + 不定式”, “be about to + 不定式”, “现在进行体”, “一般现在时”。

薄冰先生在1983年发表的专著《英语时态》的绪论中指出:“关于时态的种类,各家说法不一。我们认为,从中国学生的实际出发,目前仍以‘时’和‘态’的组合为根据进行分类为好。”该书仍讲将来时,以“shall/will”作为“将来一般时”的代表形式,同时在附录中把“be going to”, “be to”和“be about to”等列为“其他表示将来的手段”。英国广播公司和西德电视台、欧洲文化委员会等单位合作拍摄的英语教学片《跟我学》(Follow Me)将“will”和“be going to”结构同时列为“将来时”。P.W. Petersen 在 *Changing Times, Changing Tenses* (1980) 中又将“be about to”也列为“将来时”。美国《英语教学论坛》(The English Teaching Forum) 季刊1984年第3期有一篇文章,题为《从功能出发教七个将来时》(A Functional Approach to Seven Future

Tenses). 文中所述七种将来时结构和夸克等“将来时间表示法”的七种形式基本上一致。

本书试图从现代英语作为分析性语言的基本情况出发, 吸收上述两派语法学者的观点, 一方面仍旧沿用“将来时”的术语, 把借助助动词构成的复合结构“will/shall + 不定式”作为其谓语动词的代表形式; 另一方面, 又把“be going to”, “be (about) to”等均作为英语将来时的其他表现形式。从含义上看, 将来时的结构中往往带有说话人的猜测、打算、意愿等意思, 因而和情态助动词存在着某些“重叠”(OVERLAPPING)。形式上的多样性和意义上的复杂性, 是英语将来时的两大特色, 构成英语中一个生动活泼的语言现象, 也是我们教学中的一个难点所在。当然, 英语中的“将来时”也和“现在时”及“过去时”存在着共性, 例如它们都表现出“时态”与“时间”之间的联系和区别: 它们分别与将来、现在及过去时间有着经常的联系, 但有时又不表示这些时间, 即现在时不一定表示现在, 过去时不一定表示过去, 将来时也不一定表示将来。例如:

Alice tells me you're directing a wide-screen film. (一般现在时表示刚发生了的过去动作。)

I wondered if you could spare me a ticket for the three-dimensional film. (一般过去时表示现在, 显得客气。)

Please don't phone him now. He will be still seeing a documentary film. (将来形式表示对现在情况的推测: 他可能还在看电影。)

They will have seen the colour film last night. (将来完成表示对过去事情的推测: 他们可能已于昨晚看了那个电影。)

6.2 将来时的谓语动词形式

6.2A will/shall + 不定式

1) 此结构通常作为英语将来时的代表形式,这一方面是因为在表示将来的诸种结构中,以它的出现率最高。从肖伯纳的《卖花女》¹、哈罗德·品塔的《哑巴侍者》²及1984—1985年托福考试的《主考指南》³等三个作品的统计看,will, shall及它们的缩略式 'll 占表示将来句子总数的68%以上。另一方面,此结构最能自由地与不同的“体”搭配。例如:

The examinee *will do* listening comprehension tomorrow.

They *will be doing* listening comprehension at 8 tomorrow.

They *will have done* listening comprehension by 9 o'clock tomorrow morning.

2) will 和 shall 有时主要表示“可能”、“必须”、“准许”等情态助动词含义而不是指将来(见第九章),在它们表示的将来含义中,也常带有情态含义,一般说来,will 带有 willing 的意味,shall 带有 should 的意味。例如:

Go ahead and try; we *will* do our best to help you.

Is there anything I can help you with? I *shall* be happy to be of any service to you.

You *shall* be rewarded when you succeed.

We must do something to save the poor old man; he *shall* not die.

Jem says he *will* undertake the work.

3) 表示比较单纯的将来含义时,第一人称用 shall,第二、三人称用 will,这是传统的习惯。但在现代英语中,尤其是美国英语中,各种人称都可以用 will. 口语中常用缩写形式 'll 例如:

注 1: Pygmalion (1912) by Bernard Shaw (1856—1950)

2: Dumb Waiter (1960) by Harold Pinter (1930—)

3: 1984-85 Manual for Administering TOEFL

Where *shall* we be this time tomorrow? (也可用 *will*.)

I *shall* ring you up as soon as I arrive. (也可用 *will*,
或 'll)

但注意在句首、句末和 L 字母后面不能将 *will* 缩写。例如:

— *Will* you go there tomorrow, Toney?

— Yes, I *will*. And Paul *will* go there too, if it's fine.

4) “*Will* you please ...?” 和 “*Will* you + 进行体?” 这两种结构常用来提出要求或询问, 显得客气和富有礼貌。例如:

Will you please fill in this form?

— I won't be going down to the restuarant for dinner tonight.

I'll dine up here.

— *Will* you be taking cheese?

6.2B *be going to* + 不定式

1) 这个结构用在以“人”作主语的句子中, 表示计划、打算去做某件事。例如:

What *are* you *going to* do next Sunday?

Vicky *is going to* be a pilot when he grows up.

有时表示说话人按计划(或安排)即将做某件事, 带有提醒对方加以注意的含义。例如:

I *am now going to* give each of you a test book and a pencil.

I *am going to* collect the test books first and then the answer sheets.

2) 此结构也可以表示目前预感到的未来, 强调可能性。句子的主语既可以是“人”, 也可以是“物”。例如:

I'm afraid the child *is going to* have a high fever.

What a stifling day! It seems there's going to be a storm.
The world isn't going to crash, George. (天不会塌的)

6.2C be to + 不定式

1) 此结构主要表示计划、安排的将来动作, 这种安排可能是出自句中的主语, 也可能是针对句中的主语, 也可能是说话人表示接受(别人)安排、奉命行事。例如:

John and Mary *are to be* married in September.

We *are to have* colour rehearsal this evening.

The applicant *is to be* interviewed at 3 p.m. in the manager's office.

I *am to inform* you that the goods have been forwarded to your address, by car, this day.

2) 此结构用于疑问句(主语通常第一人称)时, 意思是请求对方作出指示或决定。例如:

What *is to be* done?

When *am I to* start?

Where *am I to* store the furniture?

How *are we to* get in touch with him if we fail to meet him at the airport?

3) 表示“应该”、“必须”、“可能”等情态含义。例如:

Such mistakes *are to be* avoided. (应当避免)

He *is to be* dealt with by the law. (应该法办)

Remember: Nobody *is to* know. (此事不得外传)

You *are to be* back by 10 o'clock. (必须)

The answer *is nowhere to be* found. (找不着)

4) 如果在 be to 结构中间插进 about, 则是强调动作即将发生, 或表示某动作刚要开始。例如:

Look! The game *is about to* start.

() You can take it from me that Lois is ever such a nice girl.

- A. 我敢向你保证，洛伊丝是个极好的姑娘。
- B. 你听我说，洛伊丝是你从来没有见过的好姑娘。
- C. 你不防听听我的看法，洛伊丝不是那种好姑娘。
- D. 洛伊丝从来不是那种好姑娘，我讲的话供你参考。

0237

() Fool that I am, I know better than to do that.

- A. 就像我这么笨的人，也知道做那件事要好一些。
- B. 我算是个头脑不灵的人，也知道多一事不如少一事。
- C. 我虽然愚蠢，还不至于干这样的事。
- D. 我所以是个笨人，就是眼高手低。

0238

() In point of strength, he is second to none.

- A. 就体力来说，他不比哪一个差。
- B. 论体力，哪一个都比他强。
- C. 谈到体力，他不算最好。
- D. 就体力而言，他只是一般而已。

0239

() Speaking frankly, I don't know every one of them.

- A. 说句老实话，这些人我并不是个个都认识。
- B. 老实说，他们中的每个人我都不认识。
- C. 坦白地说，他们中的每个人的底细我都不了解。
- D. 老实说，不见得他们当中的每个人我都不认识。

dren?

Shut up, Gill! You are not talking like that. (不许)

She's not the girl that I thought; and I am not having anything to do with her. (不再)

6.2E 用“现在时”表示将来

1) 同“进行体”表示将来的句子一样,“现在时”表示将来也常见于“转移”动词,并且句中也须有表示将来的状语或上下文。例如:

The Browns *arrive* here at 7 *this evening*.

When *does* the plane take off?

Will you be spending the week end with us at the sea-side? Berty's birthday *falls* on Sunday.

2) 在时间或条件状语从句中通常用现在时表示将来。例如:

I'll write to you as soon as I *arrive* home.

Please phone me the minute you *get in* (= get home).

If you *have* time, will you call me tomorrow?

· 宾语从句和定语从句中也有可能用现在时表示将来。例如:

Remember to write to let us know you *arrive* safely.

Let's wait and see what *follows*.

The state government will give \$10,000 to anyone who *brings* him to justice.

3) “现在时”表示的将来仍然带有现在时的基本含义,似乎是既成事实或已有的习惯,不会轻易改变的。例如:

The train *starts* at 6 a.m.

The election *takes place* in less than two weeks.

The new prime minister *makes* his policy speech tomorrow evening.

The 2nd Session of the 6th National People's Congress

opens on July 15 in Beijing.

6.3 不同将来时结构的比较

6.3A 从句中将来动作发生的可能性上看, will/shall 结构的含义比较笼统和一般化,它可以是一种主观的意愿,也可以是一种主观的估计,句中所指的动作也不一定发生。例如:

He *will* speak on the TV.

be going to 结构不论是指本人的打算,还是表示说话人的看法,句中动作发生的可能性都是很大的。例如:

He *is going to* speak on the TV (tomorrow evening).

“进行体”的本来含义是说明动作正在进行,用于表示将来动作时,其特点是在说话人的心目中所指的动作似乎已经开始进行,至少是着手在筹备了。因此,动作发生的可能性显然是大的。例如:

He *is speaking* on the TV this evening. Let's make ready to hear it.

“一般现在时”和 be to 结构所表示的未来动作都是已经计划安排好了的,带有“既成事实”的含意,不会随便改变,这两种结构常用于说明交通时刻、宣布官方的日程安排等。例如:

They *are flying to* Odean tomorrow morning. The airbus *takes off* at 10 a.m.

The Prime Minister *is to* adress the opening ceremony.

6.3B 从句子中所示动作与人们意愿的关系上看,如果讲的是客观预计,而不是人们的安排打算,是不以人们意志为转移的动作,则不应用“进行体”或“be to”结构,而应当用“will”或“be going to”结构。例如:

I'm afraid he *will miss/is going to miss* the first bus.

* ... *is missing* ...

* ... *is to miss* ...

It *is going to be/will be* cloudy tomorrow.

* ... is being ...

* ... is to be ...

另一方面,虽然“will”和“be going to”都能表示人们意愿中的动作,前者往往是指人们临时产生的想法,或当场表示的态度,而后者是指经过思考才说出来的。试比较:

— Did you inform Alice about the change?

— Sorry, not yet. But I'll do it right now.

— You won't forget my birthday, Daddy, will you?

— No, I won't? Teddy. And I'm going to buy you something nice.

6.4 “过去将来”

6.4A “过去将来”结构

“过去将来”结构主要是将来结构中的动词短语都采用过去时形式,如“would/should (+V)”, “was/were (going to)”, “was/were (+ -ing)”, “was/were to (+V)”等。

6.4B “过去将来”的使用场合

1) “过去将来”结构常见于宾语从句中,直接引语变为间接引语时,其中原有的将来时动词要变为过去将来形式;此外,人称和时间也有时要作相应变化。例如:

Dorothy said: “I'll call again after supper.”

— Dorothy said that she would call again after supper.

Billy said: “I'll be waiting for your call.”

— Billy said that he would be waiting for my call.

Mother asked: “Are you free tonight?”

— Mother asked me whether I was free that night.

2) 用于描述过去的某种预见,或意料之外的事。例如:

At first, they were quite certain that they were going to win the game.

He then asked for leave and went to Paris, in the believe that the affair *would be* hushed up.

Who would have thought there'd *be* an accident?

When he entered the Senate, Caesar did not know that he *was* shortly *to be* murdered by his dearest friend.

3) 用于说明过去曾经作出的计划、安排等。例如:

Then it was arranged that I *should meet/was going to meet/was to meet* him at the airport.

如果计划没有实现, 或者安排取消了, 在句中通常加上转折性的说明。例如:

He was going to write a sequel, *but a sudden death stopped it.*

She rang up to tell me that she would go/*was to go/was going to the country the following week end, but it happened to be nasty weather and she changed her mind.*

4) 用来表示过去经常性的动作或习惯。例如:

When he was old, he *would rise* early and take a walk before breakfast.

Occasionally the villagers *would* decide not to burn the sorcerer. Instead they *would* find a big beehive, put him inside alive, cover it, and then roll it down the slope of a very high hill like a tyre or wheel....

除上述例句中 *would + V* 结构以外, *used to + V* 也可以用来表示过去的习惯动作, 区别在于: *would* 可能带有 *willing* 的含意, 而 *used to* 只是就事论事地说明过去。试比较:

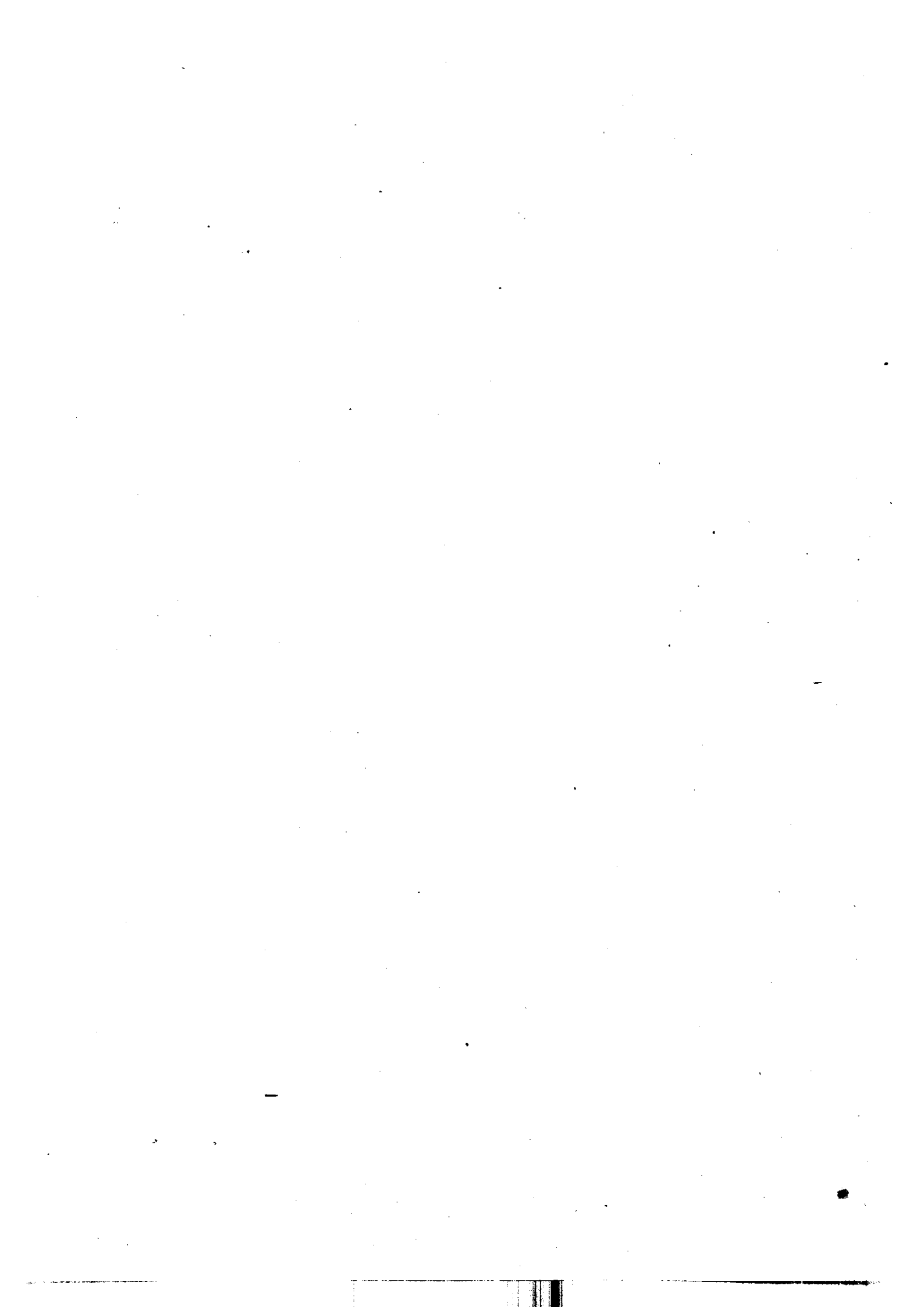
During his off hours, he *would* play chess with his seven-year-old nephew.

The job was exhausting; but he *used to* work an extra

shift on his off day for that little overtime pay to help feed his children.

另外, 还应注意 used to + V 和 be/get used to 的区别:

He's quite used to (= accustomed to) hard work/working hard.



第七章 时态(三):进行体与完成体

7.1 引言

体,包括一般体、进行体和完成体,都是与“时”密切相关的动词形式,其中一般体包含在一般现在时、一般过去时和一般将来时中,不予单独讨论;本章着重谈进行体与完成体。

进行体与完成体分别和“现在”、“过去”、“将来(包括过去将来)”相结合,可构成六种形式,即现在进行与现在完成,过去进行与过去完成,将来进行与将来完成;另外,“完成体+进行体”又可组合成现在完成进行、过去完成进行及将来完成进行三种复合形式。为了突出主要之点,我们将“进行”与“完成”作为两个中心环节,着重探讨它们的基本特征与主要用法。

7.2 “体”的结构及人称、时间概念

1) 进行体的结构是 BE + -ing 分词,完成体的结构是 HAVE + -ed 分词,其中 BE 和 HAVE 为基本助动词(参见9.1)。

2) 在限定动词短语中,“体”的人称与时间概念反映在助动词 BE 或 HAVE 的不同形式上。例如:

I am / You are / He is They are doing the typing now.

I have / You have / He has / They have done it already.

I / You / He / They will have done it by ten o'clock tonight.

I / You / He / They *had done* it two hours ahead of schedule.

在非限定动词短语中,只可以见到不同“体”的形式,其“时”及人称均从属于句中有关的限定动词短语。例如:

He *seems to be working hard*. (Seemingly, he *is working hard*.)

She *seemed to be working hard*. (Seemingly, she *was working hard*.)

Both of them *seem to have been working hard*. (Seemingly, they *have been working hard*.)

7.3 进行体

7.3A 进行体的含义特征

进行体的基本含义是表示现在、过去或将来某个时间正在进行的动作。例如:

Hurry up! They *are waiting* for you!

One evening March *was standing* with her back to the sunset, her gun under arms, her hair pushed under her cap. She *was half watching, half musing*.

Remember not to call from nine to eleven, will you?
Dr.

Herman *will be doing* an operation.

进行体所表示的动作,不论发生在现在、过去或将来的某个时间里,都具有持续、暂时和未完成等特征。前面讲到表示静态含义的动词不用于进行体,就是由于它们不是代表明显的动作,谈不上进行体的上述特征;有时,通常表示静态含义的动词用在进行体,其含义已由静态转成了动态,即用来表示某个时间里正在进行的动作。例如:

Just then I *was hearing* (listening to) the Hunga-rian

Phapsodies by Franz List.

To die for one's country is an art, but a still greater art is *knowing* (=learning) how to live for it.

Like a chess-player who is always several moves ahead he was already *seeing* (=looking for) his way around these difficulties.

I *am supposing*, for purpose of this argument, that your intentions are unknown. (=... taking the temporary assumption that ...)

Surely you're *imagining things*, my child. You must remember the saying: No sweet without sweat. (Meaning: entertaining or indulging oneself with illusions.)

7.3B 现在进行体的几种特殊用法

1) 表示正在开始(进行)的动作或逐渐(出现)的情景,这类用法主要见于一些表示瞬间动作或位置转移的动词。例如:

Now I'm *beginning* to see the point.

The sun is *setting* — it's time to go home.

Don't worry. Her health is *improving*.

The weather is *changing* for the better.

2) 表示现阶段进行的动作,但说话时却不一定正在进行。例如:

"Looking for Lena? Sorry, she's not here. She is *atten-ding* a calligraphy course in Beijing." said her waitress.

That success was by no means the end of his research. He was *now studying* virus infections in an intensive way.

The 37th World Table Tennis Championships is going on in Tokyo, Japan this week.

3) 与 *always, continually, constantly, for ever* 等频度状语连用表示经常发生的动作, 其中带有说话人的某种感情色彩, 大都是表示厌烦、不满。例如:

You are always doubting my words.

He was continually foreseeing (= expecting) difficulties which never occurred.

My lathe is constantly breaking down.

Your brother is forever displeasing people.

但是, 有时也表示赞赏口气。例如:

We are always finding new beauties in Shakespeare's poetry.

Granny's a kind woman; she is constantly helping her neighbours when they are in troubles.

4) 表示过去或将来的动作, 前面6.4节讲到, 进行体加将来时间含义时, 所表示的是未来动作, 而且是计划安排中就要进行的。例如:

— *Has Nick gone?*

— *Not yet. But he's just going.*

因此, 当我们去某人家走访时, 若听到诸如 “*I'm taking my son to hospital*”, “*We are just going to music, but there's no hurry*”

这样的话时, 即使人家挽留, 也应赶快告辞。

另一方面, 现在进行体也可以表示过去, 但不是很久之前, 而是刚刚过去的动作, 这种用法主要用于熟人间的谈话。例如:

— *It was a rabbit, not a lion; you're exaggerating as usual.*

— You don't believe it? You know *I'm telling* the truth.

— A Ha, I see what you're *talking* about, you are

—
Oh, shut up, Brian. What *I'm trying* to say is you don't see my line of argument.

过去进行体的几种特殊用法:

1) 用于表示过去的未来动作,也能与 *always* 等副词连用表示感情色彩。例如:

— Did you know then when they *were leaving*?

— Not exactly. It was only my guess that they were leaving soon.”

— You *were always guessing*! Now everything you tell me must be exact, definite, clear-cut. See it?

2) 表示过去曾打算做某事,但因故未能作成。例如:

We were coming, but missed the last bus.

I was telling them all about it if you didn't stop me.

3) 用于铺叙故事情节或谈话背景。例如:

A Miller and his son *were driving* their Ass to a neighbouring fair to sell him. They had not gone far when they met with a troop of girls returning from the town talking and laughing —

As I *was walking* along Piccadilly the other day, a car mounted the pavement and crashed into a shop

—
用于上述含义的过去进行体后面常跟以 *when* 引导的过去时状语从句。例如:

She was making some fresh coffee when we arrived.

It was a stormy day, and the snow was falling fast, when a Goatherd drove his goats, all white with snow, into a desert cave for shelter —

注意,上述句子汉译时,如果用“当……的时候,……”这种句式,两种语言的词序不相同:英语中的进行体在主句,汉语中的进行体在以“当”引导的从句。当然,也有时 *when* 表示 *while* 的含义,并且英汉两种语句中的词序正好一致。例如:

On a summer's day, when everything was suffering from extreme heat, a Lion and a Goat came at the same time to quench their thirst at a small fountain —

(夏季的一天,在(当)万物感到极度酷热的时候,一只狮子和一只山羊同时来到一眼小泉喝水……)

7.4 完成体

7.4A 完成体的基本含义

完成体分为现在完成体,过去完成体和将来完成体。现在完成体是表示过去已经开始的动作(或状态)在现在的情况:是已经完成(或结束)了呢,还是尚未完成(或结束)?前者称为“已完成含义”(finished sense),后者称为“未完成含义”(unfinished sense)。例如:

My Ellick has graduated from Cambridge and is now going to find something to do. (finished sense)

I have stayed in this beautiful city for a week, and I'll be here till next Tuesday. (unfinished sense)

已完成含义与未完成含义,在过去完成体和将来完成体中同样存在,只是时间分别向过去或未来推移。例如:

After my friend's mother had seen me wash my hands

carefully, she let me take down the book.

(finished sense)

The teacher said she *had made* some progress in the new term, and he wished her to do still better.

(unfinished sense)

They *will have finished* the project by the end of 1984.

(finished sense)

You'll *have got* only halfway then if you don't hurry up.

(unfinished sense)

由于“已完成含义”倾向于表示动作的结果，而“未完成含义”则倾向于强调动作的持续，并常常与表示一段时间的状态语连用，因此，一些表示短暂动作的动词只宜用于已完成含义。例如：

He *has come* to Shanghai.

He *has come* to Shanghai for two years.

She *has died*.

She *has died* for two months.

如果要表示“他来这里两年了”或“他去世两年了”这样的意思，须用下述句型：

It is two years since he came here / died.

Two years have passed since he came here/died.

He has been *here/dead* for two years.

7.4B 现在完成体与时间状语的搭配

1) 现在完成体的时间状语必须包括说话的时间，如果用 today, this week 等状语，说话的时间在状语所表示的时间范围以内，否则应当用过去时。例如：

I *have seen* him *this morning*. (午饭之前讲)

I saw him *this morning*. (午饭以后的时间讲)

包括现在时间在内的不确定时间状语，都能与现在完成体连用，如 *often, never, ever, always, so far, (not) — yet, all day, all this while, these few days, etc.*

— Have you *ever* read any Scottish popular ballads?

— No, never. (=I've *never* read any.)

Haven't you finished the novel *yet*?

— Not yet. I've covered only two-thirds *so far*.

2) 确切的过去时间状语不能与现在完成体连用，但是 *just, in the past few days* 等与说话时间有密切联系，因而常和现在完成体搭配。例如：

Elsie is much better today. I've *just seen* her in hospital.

In the past ten minutes, I have learned much.

In the past twenty or thirty years, a revolution has taken place in the academic approach to grammar —

An enormous amount of work *has been done* to turn things to normal *in the past five years* since 1978.

类似的时间状语还有 *recently, until/till/up to now, up to the present, before, etc.* 注意 *just now, a moment ago, last week* 等都是明确地指过去时间，应与过去时态搭配。试比较：

She *has just come*. She *came just now*.

We *have met before*. I *met her a few minutes ago*.

3) 以 *since* 或 *for* 引导的时间状语都与现在时间有关，都可与现在完成体连用。例如：

He has been here *since two o'clock*.

Since his first novel, Mr. Bragg's talent has grown until

he has now achieved utter truthfulness.

They *have not visited* us since Henry went to Norway.

He's *lived* in Switzerland for quite a long time.

I *haven't smoked* cigarette for weeks.

上述例句表明：*since* 后面跟的是过去的某个时间(或事件)，有“从那个时候(事件)以来”的含义；而 *for* 后面跟的是一段时
间，意思是“已经……时间了”。两者在含义上有相通之处，有时可
以在不同的句型中表示相同的意义。例如：

It hasn't rained *for* three weeks.

— It is (=has been) three weeks *since* the last rain.

It is (=has been) a long time *since* he was dead.

— He has been dead *for* a long time.

注意：当 *since* 后边跟的是某个事件，是指从那个事件结束
以来。例如：

Great changes have taken place *since* World War
II.

(Meaning: ... since the Second World War ended.)

Ever since the war, the bat comes out only at night.

(Referring to the conclusion of the war between the
birds and the beasts in a fairy tale.)

若 *since* 后边跟的动词表示的是状态或持续动作，则是指该
状态或动作结束以来。例如：

I haven't seen him *since* he was ill. (指他病愈以来)

The Simon's seldom write to me *since* they lived in the
country. (指他们从乡下搬家以后)

如果要表示“从战争开始以来”，或“自从他生病以来”，应当说
“since the beginning of the war”，或者“since he has been
ill”。

4) 现在完成体能与 *where, who, how* 等疑问副词搭配, 但不能与 *when* 连用, 因为 *when* 涉及具体的某个时间。例如:

Where have you put the books?

Why have you put the books there?

How have you kept the books?

When did you put the books there?

7.4C 过去完成体与时间状语的搭配

1) 过去完成体能与明确表示过去时间的状语连用。例如:

It turned out that Professor Witcher *had been* a tour lecturer from 1975 to 1976.

According to the information from the post-office, the parcel *had arrived* on April 14.

2) 在与 *before, after* 等引导的状语从句搭配时, 过去完成体有时用于主句, 有时用于从句, 目的都是强调动作发生的先后。例如:

I reached the station *after* the train had left.

— The train had left *before* I reached the station.

由于 *before* 或 *after* 等连词本身带有先后含义, 因此, 主句和从句都可以用一般过去时。例如:

I reached the station *after* the train left.

— The train left *before* I reached the station.

如果在以 *before* 引导的从句中用过去完成体, 则是表示该动作未完成(或没有作)。例如:

Time was up *before* I *had finished* my paper. (动作尚未完成)

It started to rain *before* they *had set out*. (动作尚未开始)

7.4D 完成进行体

完成进行体是完成体和进行体的综合形式，其共同特点是突出“未完成”含义，既强调该动作前一阶段的连续性，也强调该动作还要继续下去的趋势。例如：

— “Whatever *have you been doing* all this time?” she asked fretfully.

“Can't you see I've *been sawing*?” was the reply.

It *had been raining* for two days, the drizzling mountain rain of the Cameroons.

Everybody *had been trying* to lend me money, but I *had fought* off most of them on one pretext or another.



第八章 时态(四):对比与转换

8.1 引言

在前面三章中,我们从“现在”、“过去”、“将来”、“进行”和“完成”等五个方面讨论了时态。鉴于不同时态形式有时表示的含义相类似,同时在一定条件下,一种时态形式会转换成另一种时态形式,本章准备专门谈谈时态中的对比与转换问题。

8.2 一般现在时与现在进行体

1. 一般现在时用于说明客观事实或情况,而现在进行体用于描述目前正在进行的动作或现出的情景。例如:

- { Westminster Aridge crosses the Thames near the House of Parliament.
- { Our car is now crossing the Thames at Westminster Bridge.
- { The old lady writes children's stories.
- { The playwright is (now writing) a scenario.
- { This bottle leaks, and so I've got to buy a new one.
- { Look! Your bottle is leaking.
- { Oil floats on water, for oil is lighter.
- { We've spoilt some oil and it is floating on the water.

在说明物品的质量,或评论人们的工作、性格时,一般现在时带有固定、可靠的含义,而现在进行体只是说明眼前的表现,带有“暂时”性,试比较:

{ This clock *keeps* good time. It has a well-deserved reputation.

{ That clock *is keeping* good time now, but you may find it stop at any moment.

{ Rong and his members *present* excellent team work in the game.

{ As they were warned in the first half time, they *are presenting* better team work now.

{ The teacher *is* (always) friendly to his students.

{ He used to be rather hard on us; but today he's *being* quite friendly.

2. 一般现在时表示动作的经常性、习惯性，而现在进行体表示动作的持续性和暂时性；前者句中的状语带有反复、经常的含义，后者的状语通常是“现在”、“目前”、“此刻”等。例如：

{ Where *does* Peggy (usually) do her typing?

{ Where *is* she *doing* her typing now.

{ Ruth *cycles* to her office every day.

{ Ruth *is cycling* to her office now.

{ As her car is being repaired, Ruth *is cycling* to work these days.

3. 一般现在时用于就事论事地说明事实，而现在进行体表示说话人的思想活动，带感情色彩。试比较：

{ Do be careful— *think of* your poor mother!

{ I'm *thinking of* (=missing) my old mother now! (表示思念)

- { Bernard no longer *worked* here. He's been fired for being incompetent.
- { Oh, poor Berney *is* no longer *working* with us. He's got injured and lost his job. (表示同情)
- { The boy always *gets up* late.
- { The boy *is always getting up* late. (表示不满和忧虑)
- { Does he *say* so?
- { Is he *saying* so? (表示惊讶)

8.3 一般过去时与现在完成体

1. 一般过去时与现在完成体所指的动作或状态都是在过去的时间里已经开始了的。区别在于：现在完成体所指的动作或状态不论在说话时已经结束，还是仍在继续，都与现在时间有联系；如果没有联系，就纯粹是指过去的事情，应当用过去时表示。例如：

- { Her late husband *was* a middle school teacher all his life. (已去世)
- { My former husband *has been* a stamp-collecting fan all his life. (仍健在)
- { She *has stayed* here for over two weeks. (可能还在这里，也可能刚刚离去)
- { She *stayed* here for several days, but left long ago. (肯定已经离开)
- { — *Have you ever seen* my nail-clippers?
- { — Yes, I *saw* them on the shelf a moment ago.

2. 一般过去时常与表示确切过去含义的状语连用，与现在完成体搭配的状语必须和现在时间有关(见 7.5B)例如：

- { — I haven't heard from Susan *for long*.
- { — Well, I *saw* her *last Tuesday*. She's well.

- { — Have you *ever* made bread, John?
- { — Yes, I made some *just yesterday evening*.
- { — I wonder whether you've *ever* been to Puerto Rico.
- { — No, I *never* have. The Carpenters went there *last winter*.

3. 一般过去时系指过去时间内的动作,而现在完成体主要表示过去已经开始的动作在目前的进展情况,或过去动作所产生的结果:影响、经验等。例如:

- { — Do have the rest of the mashed potato.
- { — No, thank you. I've *had* too much already.

- { — Would you like to watch the variety show again?
- { — Yes, I'd love to, for I didn't see it all last time.
- { cf: No. I've seen it twice already.

- { — I've got a serious headache, doctor. And I keep feeling dizzy.
- { — How long have you been like this?
- { — It started on the day before yesterday.

- { — Since you have been to the United States, I wondered if you could tell us about the social customs there, say, informality of the Americans?
- { — Well, I went there when I was very young, you see, and stayed for only a few months. Now you'd better go to Mr. Lin. He's lived there for the best half of a decade.

8.4 一般过去时与过去进行体

1. 一般过去时和过去进行体用于表示同样的某种动作时,前者带有“完成”含义,后者表示“未完成含义”,例如:

{ I read Aladdin and the Wonderful Lamp yesterday. It's
 so interesting that I finished it at one sitting.
 { I was reading The Arabian Nights yesterday evening,
 but I covered only half of it.
 { The heavy rain stopped at midnight.
 { The heavy rain was stopping (= began to stop) at
 midnight.

2. 与 as, while, when (含义均为当……的时候) 连用时的情况有:

1) 在以 as 引导的分句中, 一般过去时或过去进行体可以互用。例如:

As we entered / were entering the theatre, we happened to meet Mary and her sister.

The policeman noticed him as he got off / was getting off the bus.

2) 在以 while 引导的分句中, 表示持续含义的动词一般过去时和过去进行体可以互用。例如:

Jane was cooking / cooked the dinner while her brother was playing / played the cards.

She broke a glass while she was doing / did the washing.

注意: 不能将上面一句改为: She was doing the washing / did the washing while she broke a glass, 因为 while 本身含有较强的持续含义。而 broke 表示的是一次性短暂动作。表示短暂动作的动词, 如果用进行体表示动作的连续反复时, 则能与 while 搭配。例如:

All the children were shouting while they were jumping.
 Mr. Humphery was ordered to be standing in the corner while the gang were breaking the windows.

3) when 有时作为 while 或 as 的替代词使用。例如:

Their pens were moving on the paper *when* the teacher was reading the dictation.

All of a sudden, the fox was seen at the foot of the hill *when* she was looking downward.

注意 *when* 的这种用法与 7.2C 中讲到的“过去进行体 + *when* + 一般过去时”结构之间的区别, 该结构中的 *when* 相当于 *and just then* 的意思。例如:

The officers and men were all enjoying themselves at the week-end *when* there started bombing.

On July 5, 1977, housewife Sandra Mansi was walking along the lake shore near St. Albans, Vt., *when* she noticed a disturbance 150 yards out in the water ...

另外, *when* 还能表示 *after* 或 *the moment* 等含义, 连接两个动词的一般过去时形式, 表示两个密切相关的先后动作。例如:

When (= *After*) we arrived, she made some fresh coffee.

When (= *The moment*) the clown appeared on the stage, the whole audience burst out laughing.

8.5 一般现在时与一般将来时

1. 一般现在时用来说明时刻表, 将来时表示对未来动作情况的估计。试比较:

{ The plane *leaves* Gatwick Airport at 12:30 (every day).
Our plane *will get to* Maforca at two o'clock in the afternoon.

{ According to the summer time table, the first period of class *begins* at 8 a.m.
The oral exam tomorrow *will start* at half past eight in the morning.

2. 一般现在时直接说明一个事实,将来时表示说话人的个人判断或推算结果等。试比较:

{ Model ships *float* on water.
{ This model ship *will float* on water.

{ Tomorrow *is* Friday. Does your sister still work
Fridays?
{ Today is Thursday and tomorrow *will be* Friday.

3. 在 if 从句中通常用一般现在时表示将来含义;有时也可用将来时形式,但语气比较委婉,显得更加客气。试比较:

{ I'll come if it *suits* you.
{ I'll come if it *will suit* you.

{ If that *is* what you want to do, we'll help you.
{ If that'll be what you want to do, please go ahead;

8.6 几个常用句型的时体选择

8.6A I wish ...; I'd rather ...

1) 在 I wish ... 后面的宾语从句中用一般过去时或过去进行体,表示目前没有实现的愿望。例如:

I wish our retired blocker *played/was playing* with us here.

如果宾语从句的含义是指过去,则用过去完成或过去完成进行体。例如:

I wish he *had played/had been playing* with us in yesterday's game.

2) 在 I'd rather 后面如果是讲别人的动作,则与 I wish 后边的从句在时体形式和含义上都相同;如果 "I'd rather 在后面的意思是“宁愿自己去做某件事”,则用动词原形。试比较:

I'd rather our lost game *was/were* replayed.

I'd rather go there myself.

8.6B It's time ...; It's the first time ...

1) 在 *It's time* 后面若有介词短语 *for somebody* 时,应再跟不定式,否则应跟一般过去时或过去进行体。例如:

It's time for you to have a day off.

It's time (that) you had/were having a day off.

有时还会在 *It's time* 中间插进 *high, about* 等修饰语,那么后边,通常是跟过去时或过去进行体,此句型常常带有不耐烦的含义,似乎是“早就该(做了)”。例如:

It's high (or about) time you told us all about it!

2) 在 *It is the first time* 后面应接以 *that* 引导的分句,其中关联词 *that* 通常省略,当主句动词为 *is* 或 *will be* 时,分句都用现在完成体。例如:

It's the first time you have won the world championship.

It will be the first time the new prime minister has visited Ottawa.

当主句动词为 *was* 时,分句相应使用过去完成体。例如:

She went to the BBC Summer School in 1967. It was the first time she'd been on a summer school and she thoroughly enjoyed it.

如果句中有包括目前时间在内的状语,那么也可以不用过去完成体,而改用现在完成体。试比较:

It was the first time I had been abroad that year.

It was the first time I have been abroad this year.

注意:上述结构中的 *it* 和 *time* 都可用适当的其他名词替代, *time* 有时还可省去;其中的 *first* 也可根据内容需要改用其他序数词。例如:

That was the third time I had heard from him.

It's the first Ford we've had.

It's the first month I haven't been overdrawn for ages.

This evening will be the twenty-ninth time we have done the experiment.

Yesterday was the second time she had arrived late.

— *D'you know that June's getting married next week?*

— *Is she? Well, she certainly kept that secret. It's the first I've heard of it, and I've been working in the same office with her for the last two months.*

另外,应将上述句型与作状语用的词组 *the first(second, etc) time* 相区别,这类词组通常与一般过去时或将来时搭配。例如:

The first time she took the exam she failed, but she passed the second time.

Don't worry, that was your first lesson, and most people find it difficult at first. The second time you try, you'll find it much easier.

8.7 时体转换

8.7A 单句中的时体转换

在单句中,说话人所指的时间不同(通常以状语表示),句中谓语的时体形式也不相同。

1) 不同时间状语往往引起时体转换。例如, *often, usually, occasionally, every day/week/month* 等状语通常和一般现在时连用; 如另有表示过去的状语或上下文, 则转为过去时形式。例如:

Ralph visits Stella every week.

→ *Ralph visited Stella every month before he moved here.* 又如, *soon, next summer, in a few days* 等通常与将来

时连用； *ever, never, for, since* 等常与完成体连用； *now, at this moment* 等常与进行体连用。例如：

Ralph will visit/is going to visit Stella next year.

Ralph hasn't visited Stella for the whole summer / since last summer.

Ralph is visiting Stella now / at present.

在句中没有其他时间状语时，*just* 常与完成体搭配，而 *just now* 则要与过去时连用。例如：

Ralph has just visited Stella.

Ralph visited Stella just now.

2) 有时地点状语或其他某个句子成份具有时间含义，并要求相应的时体形式。试比较：

{ *My seven-year-old boy is beginning to like mathematics in the primary school.*

{ *Dr. Hua began to like mathematics in the primary school (=when he was in the primary school).*

{ *A modernized China won't be built in a day.*
{ *Rome wasn't built in a day.*

{ *The prime minister is loved by us all.*
{ *The late prime minister was loved by all his people.*

{ *The sinking ship has been calling for help.*
{ *The sunken ship had called for help but it was no use.*

8.7B 复合句中的时体转换

复合句中分句的时态常常受主句时态的影响而发生必要的转换。这种现象常称之为时态呼应或时态一致。

1) 主句由现在转过去时后，分句的时体向过去推移，一般情况可用如下公式表示：

主句

现在→过去

分句

现在→过去

过去→过去完成

现在完成→过去完成

一般将来→过去将来

The man *rides* a bike, although he *has* a lame leg.

→ The man *rode* a bike, although he *had* a lame leg.

John *is trying* to please the manager; he *offended* him yesterday.

→ John *was trying* to please the manager; he *had offended* him the previous day/the day before.

I *don't* want to go to the movie because I *have already seen* it.

→ I *didn't* want to go to the movie because I *had already seen* it.

Do you think they *will come*?

→ *Did* you think they *would come*?

He *tells* me they *are leaving*.

→ He *told* me they *were leaving*.

2) 主句由现在时转将来时,分句的时体形式通常不变。例如:

You *know* (that) this bird *makes* a new nest each year.

→ You'll *know* (that) this bird *makes* a new nest each year.

It *tells* me (that) everything *has been going on* smoothly.

→ It'll *tell* you (that) everything *has been going on* smoothly.

People *find* that the former government *worked* hard to boost production.

→ People *will soon find* how hard the former government *worked* to boost production.

The old man goes fishing when/if the weather *permits*.

→ The old man *will* go fishing tomorrow when/if weather *permits*.

8.7C 由直接引语到间接引语的时体转换

上节复合句中的时体转换规则也适用于直接引语到间接引语的转换。只是在变间接引语时,除了时体转换外,人称代词、限定词、表示时间或地点的词语通常都要发生相应的变化,有时动词也要作相应的调整。例如:

1) 陈述句:

He said, "*I will come here again for my ticket tomorrow.*"

→ He said that *he would go there for his ticket the next day.*

2) 一般疑问句:

He asked, "*Is everything ready?*"

→ He asked *if/whether* everything *was* ready.

3) 特殊疑问句:

She asked, "*What is your name?*"

→ She asked what *was* my name / ... what my name *was*.

4) 祈使句:

He said to us, "*Take a ten-minute break,*"

→ He asked us/*told us to take* a ten-minute break.

5) 形式上是疑问句,实际上为祈使句:

"*Will you please buy me some stamps?*" she said to me.

→ She asked me *to buy* some stamps for her.

“Can I trouble you to shut the door?”

= “Please shut the door.”

→ He asked me to shut the door.

“May I trouble you for the salt?”

= “Please pass me the salt.”

→ He asked me to pass him the salt.

6) 以疑问句形式表示建议或主动提出帮助别人:

“Why don't you take a taxi?” he said to the old lady.

→ He advised the old lady to take a taxi.

“Why not make your dress, instead of buying it?” she said.

→ She suggested that I (should) make my dress instead of buying it.

“What about staying here for another day?” he said to me.

→ He suggested staying here / there for another day.

“Shall I carry your bag for you?” the man said to me.

→ The man offered to carry the bag for me.



第九章 助动词

9.1 引言

英语助动词主要分两类：基本助动词和情态助动词。基本助动词有三个：do, have, be；情态助动词有九个：may, can, will, shall, ought (to), must, need, dare, used to。

助动词是构成动词短语的一部分，帮助主要动词组成谓语动词。不论是基本助动词还是情态助动词，都不能在句中担任谓语动词，但在省略句中也能以谓语动词形式出现。例如：

- Do you smoke?
- Yes, I *do*.
- Can I smoke here?
- Yes, you *can* (smoke here).

情态助动词没有人称、数及时态的完整屈折变化，但在含义与使用上相当复杂，是我们中国学生的难点之一。本章着重讨论情态助动词的几种主要用法及含义，关于情态助动词在非真实条件句中表示虚拟含义的用法，将在第十一章述及。

9.2 助动词的屈折变化形式

9.2A 基本助动词的屈折变化

基本助动词有人称、数和时态等屈折变化形式：

DO: do, does, did.

HAVE: have, has, had, having.

BE: am, are, is, was, were, been, being.

9.2B 情态助动词的屈折变化

1) 情态助动词没有人称或数的形式变化,只是有时与不同的人称搭配所表示的含义有所不同。试以 shall 为例:与第一人称搭配时通常表示“单纯未来”,与第二、三人称搭配时则往往带“许可”或“禁止”等种种不同的情态含义。试比较:

I shall be very old, when my youngest son grows up.

(将来)

We shall soon see how the affair ends. (将来)

You shall not set foot here again. (命令)

He shall go if he wishes. (允许)

Every boy shall do this, whether he wants it or not. (强制)

You shall smart for this. (威胁:你一定要因此吃苦头。)

2) 情态助动词虽有时态变化,但不完全:有些有相应的过去时形式,有些没有过去时形式,也有的没有现在时形式;它们大多数可以帮助主要动词表示某种将来含义,但它们本身没有将来时形式。兹列表说明如下:

现在时形式	过去时形式
may	might
can	could
must	—
ought (to)	—
will	would
shall	should
need	—
dare	dared
—	used to

几点补充说明:

a. *have to* 有时代替 *must* 表示“必须(做某事)”或“不得不(做某事)”等含义,并有过去及将来等不同变化形式。例如:

In the 1580s, people *had to be* in line with the Greek philosopher Aristotle (384—322 BC) in all scientific thought.

You'll *have to* clear off the rent within three days if you want to stay here.

b. *be able to* 可代替 *can* 表示“能够”的意思,并通过 *be* 表示出各种屈折变化形式;除过去、现在、将来等不同的时态形式以外,还能以不定式或 *-ing* 形式出现于句子中。例如:

She expects to *be able to* go with her daughter.

My *being able to* lift the trunk amazed him indeed.

此外还应注意: *can/could* 泛指现在或过去的某种能力,含义比较笼统,而 *be able to* 用于强调某个特定时间或条件下能够做到某件事情。试比较:

Dr Johnson is/was specialized in chemistry, but he *can/could* take up geography as well.

John *will be able to* get home at lunch time tomorrow if he takes the airbus.

The poor Ass *was able to/had been able to* go only half-way when he dropped dead.

They have *been able to* lead a life of luxury as their father left a fortune behind him seven years ago.

9.3 助动词的否定形式

9.3A 基本助动词的否定形式及相应的缩写形式

am not — aren't, ain't *are* not — aren't

is not— isn't *was* not—wasn't *were* not—weren't

have not—haven't *has not—hasn't* *had not—hadn't*
do not—don't *does not—doesn't* *did not—didn't*

9.3B 情态助动词的否定形式及其缩写形式

<i>can not—cannot, can't</i>	<i>could not—couldn't</i>
<i>may not—mayn't</i>	<i>might—mightn't</i>
<i>shall not—shan't</i>	<i>should not—shouldn't</i>
<i>will not/'ll not—won't</i>	<i>would not/'d not—wouldn't</i>
<i>must not—mustn't</i>	<i>have not to — haven't to, don't</i> <i>have to</i>
<i>ought not (to)</i>	<i>had not to — hadn't to</i>
<i>— oughtn't (to)</i>	<i>didn't have to</i>
<i>need not—needn't</i>	<i>dare not—daren't</i>
<i>used not to/did not use(d) to—usedn't to/didn't use(d) to</i>	

几点补充说明:

1. 情态助动词 *dare* 和 *need* 也能用作及物动词, 它们的否定式须借助作用词 *do* (*does, did*), 其后面的不定式往往带 *to*, 但也可以不带。例如:

She dare not speak.

→ *She doesn't dare (to) speak.*

He needn't copy it.

— *He doesn't need (to) copy it.*

2. *have to* 的否定式可以用 *don't have to*, 有时也用 *haven't to* 例如:

They have to be back before ten p.m., don't they/haven't they?

It's still early. You don't have to be in such a hurry.

3. *must not* 表示“禁止”含义时和“*be not to (do sth.)*”同义, 例如:

Examinees *mustn't/are not to* use any calculators.

当 *must not* 表示“不必”的意思时，有时用 *have to* 或 *need* 的否定式表示。例如：

{ — Must you leave so soon?
— No, I *needn't/don't have (got) to*.

{ — Must every one be invited?
— No, they *needn't/don't have to*.

9.4 情态助动词的几种主要含义

9.4A 上级口气与平级口气

may, must, should 和 *can, have to, ought (to)* 相比，前一组通常带有上级命令的口气，而后一组则是以平级的口气说话，试比较：

You { *may* } smoke here. (表示准许对方吸烟)
 { *can* } (认为对方抽烟没什么妨碍)

You { *must* } be back by ten o'clock. (提出要求，带令口气)
 { *have to* } (着重说明情况必需)

You { *should* } be more careful next time. (带批评口吻)
 { *ought to* } (带规劝味道)

因此，在请求对方允许时，用“*May/Must/Shall*(这里的*shall* 等于 *should*) I ...?” 句型显得语气婉转谦逊和富有礼貌，而在回答上述请求时，为了客气和尊重对方，即使是上司对下级，也通常不用 *may, must, should* 等词，甚至也避免用 *can, have to, ought to* 等，而改用更礼貌的句子形式，例如：“Yes, please do.” “Certainly.” “I’m afraid you *have to*.” “Sorry, not now.” “Oh, no, please wait (until you are informed).”

有时为了避免重复，将 *may not (+ V), be not allowed to*

(+ V), *must not* (+ V) 等同时用在某个段落里表示类似含义。

例如:

... Note paper *may NOT* be used during the test. You *are NOT allowed* to mark your answers in the test book, and you *must NOT* make any notes in your test book or on the answer sheet. (上述含义均为“不许”、“不得”)

另外, 第一人称时常用 *must* 表示服从上级的态度, 或表示说话人的责任感, 或在打招呼告别时使得话语恳切、客气。例如:

We *must* start the project earlier as instructed.

I *must* phone my colleagues to inform them about the revised program.

It's ten o'clock. I *must* be going now.

9.4B 推测性用法与非推测性用法

1) 两种用法的含义区分

情态助动词有时表示说话人的主观估计、判断, 如说明可能性的大小。这时的情态助动词属于推测性用法; 在另外的场合, 如上面 9.4A 节里讲到的, 情态助动词用来表示赞成与否、准许与否, 或者表示能力、要求、命令等含义, 统称为非推测性用法。试比较:

- { Professor Su needs no interpreter, for he *can* speak Japanese himself. (非推测性用法: 意指“能力”)
- { He *can't* have talked Spanish yesterday; he doesn't know the language. (推测性用法: 估计“不可能”)
- { You *must* hand it in within one hour. (非推测性用法: 要求对方必须做到)
- { John is always making such silly mistakes. He *must* be very careless. (推测性用法: 表示判断, 意为“肯定”)

Come on, George. You *may* have another try. (非推测性用法: 表示允许)

If he isn't at home, he *may* be still in the office. (推测性用法: 表示揣测的可能性)

2) 推测性用法中可能性的大小程度

使用不同的情态动词表示的“可能性”，有程度大小的区别，即使是同一个情态助动词，其过去时形式在含义上比现在时形式要弱一些。大体说来，*might* 表示的可能性程度最低，实际上等于“不大可能”的意思，*may* 表示的可能性稍大点，接着 *could* 和 *can* 含义逐步增强，由 *should*, *ought (to)* 到 *would*, *will* 便到达“很有可能”的程度，待到使用 *must* 已是“肯定可能”的意思。兹列表举例说明如下：

情态助动词	例 句	释 义
<i>might</i>	Ali might still stage a comeback.	It is possible, though unlikely, that Ali will ...
<i>may</i> <i>could</i> <i>can</i>	She may not be in. Joe could be a little annoying Even expert drivers can make mistakes.	It is possible that she isn't in. It's just possible that he will ... It is possible that even expert drivers will ...
<i>should/</i> <i>ought(to)</i> <i>would</i> <i>will</i>	The children ought to/should be home by now. She would be about fifty now, I suppose. You will have heard the news.	They probably are, but I'm not certain. She is probably about ... It's quite probable ...
<i>must</i>	He must be ill.	I'm sure/It's certain that ...

9.4C 过去含义与非过去含义

前面 9.2 节讲过，情态助动词可能有现在时和过去时的形式区别。在表示推测含义时，过去时形式口气比较婉转，含义比较弱，但不表示时间上的差异。实际上，现在时形式不一定表示现在，过去时形式也不一定表示过去。试以 *may/might* 为例：

He <i>may be</i> right.	(present)
I'm not sure; he <i>might be</i> right.	(present)
He <i>may be</i> still working in the garden.	(present)
He <i>may come</i> next week.	(future)
He <i>may be leaving</i> tomorrow.	(future)
Don't wait for me this evening; I <i>may be</i> home very late.	(future)
Our team <i>might</i> still win the race.	(future)
He <i>may have come</i> yesterday.	(past)
He <i>might have heard</i> about it.	(perfect aspect or past)
He <i>might have been working</i> all the time	(perfect progres- sive or past)

上述例句表明，过去含义还是非过去含义不取决于助动词本身形式上是现在时还是过去时，而取决于它后面主要动词的体，以及句中的状语或上下文。从动词短语本身的结构看，大体可以概括为如下两个公式：

公式 A：情态助动词 + 不定式(进行体)

——> 现在(进行)/将来

公式 B：情态助动词 + 不定式完成(进行)体

——> 过去(进行)/现在完成(进行)

例如：

He *won't be* there.

→ It is probable that he is *not* there.

The game *can't be* still going on.

→ It is not possible that the game is *still going on*;

The train *may be* arriving.

→ Perhaps the train is *arriving*;

He *must have been* there yesterday.

→ It is certain that he *was* there yesterday;

You *must have left* it on the bus.

→ I am sure you *have left* it on the bus.

He *must have been* working as a spy all these years;

→ It is certain that he *has been working* as a spy all these years.

She *won't have got* married yet.

→ It is likely that she *hasn't got* married yet.

上述 A, B 两个公式也基本适用于非推测含义的情态助动词 (注意 *must/need + be* 可以表示过去或非过去两种时间含义)。例如:

非过去含义

If you see anything strange, you *should call* the police.

→ ..., it's necessary for you to call the police.

Drivers *mustn't/are not to drink* alcohol before driving.

过去含义

I *needn't have sent* a telegram.

→ I sent a telegram, which was quite unnecessary.

You *should have left* a note.

→ It's forbidden for drivers to drink ...

You *must have put* in the plug before you can turn on the engine.

→ It is necessary for you to put/to have put in the plug before you can turn...

It's going to be a fine day; you *needn't take* an umbrella.

→ ...; it's unnecessary for you to ...

→ It was very inconsiderate of you not to leave a note.

The slaves *must/had to work* without pay and *live* without freedom,

→ They were obliged/forced to work ...

I didn't go yesterday, because I *needn't/didn't need to (go)*.

→ ... because it was unnecessary for me to ...

9.5 情态助动词与肯定、否定及疑问句的搭配

9.5A 与表示推测含义的情态助动词的搭配

这类助动词有些在肯定陈述句、否定陈述句及疑问句等三类句型中都常使用，有些不常用，也有的不能用。现将它们与这三类句型的一般搭配情况列表说明如下：

情 态 助 动 词	肯 定 句	否 定 句	疑 问 句
must	常 用	不常用	不常用
will	常 用	不常用	不常用
would	常 用	不常用	不常用
ought (to)	常 用	不常用	不 用
should	常 用	常 用	不常用
can	常 用	常 用	常 用
could	常 用	常 用	常 用

情 态 助 动 词	肯 定 句	疑 问 句	否 定 句
may	常 用	不常用	不 用
might	常 用	常 用	常 用

例如:

句型举例	(使用情况)
There <i>must</i> be something wrong.	(common)
He <i>must not</i> be there.	(uncommon)
<i>Must</i> it always happen?	(rare)
They <i>will</i> have arrived by tomorrow morning.	(common)
He <i>won't</i> be home at this hour.	(possible)
<i>Will</i> he still be reading his paper?	(possible)
She <i>would</i> be about fifty when she died.	(common)
The child is too young. He <i>wouldn't</i> know it.	(uncommon)
This seat would be mine, <i>wouldn't</i> it?	(uncommon)
He <i>ought to/should</i> be there, but he isn't.	(common)
He <i>shouldn't</i> be there. /You <i>oughtn't to</i> have any difficulty getting the tickets.	(common)
<i>Should</i> there be any difficulty in getting the tickets? (Not *ought to)	
Every one <i>can</i> make mistakes.	(common)
He <i>can't</i> be serious. (=It is not possible that he is serious.)	(common)
<i>Can</i> the rumour be true?	(common)

{	He <i>may</i> be joking.	(common)
	He <i>may not</i> be serious. (=It is possible that he is not serious.)	(common)
	* <i>May ...?</i> (Use: <i>Can ...?</i>)	
{	He <i>might</i> come in the autumn.	(common)
	I'm afraid he <i>might not</i> come.	(common)
	<i>Might</i> he be set free?	(common)

9.5B 与表示非推测含义的情态助动词的搭配

这类助动词大都能通用于肯定、否定、疑问等三类句型，只有少数特殊情况需加注意：

1) 情态助动词 *need* 不用于肯定陈述句。在肯定陈述句中应将 *need* 用作及物动词。例如：

No one thinks I *need to* go.

They *need to* stay longer, it's said.

The door *needs to* be painted. (= ... *needs painting*.)

2) 在否定句和疑问句中，虽然 *ought* 之后可直接跟动词原形（或称不带 *to* 的不定式），但不算常用，通常是用 *should* 代替。

例如：

You *shouldn't/oughtn't* smoke so much.

Should/ought you smoke so much?

3) 在日常会话中 *may* 表示“允许”的含义时，肯定式常用 *can* 代替，否定式常用 *mustn't* 或 *needn't* 代替。例如：

— May I tell him now?

— Yes, you *can*.

— No, you *mustn't/needn't*. (Not *mayn't*.)

(参看9.4A)

第十章 被动

10.1 引言

英语有两种语态：主动语态(active voice)和被动语态(passive voice)。两者之间的区别主要在动词的形式，被动语态的动词形式是 be + -ed 分词，我们把这种形式称为被动结构，英语中含被动结构的句子相当于汉语的“被”字句，两者在基本句型上相似。例如：

The team was beaten.

那个队 被打败了。

上述例句表明，英语被动结构中有动词的屈折变化形式；汉语只需要在动词前面加上个“被”字，除“被”字以外，“给”、“受”、“挨”等词置于动词前面也可以构成被动句。

前面1.3D中我们曾介绍过“被动转换”，说明带及物动词的句型如何变成被动句。但是，这并不意味着所有及物动词的主动结构必有其相应的被动结构，也不能说所有被动结构都是由主动结构转化而来的，有些句子由于动词的特性等原因，只有主动结构，而不能变被动结构。例如：

India has the densest population. (表示所有关系的 have 无被动式。)

Northwest China lacks rain. (表示状态的动词无被动式。)

It was such a foggy day in London that people could hardly see each other. (宾语为相互代词时无被动式。)

As he couldn't afford to go to school, the young man taught *himself*. (宾语为反身代词时无被动式。)

The company has *changed hands* recently. (在含义上不可分析的固定词组无被动式。)

另一方面，有些被动结构也无相应的主动结构，或者是习惯上只用被动结构。例如：

Archimedes *was born* in 287 B.C.

He *was seized with* such chest pains.

He *was done up* after the long ride.

The train *was delayed* two hours and a half.

Anyone *would be cast down* by such news as that.

10.2 被动结构的几种形式

10.2A be + -ed 分词 (+ by 介词词组)

这是最常见的被动结构，其中的by词组表示动作的执行者。有时by词组非用不可，否则不仅影响句子意思的表达，甚至会使用句子结构不能成立。当动作执行者不甚清楚，难以讲出或在含义和结构上都无必要讲出时，by词组就略去不用。例如：

The law of surplus value *was discovered* by Karl Marx.

The Capital (vol. I) *was published* in May, 1867.

Science *is being popularized* all over China.

Some books are *to be tasted*, others *to be swallowed*, and some few *to be chewed and digested*. (F. Bacon)

有时动作执行者在句子本身已经表示明白了，就不用再加by词组；另外，by词组不一定是指人，也可以是指人的某个部分（如手或脚等）；还可以指某种方式或手段。例如：

From the age of eighteen or nineteen, all his energies *were centred* on getting an education.

A goal *is scored* whenever the ball is forced through the

goal and under the bar, except it *be thrown by the hand*.
“Time cannot *be added* to a person’s life, but it can *be made* more valuable *by avoiding waste*.” (Luthur Burbank)

被动结构“be + -ed”中的 be 既要与主语的人称和数保持一致,也要表示出适当的时体形式。例如:

The pupils *are examined* in every course by the end of each term.

Her proposal *was examined* by the Board of Governors yesterday.

The inquiry *has been examined* by the commission.

A witness *is being examined* in the court.

Every school of thought *had been examined* carefully by Karl Marx as he formulated his theory.

These records *are going to be examined* by a special group of experts.

The doctor asked to open my mouth wide when my throat *was being examined*.

被动结构虽用于完成体或进行体,但不用于完成进行体,因为那种搭配显得累赘,没有实用价值。比如说,我们要表达“这些问题近来一直在讨论。”这个意思时,不要用现在完成进行体的被结构,而可以用现在完成体表示:

These questions *have been discussed* recently.

另外,也可以避开被动结构,而用其他的形式表示。例如:

These questions *have been under discussion* recently.

Discussion concerning these questions *has been going on* recently.

10.2B get + -ed 分词

此结构中的 *get* 已失去其原有的词汇意义，而接近于 *be* 的功能。这种结构的使用场合主要是日常口语，含义上的特点是强调动作的结果，一般不提动作执行者。例如：

What's more, a heavy rain caught them and they all *got soaked*.

The new dorm is *getting whitewashed*.

The poor girl often *gets scolded* no matter how hard she works.

Do you mind working nights? You'll *get paid* overtime.

I think they can make it unless they *get held up*.

有时，*become* + *-ed* 分词也能构成被动结构，在含义上着重说明过程，带有 *get* + *-ed* 分词的进行体味道。例如：

With the passage of time, the furniture *became covered* in the dust.

In his later years, the boxing star *became besieged* with diseases and other troubles.

She practised so hard that her fingers *became swollen*.

They *are becoming more awakened* with each passing day.

10.2C 双宾句型的被动结构

英语里有些动词如：*accord*, *ask*, *assign*, *give*, *grant*, *offer*, *pay*, *refuse*, *save*, *show*, *tell* 等等，在句中可以跟两个宾语，一个是间接宾语（通常指人），一个是直接宾语（通常指物），变被动结构时，可将两个宾语中的一个转化为主语，另一个仍保留作宾语；在实际使用中，以间接宾语转主语较为多见。例如：

People *accorded* the visitors a warm welcome.

— *The visitors were accorded* a warm welcome.

— *A warm welcome was accorded* to the visitors.

They have *given* us much encouragement.

— *We have been given much encouragement.*

— *Much encouragement has been given (to) us.*

双宾句型转被动结构时, 还需注意以下几点:

1) 将原句的直接宾语转变成主语时, 在被保留的间接宾语前面通常要加介词 *to* (代词有时可不加), 或者加介词 *for*。例如:

They offered Tom little assistance.

— *Little assistance was offered to Tom/(to) him.*

She bought him a shirt.

— *A shirt was bought for him.*

2) 有个别动词(如 *write*)转被动结构时, 只能将原直接宾语变为主语, 并要在被保留的间接宾语前加 *to*。例如:

They have written us all the news.

— *All the news has been written to us.*

— **We have been written ...*

3) 以分句作直接宾语, 通常用间接宾语作主语, 将分句作保留宾语。例如:

They told me when it had happened.

— *I was told when it had happened.*

He showed us in Fig. 2 that Asia forms the eastern part of the great land mass.

— *We were shown in Fig. 2 that Asia forms the eastern part of the great land mass.*

When the lawyer asked Miss Anson whether she had ever heard from her brother, she answered "Yes, and regularly."

— *When Miss Anson was asked (by the lawyer) whether she had ever heard from her brother, ...*

4) 注意区分双宾句型和宾补句型。试比较:

He found George a seat. (双宾句型)

— A seat was found for George.

He found George (to be) a bright pupil. (宾补句型)

— George was found to be a bright pupil.

双宾句型和宾补句型的谓语动词后面都可以跟两个名词短语。这在形式上看起来很相似, 因此要根据整句的含义来区分, 并正确地进行被动转换。例如:

She made him a suit.

— He was made a suit.

— A suit was made for him.

She made him a scapegoat.

— He was made a scapegoat.

— *A scapegoat was made for him.

— *A scapegoat was made of him.

10.2D 词组动词的被动结构

英语里有些动词是以词组的形式出现, 称为词组动词 (phrasal verb), 词组动词有“动词 + 介词”, “动词 + 副词”和“动词 + 介词 + 副词”、“动词 + 名词 + 介词”等等, 词组动词是一个整体, 大都相当于单词及物动词, 并能转化为被动结构。

1) 动词 + 介词, 该词组中的动词原为不及物动词, 加介词后变成了及物动词。例如: act upon, agree to, agree upon, deal with, laugh at, listen to, look after, look for, rely on, talk about, think of 等等, 这类词组动词变被动结构有时与词汇意义有关, 有的词组用于本义时不能转化为被动结构, 用于转义时才可以。例如:

We finally arrived at the village. (不能变被动结构。)

We finally arrived at an agreement.

— An agreement was finally arrived at.

The cat is *looking into the box* to see whether there is any fish left. (不能变被动结构。)

We are *looking into the matter* now.

— The matter is now being looked into.

2) 动词 + 副词, 该词组为及物动词加副词小品词, 如: back up, bring about, bring up, carry out, find out, give away, hand in, make out, make up, point out, put down, put forward, put off, put on, set up, take over, take up, think over, turn down, turn on, turn out, use up, win over, wipe out, work out, 等等。注意这类词组中有的既可用于及物动词, 又可用作不及物动词, 不能转化为被动结构。例如:

Their plan has *broken down*. (不能变被动结构。)

They have *broken down all opposition*.

— All opposition has been broken down.

I told her that they might have *given up further experiments*.

— I told her that further experiments might have been given up.

She told the enemy, “I will never *give up!*” (不能转被动结构。)

3) 动词 + 副词 + 介词, 该词组中的动词可能是及物动词, 也可能是不及物动词, 但与副词小品词及介词结合之后, 就都变成了及物, 常见的有: break in upon, do away with, face up to, give in to, look down upon, look up to, make up for, put up with 等等, 它们通常都能进行被动转换。例如:

That woman always *broke in on* (= interrupted) our conversation.

— Our conversation *was always broken in on* (= was always interrupted) by that woman.

We cannot *put up with* (= tolerate) such noise pollution.

— Such noise pollution cannot *be put up with* (= be tolerated).

此外，“动词 + 形容词(或 -ed 分词) + 介词”结合成的词组动词和上述“动词 + 副词 + 介词”的情况很类似。例如：

You should not *make light of* (= treat as unimportant) such tricks of theirs.

— Such tricks of theirs should not *be made light of* (= be treated as unimportant.)

We must *get rid of* (= do away with) these old customs.

— These old customs must *be got rid of* (= be done away with).

4) 动词 + 名词 + 介词, 这类词组动词很多, 仅以 *make* 为中心词的就有: *make use of*, *make an example of*, *make a fool of*, *make fun of*, *make a fuss of*, *make a mess of*, *make hay of*, *make a man of*, *make mention of*, *make mincemeat of*, *make much of*, *make nonsense of*, *make sense of*, *make a success of*, *make an attempt of* 等十多个。由于这类词组本身包含的名词就是宾语, 加上整个词组又要跟一个宾语, 因而相当于一个双宾及物动词, 转化为被动结构时能有两种形式。第一种形式是把整个词组的宾语转化为主语 (A), 第二种形式是把词组中的名词抽出来变成主语 (B), 相比之下, 第一种形式多见于非正式文体, 第二种用法比较正式。例如:

He took good care of his books.
(B) (A)

— (A) *His books were taken good care of.*

— (B) *Good care was taken of his books.*

We must lay emphasis on self-reliance.

(B)

(A)

— (A) *Self-reliance must be laid emphasis on.*

— (B) *Emphasis must be laid on self-reliance.*

10.3 主动结构表示被动含义的句型

有些句子在结构形式上是主动语态，但表示的都是被动结构的含义，句中的主语不是动作的执行者，而是动作的承受者，这种句子在汉语里很普通，在英语里却限于若干句型，且主要用于口语。

10.3A S.V.(A) 主语——谓语动词——(状语)

此句型中的 S 通常都是客观事物，V 为不及物动词，句中的状语通常表示“程度”，有时不带状语，就是表示“可能性”。例如：

This cloth wears well. (Meaning: durable; can be used for long)

Good leather will wear for years.

My coat has worn badly (and so I'm thinking of buying another).

The clock winds up at the back. (Meaning: can be wound up.)

The door won't fasten. (Meaning: cannot be fastened.)

These colours do not wash. (Meaning: can hardly be washed away.)

有些动词如 *act, add up, bind, build, count, fill, iron, print, spoil, wash* 等都可用于带被动含义的进行体，向对方提供“正在”或“即将”含义的信息。例如：

The dinner is cooking.

The cakes are baking.

The tea *is brewing*.

The book *is reprinting*.

The week's rent *was owing*.

The chief turned to me and said, "I *am expecting* company to dinner and shall have to get ready."

10.3B S.V.SC 主语——谓语动词——主语补语

此句型中的 S 通常是客观事物, 谓语动词通常是表示人们的感官印象, 补语一般是形容词, 说明主语的特征或状态。例如:

The roasted duck *tastes delicious*.

Her argument *sounds convincing*.

How *fragrant* do these chrysanthemums *smell!*

"How does this cloth feel?" "It *feels soft*."

The doctor says my pulse *feels normal*.

The alloy *cuts tough*.

That pair of trousers *has worn thin*.

10.4 关于被动结构的使用

被动结构能够避免直接说出动作的执行者, 便于用来进行客观的“就事论事”的描述, 它在科技文章中很常见。例如:

Two major technical problems *must be solved* before such an electrode *can be built*, however.

Petroleum *is believed to be produced* naturally from dead animal and vegetable matter at the bottom of shallow seas and swamps. When tiny plants and animals die in the sea, they *become trapped* in mud and sand ...

新闻英语中有时也用被动结构, 以加强“客观报导”的效果。

例如:

It *was said* by Jim Jones that property taxes would decrease approximately 25 per cent, and the crowd could

be heard cheering when the news was announced.

但被动结构不如主动形式来得简明有力, Spencer Crump 认为上面那段文字可以改写为:

Jim Jones announced that property taxes would decrease by approximately 25 per cent. The crowd cheered.

(Spencer Crump: Fundamentals of Journalism, p.98)

被动结构可以用来表示客气的邀请或要求。例如:

You *are invited* to join us at eight o'clock on Tuesday, the thirteenth of March, to celebrate the release of our new comedy hit, "The Magician".

It *is hoped* that you will be joining us in the musical evening the coming Saturday.

You *are requested* to return the books within two weeks.

在讨论问题时,用被动结构可以使口气显得委婉些。例如:

The question *should be taken* from every side.

This proposal *is generally considered* unpractical.

It *must be remembered* that practice is the only criterion to judge theory.



第十一章 虚拟语气和条件句

11.1 引言

语气 (MOOD) 是区别说话人对句中所述行为或事情的看法和态度的不同谓语动词形式。英语动词有三种语气, 即陈述语气 (INDICATIVE MOOD), 通常是就事实进行叙述或提出询问, 用于陈述句和疑问句; 祈使语气 (IMPERATIVE MOOD), 用于祈使句(见 1.3D); 虚拟语气 (SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD), 只是表示一种设想、愿望、怀疑、建议、猜测、可能或纯粹的空想等, 而不是事实。

英语中表示“虚拟”的谓语动词共有七种形式, 可分为三个类型:

一是属于综合形式的 BE 型和 WERE 型。近年来国外和国内出版的某些语法书同 Sweet, Jespersen 等的看法一样, 只把这两种动词屈折变化划作“Subjunctive”, 汉译为“虚拟式”。

二是借用一般过去时或过去完成体的谓语动词形式, 即 -ed (tense form), Had + -ed (participle)。

三是利用情态助动词构成谓语动词的分析型, 包括: should + 不定式; would/should + 不定式; would/should + 不定式完成体。

条件句属于修饰性状语分句(见19.2), 因与上述虚拟语气的七种形式有密切关系, 故在本章一并加以讨论。

11.2 BE 型和 WERE 型虚拟式的用法

11.2A BE 型虚拟式

此句型中的 BE 表示动词原形，从这个意义上说，所谓“BE 型虚拟式”也可叫做“动词原型虚拟式”，即不论句中的人称或时、数概念如何，动词一律为原形，被动结构则一律为“be + -ed”。BE 型虚拟式主要用下述三种情况：

1) 用在以 *that*- 引导的名词性分句(参见第 17 章)中，整句的意思是表示命令、决定、建议、要求等。例如：

The director ordered that the general cargo *be* shipped in three lots.

The Congress has decided that the draft of the revised Constitution of China *be* made public for discussion by the people of the whole country.

Some suggested that the hearing *be* postponed until March 15.

We'll insist that all foreign troops *be* withdrawn from that country.

I demand that one of them *stay* here until tomorrow.

It is essential that the answer sheets *be* collected last.

2) 用于 *if*, *though*, *whatever*, *lest* 等引导的副词性分句(参见 19.2)中，这类分句表示推测、让步、忧虑等含义。例如：

This, *if* the news *be* true, is a serious matter.

Whatever be the reason for it, we cannot tolerate such uncivilized acts.

Though he slay me, yet will I follow him (= Even if he should kill me, I will follow him).

He kept notes lest faulty memory *lead* him astray.

There was fear that the plan *become* known.

3) 用在表示祝愿、诅咒等含义的单句中，它们有些来自祷告

语，也有些是日常生活中的习惯话。例如：

Long *live* our motherland!

God *bless* you!

God *damn* you!

Heaven *help* us!

Heaven *forbid*!

So *be* it then.

Suffice it to say that ... (Meaning: It's sufficient to say that ...)

11.2B WERE 型虚拟式

此句型只限于谓语动词 *be*，不论什么人称或数等因素，均将 *be* 变为 *were*，因此产生“WERE 型虚拟式”这个名称。它主要用于下列两种情况：

1) 用在 *if*, *even if*, *as if*, *as though* 等引导的分句中，表示某种设想的条件或情况；如指将来，可以用“*were to* + 不定式”结构。例如：

If it *were* not for hope the heart would break.

Even if her boy friend *were* invalided out of the army, the girl would marry him.

Father treated these other people as though they *were* his family and I *weren't*.

The boy shouted to attract my attention as if I *were* deaf.

If the typhoon *were to* come too soon, we should suffer a lot.

2) 用在 *suppose*, *imagine*, *wish* 等后面的(宾语)分句中，表示主观臆想或愿望。例如：

Supposing the volcano *were to* burst into eruption when

we get there, what should we do?

Just imagine that the horse *were* beaten in the race!

We wish it *were* possible to change the merchandise, but state laws prohibit us from doing this.

I'd rather Thomas Fingar *were* with us here.

Were a serious crisis to arise, the company would have to act swiftly.

11.2C 有关 BE 型和 WERE 型虚拟式使用的两点补充说明

1) 上述 BE 和 WERE 都可用来表示主观设想, 区别在于: BE 倾向于对未知情况的推测, 而 WERE 倾向于对可能 (已经存在) 情况的想象。试比较:

{ He will remain here if need *be*.

{ If he *were* feeling overtired, he wouldn't go on.

{ *Be* that as it may, our expenditure is bound to increase.

{ If I *were* in your position, I'd be feeling at a loss.

2) 在英国英语中, WERE 型用于相当正式的文体, 一般情况下 WAS 表示第一、三人称的单数。例如:

It would be very nice if it *was* only possible. (亦可用 *were*.)

I feel as if I *was* going to faint. (亦可用 *were*.)

但美国英语比较习惯于用 WERE。另外, 还应注意: 在第二人称主语 YOU 的前后和倒装句中, 还是要一律用 WERE (包括在英国英语中)。例如:

I would change my mind if I *were* you. (不可用 *was*.)

I'd rather you *were* able to dive across the Atlantic, my child. (不可用 *was*.)

Were he to meet you there, he'd be overjoyed. (不可用

was.)

11.3 一般过去时和过去完成体表示“虚拟”的场所

11.3A 用在 WISH 后面的宾语分句中

1) 用在动词 wish 后的宾语分句中(常省去连词 that) 表示难以实现的主观愿望。分句中用一般过去时是表示说话人现在无法实现的心愿；如用过去完成体，则指说话人至今仍觉遗憾的往事。例如：

I wish I *knew* Latin.

(Meaning: I'm sorry I don't know it.)

We wish he *hadn't started* so early.

(Meaning: We are sorry he started so early.)

2) 上述 WISH 如果变成一般过去时形式，后面宾语分句中谓语动词仍用过去时或过去完成体，只是整个句子的时间含义向过去推移。例如：

She *wished* she knew how to speak Greek.

(Meaning: She was sorry she didn't know.)

He *wished* they hadn't gone.

(Meaning: He was sorry they had gone.)

3) 在 WISH 后面的分句中，如果谓语动词为 BE，或以 BE 为助动词，均用 WERE 等虚拟形式（见11.2）。例如：

I wish I *were* on a space-craft now.

I wish I *were* driving a space-craft now.

4) 当 I'd rather 后跟分句时，I'd rather = I wish（见8.6A）。

5) 注意 WISH 的一般现在时形式后跟带 to 的不定式、would/might + 不定式、或名词、形容词等，通常表示有可能实现的愿望、要求或预祝，含义上相当于 want, hope 等，例如：

She is unhappy and *wishes to be alone*. (... wants to be

alone.)

He *wishes* I *would* go with him. (= He expects me to go with him.)

I *wish* nobody *ill*. (= I hope everyone is well.)

What do you wish? (= What do you want?)

但，过去时形式 WISHED 后跟“宾语 + 补语”或介词短语等结构时，则表示过去未曾实现、也比较难以实现的愿望。例如：

We *wished* the work (to be) complete, but it wasn't.

She *wished* herself home again.

As they were not on good terms, they *wished* one another at the devil (further).

(Meaning: They wished they were far away from one another.)

How he *wished* for a glass of mineral water!

(Meaning: There was little likelihood of his getting one.)

How he *wished* for an opportunity to visit the moon!

(The sentence suggests small likelihood of getting one.)

11.3B 用在 It is time 句型中

此句型在 8.6B 已作介绍，其中 that 分句的谓语动词用过去时形式，表示尚待开始的动作，意思是“该干某件事了”，带有“时间已经有些晚了”的含意。例如：

The clock is striking twelve. It's time we *went/were going* to lunch.

11.3C 用在状语分句中

1) 前面 11.2 讲过在 even if, though 等引导的状语分句中的 WERE 型虚拟式，它实质上是谓语动词 BE 的过去时形式，有时能用 was 代替；如该谓语动词不是 BE，而是其他动词，则

用其过去时形式，含义同 WERE 一样是表示虚拟。例如：

She wouldn't give up her views even if everyone around
were/was/stood against her.

2) 由 as if 或 as though 所指引的状语分句中的谓语动词常用一般过去时（包括 WERE 型虚拟式）、过去完成体、或者 would/could/might + 不定式，分别指现在、过去或尚未发生的事，含义上表示比较或方式，相当于汉语里“好象”、“象……一样”等意思。例如：

The woman has brought up the Japanese girl as if she
were her own child.

It seemed as if the night *would* never end.

Why is she looking at me as though she *knew* me? I've
never seen her before.

In spite of the accident, they behaved as if nothing *had*
happened.

It looks as if there *might be* thunder storm.

在非正式文体中，尤其在美国英语中，偶而用 like 代替 as if，用 was 代替 were。例如：

He helped himself to the food and drinks *like he was* at
his own home.

She started talking to her baby *like it was* her old
friend.

注意：在 as if/as though 分句中的谓语动词也可用现在时形式，包括现在完成与现在进行体等，含义是表示现实的联想而不带虚拟意思。例如：

You look as if you *know* each other.

She looks as if she's *been* ill.

It looks as if it's *going to* rain.

It seems as if things *are going on well*.

11.4 分析型虚拟形式的使用

11.4A 关于“should + 不定式”和“would + 不定式”的使用

1) 在英国英语里, “should + 不定式”相当于 BE 型虚拟式, 一般可用于 BE 型虚拟式的使用场合的第一、二类句子中(见 11.2A)。例如:

They suggest (ed) he *go/should go* to Rangoon for a trip.

He took good care of his disabled wife lest she *feel/should feel* pessimistic.

注意在美国英语里, 如 TOEFL 考试中, 均以 BE 型代表 Subjunctive.

2) 关于“would/should + 不定式”结构在“非真实条件句”中的使用, 详见 11.5B。例如:

If I were 20 years younger, I *would/should have* a change for my career.

11.4B 关于“would/should + 不定式完成体”的使用

此结构通常见于表示与过去事实相反的“非真实条件句”中, 详见下节 11.5A。

11.5 两类条件句

条件句 (CONDITIONAL) 可从意义上分为两类: 真实条件句 (REAL CONDITIONAL) 和非真实条件句 (UNREAL CONDITIONAL), 本章结合“虚拟”讲非真实条件句, 同时一并介绍真实条件句。

11.5A 非真实条件句

非真实条件句表示纯粹假设或实现可能性不大的情况。这类条件句中谓语动词的时体形式和它们通常表示的实际时间不一致, 其句型可以大致分为三种:

1) 表示与现在事实相反的句型：IF 分句(过去时或 WERE 型) — 主句(would + 不定式)。例如：

If he *knew* German, he *would read* Das Capital in the original.

(The fact is: He doesn't know German and so can't read The Capital in the original.)

I *would certainly give* you a detailed account of the matter if I *had* the data.

(The fact is: I haven't got the data, and therefore I can't give you a detailed account of it.)

2) 表示将来也不大可能实现的情况时，句型与表示现在事实相反的句型基本上一致，区别在于：这里有表示将来含义的状语或上下文，也有时分句中用“were to + 不定式”或“should + 不定式”等谓语动词形式。例如：

If it *rained tomorrow*, the lantern relay *would be cancelled*.

The swimming contest *would be held* as scheduled even if it *were to rain*.

We are going by air and I hate flying. If we *were going* by water, I'd *feel* much better.

Even if you *should catch* the first bus tomorrow morning, you *wouldn't be able* to get there by lunch time.

注意：在科技文章中，作者常用这类非真实条件句提出尚待证实的假设，并不是说在将来不大可能。例如：

If the aircraft *flew* at 900 km/h, it *would disintegrate*.

If the nerve *were cut*, no response *would be observed*.

If the desert *should be provided* with plenty of water, it *would gradually turn* into arable land.

People's average life-span *would be* much increased if cancer *were totally subjugated* by man.

3) 表示与过去事实相反的句型:从句(过去完成体)——主句(*would* + 完成体)。例如:

If you *had been born* ten years earlier, you *would have witnessed* the world war.

(假使你早出生十年就会目睹那次世界大战。)

Luckily I was wearing a seat belt. If I *hadn't been* wearing one I *would have been* seriously injured.

(……我要不是系上安全带就该受重伤了。)

If we *hadn't taken* this path, but *had held* rigidly to the traditional mode of revolution in modern Europe, that is, the seizure of state power through urban armed uprisings, what *would have been* the result? There *would have been* no triumph of the Chinese revolution.

(如果不是这样,而是拘泥于城市武装起义夺取政权的近代欧洲革命的传统模式,结果会怎么样呢?那就没有中国革命的胜利。)

11.5B 真实条件句

真实条件句用于说明客观事实或说话人认为有可能实现的事情。这种条件句常见于以下三种句型:

1) 带“未来”含义的条件句:主句通常带有表示将来含义的情态助动词,分句用一般现在时、现在完成或进行体等形式。例如:

If it *rains*, the match *will be* cancelled.

If you go to the top floor, you *can see* the whole city.

If you *haven't been* to wales, you *ought to go* there.

He *will return* you the book if he *has read* it.

I don't think she'll ring for you if *they are* still chatting.

注意分句中如果出现 *will*, 意思不是指将来, 而是指主语现在的态度, 如“愿意”、“决意”等。例如:

If you *will* look after the children, I'll do the cooking.

(*will* 不重读, 含义为: are willing to.)

If you *will* marry that man, don't feel regretful.

(*will* 重读, 含义为: insist on marrying ...)

If you *won't* stay, I'll stay.

(*won't* 重读, 含义为: are unwilling to.)

2) 带“惯常”含义的条件句: 主句和分句通常都用一般现在时或一般过去时, 表示惯常的情况乃至客观规律。例如:

If it *rains*, these roads *get* muddy and slippery.

Her poor mother suffered from asthma in her late years.

She *had* difficulties in breathing if there was a turn in temperature.

If the brain sows not corn, it *plants* thistles.

If you *multiply* twelve by itself, you *get* one hundred and forty-four.

这类条件句的主句和分句中都可能用 *can*, *will* 等情态助动词, 但不一定指未来, 整句的基本含义仍然是讲客观事实或真理, 尤其在一些谚语中是如此。例如:

If the mountain *will* not go to Muhammed, then Muhammed *must* go to the mountain.

If the blind lead the blind, both *shall* fall into the ditch.

If we *can't* as we would, we must do as we can.

If you command wisely, you'll be obeyed cheerfully.

3) 带“推论”或“承接”含义的条件句:句中的时体形式比较灵活,所表示的含义也需要加以引申才清楚。例如:

I haven't seen her for many years. If she is still alive, she is over ninety.

(Meaning: If it is true that she is still alive, then she is over ninety.)

It must be my brother you saw, if you found a scar across his face.

(Meaning: If it is true that you found a scar across the man's face, he must be my brother.)

If you are going out, it is raining.

(Meaning: You say you are going out, but it is raining.)

If you like to watch the show, there will be TV transmission.

(Meaning: You like the show and there will be TV transmission.)

11.5C 关于条件句的几点补充说明

1) 条件句中的 *would* 有时用 *could/might/should* 等代替,它们均带有本身的情态含义。例如:

We *could* have prepared better if we had got more time.

If every pupil was given a calculator, they *might* work out such problems with better efficiency.

I *shouldn't* have given him the operation if it hadn't been necessary.

2) 条件句中的条件有时不用 *if* 表示,而借助于其他某些词语或句子结构。例如:

Without Marx's theory (= If there hadn't been Marx's

theory), China could not possibly have become what it is today.

United, we are strong; divided, we are weak. (= If we are united ...; if we divided ...)

Bred under better conditions (= If they were bred ...), these seedlings would grow much better.

Born ten days earlier (= If he had been born ...), the baby could have seen his late father.

To look at the painting (= If you were to look ...), you would take it for Corot's own work.

Go and see for yourself (= If you go and see for yourself), you'll find what he said is true.

Give him an inch and (= If you give him an inch), he will take a mile.

Grasp all, lose all. (= If you try to grasp all, you will get nothing.)

He would be a rash man *who should venture to forecast the results of the event* (= ... if he should venture to ...)

3) 有时，分句和主句所指的动作发生时间不一致，构成“错综时间条件句” (CONDITIONALS OF MIXED TIME)。例如：

If you were in better health, we would have allowed you to go for an outing with them.

(从句讲现在仍然存在的情况，主句指过去的一件事。)

I sat up very late last night. If I hadn't got everything ready yesterday, I shall be having a hard time this morning.

(从句讲过去，主句指未来。)

4) 有些条件句形式上是表示虚拟的动词句型，实际上并不是表示虚拟含义，而是作为一种婉转口气，或是表示惊讶等情绪。有的语法书将这类条件句划作真实条件句，有两种常见的动词句型：

	条 件 句	主 句
句型 A:	would + 不定式 (= be willing + 不定式)	would + 不定式 (= will + 不定式) (表示将来的可能性)
句型 B:	should + 不定式 (一般将来含义) (相当于一般现在时形式)	would + 不定式 (= will + 不定式) (表示将来的可能性)

If you *would* go boating on the Taihu Lake, you *would* enjoy it.

If he *would* try it again, he'd be successful.

If they *should* prune these trees and bushes, I certainly *would* be pleased.

表示婉转口气的条件句中的主句和分句都可采用比较灵活的谓动词形式，说明说话人的不同态度。例如：

If I *should* see him, I'll bring your word message to him
(说明自己不一定见到他，带委婉推辞之意。)

If you *should* see him, please let me know.
(说话人估计对方可能见到他，但故意留有余地，显得客气些。)

I *should* be very grateful if you *could* accept my application.
(很客气地向对方提出请求。)

Would you mind if he *stayed* here?

(很有礼貌地征求别人同意。)

Strange that I *should have believed* a little child!

(表示自己也感到莫名其妙;说来也奇怪,我竟然相信了一个小孩子的话。)

5) 条件句的谓语动词形式灵活,含义多变,本章引言中介绍的七种虚拟形式均可出现在条件句中。例如:

If the information *be/should be* true, they will take immediate actions.

I *would act* another way if I *were/was/became* responsible for that work.

The tennis finals *would be* moved up if it *rained/should rain/were to rain* tomorrow afternoon.

If their sleeping bags *had been* in good quality, they *wouldn't have suffered* from cold at the Antarctic Pole.

上述例句表明:BE 型虚拟式和“should + 不定式”之间, WERE 型虚拟式和一般过去时之间,还有表示将来的“should + 不定式”与一般过去时及“were to + 不定式”之间,均有相通之处,有时可以互换使用。



第十二章 修饰

12.1 引言

本书 1.4 节曾提到，英语句子的基本结构扩大时出现修饰 (MODIFICATION)，包括形容词性修饰语 (ADJECTIVAL MODIFIER) 和副词性修饰语 (ADVERBIAL MODIFIER)，通常分别称之为定语 (ATTRIBUTIVE) 和状语 (ADVERBIAL)。

修饰语的作用在于使句子的意义得到完整、确切的表达。例如：

Modern means of communication and transportation have enabled man to overcome the obstacles in the mountain pass of California.

William Shakespeare was withdrawn early from school.

Dickens, too, had a broken schooling.

如果把上述句中的修饰语都删掉了，句子的完整意思就表达不出来。

本章主要介绍修饰的若干类别，同时讨论修饰语使用中应注意的一些问题。

12.2 修饰语的分类

12.2A 从修饰语的构成上划分：

1) 单词或词组修饰语，包括形容词、副词、名词、介词词组和动词的非限定形式——不定式，-ing 分词和 -ed 分词等。例如：

The *sweetest* grapes hang the *highest*. (adj. & adv.)

These *ice* forms determined the size and drainage of the Great Lakes. (N.)

Diseases of *the soul* are more dangerous than those of *the body*. (prep. phrase)

Education commences *at the mother's knee*. (prep. phrase)

That which was bitter *to endure* may be sweet *to remember*. (infinitive)

IOU (I owe you) is a *written* acknowledgement of a debt. (-ed participle)

Home-keeping youths have ever homely wits. (-ing participle)

2) 分句作修饰语，包括定语分句、状语分句。例如：

The man *who makes no mistakes* does not usually make anything.

The Landsats are two butterfly-shaped spacecraft *that were sent into orbit around the earth in 1972 and 1975*.

When anger blinds the mind, truth disappears.

All things are difficult *before they are easy*.

12.2B 从修饰语的位置上划分：

1) 前置修饰语，即修饰语的位置在被修饰对象之前。例如：

N. Copernicus was a *Polish* astronomer.

Alaska is America's *largest* state, but only about 325,000 people live there.

Nature generously provided a *rich* soil and *mild* climate.

You may find it in the *title* catalogue.

His words were *extremely* touching.

2) 后置修饰语，即修饰语跟在被修饰对象之后。例如：

The greatest friend of *truth* is time, her greatest enemy is prejudice, and her constant companion is humility.

Good boys *who to their books apply*, will be great men *by and by*.

Africa is a well-placed peninsula *for sea communications*.

The Right Book presents a plan *for learning to write*.

Live *not to eat* but *eat to live*.

12.2C 从修饰功能上划分

1) 定语——主要用于修饰名词短语。定语主要由形容词、名词、副词、非限定动词(词组), 介词词组、分句等担任, 以形容词为代表, 所以, 定语也统称为形容词(性)修饰语。例如:

A good beginning is *half the battle*.

The *cable* address of my factory is 369.

Mr Thomas was a close friend of the *then* Lord Mayor.

Wilson must be the very person *to consult*.

Will anyone *wanting a ticket* please apply to me.

Cars *parked illegally* were all removed.

The team have lots of confidence *in their ability to beat United*.

The man *who told this* refused to give me his name.

2) 状语——用于修饰动词、形容词、副词等。状语主要由副词、介词短语、非限定动词(短语)、分句等担任, 以副词为代表, 所以状语也统称为副词(性)修饰语。例如:

Next evening was a lovely evening, and I walked out *early to enjoy it*.

Many people wrote to Miss Zhang, *anxious about her illness*.

He died of *heart failure on Tuesday night*. His wife is

still suffering from shock.

The Hare, *oversleeping herself*, arrived at the goal, *only to see that the Tortoise had got in before her*.

Encouraged by the Spanish resistance, Austria tried to throw off the Napoleonic yoke.

12.3 前置定语与后置定语

12.3A 前置定语

1) 前置定语常在限定词与被修饰的名词中心词之间。例如：
John is an *efficient* worker, and Bob is a *more efficient* worker.

I don't think he is such an *efficient* worker.

What an *efficient* worker Bob is!

但在“how/as/so + adj. + Det. N”等结构中，形容词提到限定词前面。例如：

How *efficient* a worker Bob is!

Bob is as *efficient* a worker as George. Don't you think he's so *efficient* a worker?

Bob isn't so/as *efficient* a worker as George.

2) 前置定语通常由较单一简短的词语担任：

a. 单独的形容词或其比较级与最高级形式。例如：a *diligent* student, the *nearest* doctor, a *more complicated* problem, the *most beautiful* flower, etc.

b. 单独的名词或名词词组。例如：China Daily, The New York Times, a *china* shop, a *passenger* train, a *goods* train, *blood pressure*, *photograph* album, *picture* postcard, an *iron and steel* company, *Strategic Arms Limitation* Talks (SALT), etc.

c. 单独的 -ing 或 -ed 分词，包括它们所带的单个前置修饰

语。例如：a *sleeping* baby, a *sleeping* car, an *exaggerated* report, a *most pressing* problem, an *expremedly stimulating* speech, etc.

12.3B 后置定语

1) 不定代词的修饰语习惯上后置。例如：

There is something/nothing *new* in the essay.

Is there anything *important* in today's paper?

He wanted to know whether there was anyone *keen on modern drama*.

2) 一些固定词组中用后置定语。例如：the *president elect*—当选总统，the *princess Loyal*—大公主，the *Theatre Royal*—皇家剧院，*Attorney General*—检察总长(英)或司法部长(美)，*postmaster general*—邮政总长，the *body politic*—国家，政治实体，*court martial*—军事法庭 (cf. *martial law*—军管法)，*ambassador extraordinary and plenipotentiary*—特命全权大使，the *poet laureate*—桂冠诗人，*Brown major (minor)*—大(小)布朗，指兄弟或学校班级中较年长(较年幼)者，*Tom Brown, Senior (Junior)*—老(小)汤姆·布朗，指同名父子的父亲(儿子)，*Brown, Senior (Junior)*—大(小)布朗，指某集体中两同姓人中的较年长(较年幼)者，the *area of Shanghai proper*—上海市市区面积，the *sum total*—总数，*from time immemorial*—远古以来，*heir apparent*—确定继承人，*heir presumptive*—假定继承人。

3) 比较复杂的词组通常全部或部分后置。例如：a *problem much more complicated than that/a much more complicated problem than that*, the *boys easiest to teach/the easiest boys to teach*, a *person so difficult to understand as my husband/so difficult a person to understand as my husband*, etc.

4) 分句作定语通常后置。例如:

Thank you very much for the present (*that/which*) you sent me.

He *who is ashamed of asking* is ashamed of learning.

Chopin, *whose works are world famous*, composed some of his music here.

The Dumb Waiter, *which you are going to see tomorrow*, is a one-act play by Harold Pinter.

5) 介词词组作定语时通常后置。例如: *stories about Lei Fen*, a man *above vulgar interests* (一个脱离了低级趣味的人), *abstention from voting* (弃权), a year of *abundance* (丰收年), the access to a *building* (去建筑物的通道), the accessories of a *car* (汽车附件), the rates against U. S. dollars (美元兑换率), etc.

现代英语中, 后置介词词组修饰语有时改用相应的前置修饰语, 使用上显得更加简便、紧凑、明确。例如: *means of delivery* — *delivery means*, *comeback of railway travel* — *railway comeback*, a professor at *University of Florida* — a *Florida University* professor, *gap between two generations* — *generation gap*, etc.

但要注意有时只用一种形式, 不能随意改换, 如 *society at large*, a *top secret*, *step rocket*, a *girl in red*, *people between youth and middle age*, etc.

12.3C 有时定语要全部后置, 有时只能部分后置; 有时前置与后置都可以, 但含义有区别。例如:

They found a ledge *narrow enough for one man*. (全部后置)

Outside the hall *queues stretched a mile long*. (全部后

置)

This is a *good* book to read. (前后分置)

That'll be the *only* choice to make (前后分置)

Helen is the person *responsible*. (负责人)

cf: Helen is a *responsible* person. (责任心强的人)

All the people *present* looked in alarm. (在场的, 出席的)

cf: Could you tell the *present* number of the participant? (现有的人数)

12.4 限制性与非限制性修饰语

12.4A 两种修饰语的含义区别

限制性修饰语和非限制性修饰语都是指定语, 前者表示被修饰对象(人或物)的内在特征, 后者仅起一般的描绘作用。试比较:

(A) The weight-lifter was a *great* big man.

(B) L. N. Tolstoy was a *great* man of his time.

上述 A 句中 *great* 的意思是“大个子”, 属于非限制性修饰语, 删去也不影响句子的基本含义; B 句的 *great* 意思是“伟人”, 为限制性修饰语, 系整句的含义所必须, 不可缺少。(关于限制性与非限制性从句详见18.2。)

限制性修饰语与被修饰对象之间存在密切的语义关系, 其位置应当最贴近被修饰的名词中心词。同样一个词作修饰语, 位置不同, 意义也往往有区别。例如:

These *dirty* British books are still valuable reading materials. (指被弄脏了的书籍)

Those British *dirty* books are all rubbish, and rather poisonous. (指淫秽读物, 黄色书刊)

12.4B 前置修饰语的词序

当两个或更多的词同时用作某个名词中心词的前置修饰语

时，总是意义最重要的限制性修饰语最靠近中心词。以下是前置修饰语通常遵循的词序：

1. 一般描绘性修饰语和表示大小、形状、年龄、颜色等修饰语连用时，一般描绘性修饰语在前，其他修饰语在后，即比较靠近名词中心词。例如：a remote *small* town, a new *flat-bottomed* boat, the quiet *old* lady, its sweet-smelling *rosy* flowers, etc.

2. 表示大小的修饰语与表示形状的修饰语并列时，通常是大小在前，形状在后。例如：a big *round* table, a small *triangular* thread (三角螺纹), etc.

3. 表示颜色与表示大小、长短、高低、形状或年龄、新旧的修饰语连用时，表示颜色的最靠近名词中心词。例如：a small *scarlet* desk, big round *blue* eyes, a tall *grey* building, a dirty old *brown* shirt, etc.

如果有两个甚至更多表示颜色的修饰语连用，则应当用逗号或并列连词将它们隔开；也有时用连字号把它们联成一个整体。例如：a *red, blue and white* flag, those *yellow and green* windows, some ancient varisized *blue-and-white* porcelain, etc.

4. 表示国籍或地区、出处的修饰语与其他修饰语连用时，通常是国籍、地区或出处更贴近名词中心词。例如：a beautiful large *crimson Chinese* carpet, several tall young *British* policemen, the well-known extensively-used *Malaya* rubber, one of the long-haired, white *Rocky Mountain* goats, etc.

5. 如有表示材料的修饰语，它比上述各类修饰语更加贴近名词中心词，而若有表示用途或类别的修饰语，则它应最贴近名词中心词。例如：a round brown *wooden* table, an expensive *Japanese* sports car, a lean middle-aged *woman* doctor, a small *well-to-do peasant* family, etc.

夕
木
三

综上所述，当名词中心词带有多个前置修饰语时，通常的词序应当是：限定词 → 一般描绘性修饰语 → 大小、长短、高低 → 形状 → 年龄、新旧 → 国籍、地区或出处 → 用途与类别 → 名词中心词。当然在实际使用中，不会在一个名词中心词前面出现那么多修饰语，也不会完全照上述词序刻板排列，而是往往用连词或逗号将几个并列修饰语分开，有时同时使用前置修饰与后置修饰，使句式结构灵活多样。例如 *a Greek court scientist of genius, dazzling broad plates of round coloured glass, fried Chinese greens with golden hooks (a Chinese dish), special German baby food in an excellent state of preservation, the old-fashioned double sliding doors on the rear wall, an old pitched roof with big skylights, half-covered by a blue curtain, a most disagreeable middle-aged British woman to whom drink and debauchery are still so much more tempting than religion, etc.*

12.5 三种类型的状语

从含义与句法作用上看，状语可分为三大类：修饰性状语、评注性状语和连接性状语 (ADJUNCT, DISJUNCT & CONJUNCT)。

12.5A 修饰性状语

修饰性状语是状语中的主要类型，用于修饰整个谓语或谓语动词，可以由单词、词组或分句担任 (参见 12.2 和 19.2)。

修饰性状语在句中的位置最为灵活，可以出现在三个不同的位置：句首、句中和句尾 (参见 13.4, 19.2B)。从含义上可将修饰性状语大致分为以下九类。

1) 时间状语，包括时间点、时间段和时间频度 (time frequency) 等。例如：

Samuel Beckett settled for good in Paris in 1937, spend-

ing most of his time writing; and 32 years later, in 1969, he received the Nobel Prize for Literature.

We've been living in town since father's promotion, but father went to the country for a day or two every month in the last ten years.

2) 地点状语, 包括具体地址, 以及位置、方向、距离等。例如:

W. H. Auden (1907—1973) was born in York and educated at Gresham's School, Holt, Cheshire, and Christ Church, Oxford.

The samson's live at 34 Rue Temple, Geneva, Switzerland.

Some are playing on the lawn; others strolling by the lake.

They went up hills and down dales.

The road to the tombs is lined with cypress and pine trees for several miles.

3) 方式状语, 指进行某个动作或活动的方式方法以及手段、工具等, 通常由副词或副词词组、介词词组、名词词组, 非限定动词中的 -ing 分词及限定分句表示。例如:

The man spoke sharply to her.

They used to rent a house by the year.

He was examining it under the microscope.

Steel is made from iron.

The bridge is made of steel.

Why is he dressed as a woman?

During the strike, the textile workers fought shoulder to shoulder with the bus drivers.

The burglar was caught red-handed and was bound *hand and foot*.

When you pronounce the /æ/ sound, you should open your mouth wide *as I do*.

4) 程度状语, 通常由副词或副词词组表示, 也可由介词词组或分句表示。例如:

He has quite recovered *from his illness*.

I couldn't understand him *at all*.

That's true *to a certain extent*.

She has now *partially* recovered from her stroke.

The man talks fine, but I don't think he will be *as good as his word*.

5) 目的状语, 通常以不定式结构或介词词组等表示, 也可以用分句表示。例如:

They made a hole in the wall *to let in air and light*.

Those who are short-sighted please sit *in the front row in order/so as to see better*.

The car spiralled up the mountain; and from time to time it stopped *(in order) for another car to come down*.

6) 原因状语, 可以用介词词组、三种非限定动词结构或限定分句表示。关于原因与目的状语, 详见 19.2C, 20.3F。

7) 结果状语, 通常用不定式表示, 也可以用 *ing* 分词结构 (常在其前面加 *thus, thereby* 等) 及限定分句表示。例如:

What have you said *to make him so irritated?*

He started a little too late and hurried to the airport *only to find the plane just taking off*.

The train arrived one hour late, *thus causing me to miss*

my train connection.

He was so stubborn *that no one could persuade him out of his foolish plans.*

(另参见 19.2C)

8) 条件状语，在前面 11.4 讲到的条件状语分句和含蓄条件句中均包含条件状语。又如：

The workers would return to work *on condition that their wages be doubled.*

Don't fancy that one can succeed *without hard work.*

This cabbage cannot grow well *unless transplanted in time.*

We should start on Tuesday, *weather permitting.*

To judge by her reaction, she must have deeply resented your remarks.

9) 让步状语，除用限定分句 (19.2C) 表示外，也可以用非限定动词结构。例如：

Although beaten in the game, their sportsmanship was well received by the spectators.

Born of the same parents, he bears no resemblances to his brothers.

Granting all those facts, you still have not convinced me.

下面句中表示“让步”含义的词组，句法功能上相当于分句，称为“无动词分句” (Verbless Clause)。

Weak and pregnant herself, a young woman named Chen Yan-fei jumped into the river to rescue a girl from drowning.

A timid young man, Paul nevertheless retorted an af-

front upon his boss.

另外，“介词 *inspite of/despite/notwithstanding (+ the fact that)*”结构也表示让步概念。例如：

The medical group went on with the research into the causes of cancer *in spite of all setbacks/in spite of the fact* they met with many setbacks.

Despite the fact that funds have been approved for the bridge, no contracts have been made for work on it.

Notwithstanding the fact that the president urged acceptance of the approval, it was defeated by the votes.

10) 表示伴随情况的状语，通常由 *-ing, -ed* 和不定式结构担任，分别说明谓语动词所示动作发生时，或发生前、后的有关情况。这类状语多位于句末，用逗号隔开；它们还常带有自己的逻辑主语。例如：

The poor little girl still knelt there, *tears running down her cheeks.*

Joe lay on the grass, *his hat pulled over his eyes.*

The two parties reached an agreement on basic principles, *the details to be ironed out later.*

12.5B 评注性状语和连接性状语

这两类状语和修饰性状语的区别在于：它们不是用于对谓语或谓语动词进行修饰，而是表示说话人对该内容看法或解释，或主要是在句中起连接作用。关于这两类状语将分别在19.3, 19.4节进一步讨论，有些类似并列连词的连接性副词在第十六章还要提到。这里说明两点：

1) 评注性状语一般置于所评注的句子开头，有时也可能放在句尾或句子中间。例如：

Surely this wet weather won't last longer!(这种坏天气凉

必不会再延续很久!)

You didn't want to hurt his feelings, *surely!* (当然, 你并没有想伤害他的感情!)

All the apples are good. There's *surely* no need to pick and choose. (苹果都好的, 肯定用不着挑拣。)

但要注意: 有时(尤其在句中或句末又无逗号隔开时)状语在含义上是修饰谓语或谓语动词, 即不属于评注性状语而是修饰性状语。试比较:

He has been working *slowly but surely*. (修饰)

He could have done something to help us, *surely*. (评论)

Look! The machine will *surely* work out all the problems within a few seconds. (修饰)

2) 连接性状语与并列连接词(参见16.2—16.6)在含义与句法作用上都有类似之处, 区别在于: 并列连词通常出现在两个并列分句之间, 而连接性状语的位置比较灵活; 同时连接性状语前面有时还可以再加 *and*, *but* 等并列连词。例如:

Lori loves tennis; *however*, she never wins.

Lori loves tennis; she, *however*, never wins.

Lori loves tennis; she never wins, *however*.

She failed time and again, *and yet* she didn't lose heart.

We have laid down the principles; *but still* we must further investigate and study certain specific policies.

此外, 连接性状语除了某些副词或副词性词组以外, 还可以是某种非限定动词结构或者限定分句。例如:

This design needs much revision: *in the first place*, it is far from being practical, and *secondly*, it will cost too much.

... A really complicated question you've given me. To

begin with, I think it'll be advisable for me to say a few words about the background ... *Then*, ... and to *sum up*, ...

The young girl had no arms, but with her feet she managed to eat and drink; *what was more remarkable*, she learned to read and even write!

12.6 修饰语使用中应注意的几个问题

12.6A 避免位置不当的修饰语

1) 一般说来, 修饰语应尽量靠近被修饰对象。修饰语的位置不同会引起意义上的差别。试以 *only* 对句中不同成分进行修饰的不同含义举例说明如下:

ONLY	ONLY	ONLY	ONLY	ONLY	ONLY
he	said	that	she	was	witty
No one	He did	He said	No one	She was	She was witty,
else	not	nothing else	was	nothing	but by no
said it.	mean it.	else.	witty.	else.	means talented.

有时修饰语的位置不当, 或其他句子成分被放在可被理解为修饰语的位置, 均会引出错误的含义。例如:

Orwell shot the elephant *under pressured circumstances*,
因原意是: It was Orwell (not: the elephant) that was under pressure.

故应改为: Orwell, *under pressure*, shot the elephant.

又如: We learn from the examples of our parents *who we are*.

因宾语从句的位置不当, The sentence appears to say we are our parents.

故应改为: We learn *who we are* from the examples of our

parents:

2) 有时为了避免歧义或为使句子结构平衡等,有意使用修饰语与被修饰语对象之间的“分隔”(参见 26.3B)。例如:

The collector of curios would like to buy *anything* he could lay his hands on *of the handicrafts store*.

(如不分隔,定语从句 he could lay his hands on 可理解为修饰 the handicrafts store.)

Nourishment must be provided *upon which each cell may feed*. (将担任修饰语的分句后移,以保持句式平稳,整句意思为:必须给每个细胞以生活的营养物。)

12.6B 避免逻辑关系不清的修饰语

1) 修饰语与被修饰对象之间要求逻辑关系上一致,否则会造成意义含混,显得滑稽可笑。例如:

a) *With a peach in hand*, the clock was hard to wind.

b) *Finished with dinner*, the stove was no longer needed.

c) *Being familiar with French*, the textbooks were easy for Emily to understand.

上述三个句子由于修饰语与被修饰对象的逻辑关系上的毛病,会分别引出如下问题: Had the clock a peach in its hand? Did the stove finish with dinner? Were the textbooks familiar with French? 回答显然都是否定的。为解决原句逻辑不清的问题,可对它们作如下改进:

a1) As he had a peach in his hand, the clock was hard to wind.

b1) Since/As dinner was finished, the stove was no longer needed.

c1) Being familiar with French, Emily found the textbooks easy to understand. /As Emily was familiar

with French, the textbooks were easy for her to understand.

2) 如果担任修饰语的分词短语的逻辑主语不是主句的主语(如下面例句中的 b, c 二句), 这种结构称为“无依着分词结构”(UNRELATED PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION), 或“垂悬分词结构”(DANGLING PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION)。一般说来, 这种结构应当避免使用。但在一定的上下文中, 当意义不致引起误解时, 这种结构也可以接受; 事实上在报刊和科技文章中还不难见到。例如:

a) *Climbing a ladder, his head struck a branch.*

此句最好改为: a1) *Climbing the ladder, he struck his head against a branch.*

或者改为: a2) *As he was climbing the ladder, his head struck a branch.*

b) *When examining a new construction project, it is necessary to make sure it causes no pollution.*

此句可改为: b1) *When you are examining ...*

或者说: b2) *When examining a new construction project, you must make sure it causes no pollution.*

As with any vehicle, fuel is wasted when moving any unnecessary weight.

(此句意义清楚, 故不用改, 也不便改。)

12.6C 避免意义分歧或重叠的修饰语

1) 前面讲过, 修饰语的位置不当或与主句逻辑关系不清均会造成意义表达上的差错, 因而必须避免。另外还应注意有时修饰语本身也可作不同的解释。例如:

a) *Writing clearly is difficult.*

上面这个句子从字面上可作两种解释:

a1) It's *clearly* difficult to write.

a2) It's difficult to write *clearly*.

当然在说话时可借不同的停顿分别表示出 a) 句两种不同的意思,但在书面语中则宜改用 a1) 或 A2) 那样的不同句子结构,以避免歧义。

又如: b) Her mother died *when she was twenty-four*.

应改为: b1) Her mother died when Jane was twenty-four.

或改为: b2) Her mother died at the age of twenty-four.

2) 有时修饰语的含义与句中其他部分已有的含义产生不必要的重复,因而修饰语成为多余。例如:

Being world-weary, she likes to live *alone by herself*.

(应删去 *alone* 或 *by herself*.)

Please *repeat it again*.

(应改为: Please say it again.)

(或改为: Please repeat it.)

第十三章 形容词与副词(一)

13.1 引言

形容词和副词在句中的主要功能是作修饰语(见第十二章)。本章主要讨论这两类词的构词特点、含义特征及在句中的位置等问题。

13.2 形容词与副词的词形特点

13.2A 形容词的构词特征

1) 常见的形容词词尾有以下数种:

-y: dreamy, funny, gloomy, sleepy, etc.

-ful: helpful, hopeful, meaningful, harmful, etc.

-less: helpless, hopeless, meaningless, harmless, etc.

-en: golden, silken, wooden, woolen, etc.

-able/-ible: probable, favorable; possible, credible, etc.

-ary: contrary, secondary, extraordinary, proprietary, etc.

-ive: active, passive, permissive, positive, etc.

-ous: generous, marvelous, ridiculous, treacherous, etc.

-ish: boyish, feverish, selfish, sickish, etc.

-some: fearsome, handsome, tiresome, wearisome, etc.

-al: cordial, international, practical, irrational, etc.

-ic: artistic, economic, geographic, ironic, etc.

上述词尾表明, 很多形容词是从其他词类转化而来, 例如:

1) 由名词转为以 -ed 结尾的形容词, 如:

crowd — crowded, detail — detailed,

sleeve — sleeved, fence — fenced,

bread — breaded, etc.

2) 由名词转为以 -ous 结尾的形容词, 如:

mountain — mountainous, fame — famous,

mystery — mysterious, danger — dangerous,

courage — courageous, etc.

3) 由名词或动词转为以 -ful 结尾的形容词, 如:

doubt — doubtful, forget — forgetful,

mourn — mournful, cheer — cheerful,

plenty — plentiful, etc.

4) 由名词或动词转为以 -ent 或 -ant 结尾的形容词, 如:

convenience — convenient, frequency — frequent,

resist — resistant, defend — defendant,

differ/difference — different, etc.

5) 由动词转为以 -able 结尾的形容词, 如:

enjoy — enjoyable, notice — noticeable,

agree — agreeable, prefer — preferable,

etc.

注意有时一种词根能变出不同词尾的形容词, 并且它们在含义上也有区别。试比较:

economic: 与经济有关的, 如: economic policy, economic state, etc.

economical: 经济的, 节约的, 如: an economical stove, to be economical of time and energy, etc.

另一方面, 有时不同的词尾表示相同的含义, 例如: -ible/-able = capable of ... 一般说来, 前者多与词根相结合, 如 vis, revers, cred, aud, comprehens 等用 -ible 后缀; 而后者能与单

词相结合, 如 agree, work, comfort, credit, peace 等用 -able 后缀, 注意: love 要变 lovable。

还有, 除 -ful 和 -less 可视为反义词尾外, 其余 -al, -ive, -ous 乃至 -en 等均能表示“having the quality of ...”的意思, 因此需结合与之搭配的不同词根或单词确定其具体含义。

13.2B 副词的构词特点

1) 许多副词均由形容词及其他某些词加后缀构成, 兹举例说明如下:

原词	后缀	举 例
adj.	-ly	agreeable—agreeably; greedy—greedily
	-ing	exciting—excitingly; mocking—mockingly
	-ed	excited—excitedly; broken—brokenly
n	-ways/ -wise	end—endways; broad—broadways; end— endwise; broad—broadwise; likewise
n	-wards (AmE usu. -ward)	down—downwards; north—northwards
n	-ly	month—monthly; fortnight—fortnightly

注意上述构词法中的一些特殊情况:

由 n + ways/n + wise 构成的副词有的也可能用于形容词, 试比较: lengthways (adv.), lengthwise (adv. & adj.) 又如: like 只和 wise 构成副词, 同时 likewise 又可用作连接词 (=also, moreover)。

由 n + ward 构成的新词在美国英语里用于副词, 但在英国英语中用于形容词, 副词应当用 n + wards. 试比较: (BrE) a downward movement; (AmE) to move downward; (BrE) to lie on the ground face downwards。

由 n + ly 构成的新词中虽有一些用作副词, 但有些是形容

词,如: *manly* (eg: *manly sports*), *friendly* (eg: *a friendly match, to talk in a friendly way*).

2) 有些副词与介词同形。试比较:

It's terribly noisy living near the airport, planes are coming over all the time. (adv.)

Aren't you feeling well? What has come over you? (prep.)

Why don't you move the flowers out here in the sun?(adv.)

Let's drive out the old mill road. (prep.)

注意: *out* 用作介词的情况较少, 见于非正式场合, 其含义相当于 *out of*, 或者 *away from* (即上述例句中的意义)。

有时副词和介词都能与同一个动词构成及物的词组动词, 区别是“动—介”组合还是“动—副”组合, 可用下述办法检验:

第一、看能否将宾语插在词组中间, 如能插入即为“动—副”组合。试比较:

He looked up the word (in a dictionary).

— He looked the word up (= He looked it up):

He looked at the book (= He looked at it).

— *He looked the book/it at.

上述句型转换说明, *up* 为副词, 而 *at* 是介词。

第二、看能否在词组中间插入其他的副词修饰语, 不能插的是“动—副”组合。试比较:

He looked at the picture carefully/He looked carefully at it:

He looked up the word carefully/*He looked carefully up...

第三、看能否接受重音, 副词应当重读, 而介词不应当重读。试比较:

That wasn't the book I looked at:

That wasn't the book I looked up:

13.2C 某些同形的形容词和副词

1) 有些形容词和副词同形、同义，只是在句中分别作形容词修饰语或副词修饰语。例如

Early start makes easy stages. (early, adj.)

Early sow, early mow. (early, adv.)

He is going there by a fast train. (fast, adj.)

Don't read so fast. (fast, adv.)

There's a deep well on the mountain. (deep, adj.)

Still waters run deep. (deep, adv.)

2) 有些副词有两种形式，一种与形容词同形，另一种带后缀 *-ly*，这两种形式的副词有时含义相同，只是用法上有某些区别。例如含义上指主语或位于动词前用带 *-ly* 的副词，含义上指宾语或在动词后用不带 *-ly* 的副词：

He slowly walked up the path. (句中 slowly 指主语，它也可以置于句首、动词之后或句末。)

Tell the driver to go slower. (句中 slower 指宾语，又在动词之后。)

I strongly advise you to go. (动词前)

Professor Gu is aged 90 and still going strong. (动词后)

They have built the dam strong. (指宾语，又在动词后)

You've spelt my name wrong. (指主语，但在动词之后)

Who noticed the word wrong? (动词后，指宾语)

You've wrongly spelt many technical terms. (动词前)

注意口语中有时习惯用不带 *-ly* 结尾的副词。例如：

You're talking too quick for me.

Can't you walk a little quicker?

I hear you peasants are getting rich quick, aren't you?

Eyes right!

Did you notice a motor-bike turn sharp to the left?

3) 有时两种形式的副词含义有差别。其基本区别在于:与形容词同形的副词倾向于表示静态含义,突出状态、结果;而带 *-ly* 的副词倾向于表示动态含义,强调方式方法。例如:

The bullet went *clean* through his shoulder. (子弹洞穿他的肩膀。说明结果、状态。)

I *clean* forgot about it. (我全部忘记了。说明状态。)

Her parents lived *cleanly* all their lives. (她的父母亲一生洁身自好地过活。说明方式方法。)

The surgeon cut *cleanly* through the abdominal wall. (外科医生利索地切开胃壁。说明方式方法。)

下面例句中的两种副词形式也同样存在含义上的区别:

The rope was tied *tight*.

cf: The rope was tied *tightly*.

This photograph hasn't come out *clear*.

cf: Can you see *clearly* from here?

Please report to me at ten o'clock *sharp*.

cf: The policeman spoke to the driver *sharply*.

She's *pretty* good.

cf: Mary is dancing *prettily*.

Tom bought the car *cheap*.

cf: He earned the money too *cheaply*.

Always hold *firm* to your beliefs.

cf: Fix the post *firmly* in the ground.

13.2D 形容词和副词的比较级与最高级形式

英语大多数形容词和副词都有比较级和最高级形式,包括屈折形式和综合形式。例如: *happy—happier—happiest, happily—more happily—most happily, convenient—more convenient—most convenient* (详见第十四章)

13.3 形容词、副词的动态含义与静态含义

关于副词的动态含义与静态含义,在 12.2C 中已经提及。表示动态含义的副词去掉 -ly 词尾,就是同形的副词和形容词。用作形容词时,它们往往也带动态含义,并且有些本身就能用于动词,如 firm, rough, sharp 等。形容词的动态含义与静态含义比副词更为明显。

13.3A 形容词的两类含义特征

从词义上看,英语的形容词有些是描述静态特征,如表示大小(big, small)、长宽(long, wide)、高矮(tall, short)、老幼(old, young)等,都是比较稳定的,比较长久的特征;而有些形容词是描述比较暂时的状态或表现,具有某种动态含义,如 faithful, gentle, shy, generous, rude, cautious, careless, irritating, noisy, cheerful, calm, patient 等。这两类词义上的不同,导致句型结构上的区别:形容词的动态特征表现为若干具有动作含义的句型结构,静态特征可以转到形容词的名词化。

13.3B 动态形容词的句型

1) 动态形容词可以用于以 be 开头的祈使句。例如:

Be cautious!

Just be patient, I think you're next.

Don't be so rude with the children!

上述祈使句中的动词 be 也可能用 get, 意思是要对方作好思想准备,相当于 get ready to (do something)。例如:

Get tough with them! (对他们要强硬!)

Get aggressive, young man! (拿出闯劲来吧,小伙子!)

2) 动态形容词可用于使役结构 (Causative Construction)。

例如:

I persuaded him to be generous.

It was getting dark and he ordered his men not to be

noisy.

Hearing the door bell, he reckoned that some one had come and told the poor lads to look cheerful.

3) 动态形容词可用于 *being+adj.* 结构。例如:

The boss is *being kind* to them now.

I am *being honest* — Every word I say is true.

When they were alone, Diana taunted him. “Aren't you *being a bit overprotective*, Halt?”

静态形容词不能用于上述几种句型。例如不可以说:

* Be younger!

* Get taller!

* They persuaded her to be one year older.

* They are being short.

3) 动态形容词可用于“*It is+adj+of (you)*”结构, 静态形容词则用于“*It is+adj+for (you)*”结构。试比较:

It is kind of you to do so. (= You are kind to do so.)

It is necessary for you to do so. (= It is necessary that you (should) do so.)

这里的 *of* 用于指示动作的主体, 即前面形容词所示的动作来自 *of* 的宾语, 此动作是指具体的, 已经发生了的事; 带 *for* 的句型一般是指未来的情况, 句中的形容词没有动态含义, 只是用于说明因果关系或客观情况等。

同样, 动态形容词用于“*How+adj+of (you)*”句型, 而静态形容词不可以这样用。例如:

How thoughtful of him!

* *How beautiful of her!*

这里的“*How thoughtful of him!*”是就他已经做过的某事而言, 比如: “*How thoughtful of him it was to make all the*

necessary arrangements for us!” (他们为他们作好了一切必要的安排, 考虑得真周到呀!)

但是, 如果我们改用“*How ... (he) is!*”感叹句型, 则动态形容词与静态形容词都可以用。例如:

How thoughtful he is!

How beautiful she is!

这里的 *thoughtful* 是指他的性格特点, 和 *beautiful* 一样都具有静态含义。

5) 动态形容词带介词词组或者不定式作为补语。例如:

The boy is fond of his toys.

They are alien to the principle of economy.

You shouldn't be sensitive about one's clothing.

The veteran is very keen to see his birthplace again.

这里的形容词和及物动词颇有相似之处, 要是去掉了句中的介词词组或不定式, 意思就不完全了。如果译成汉语, 上述形容词都应转化为及物动词, 如“喜爱他的玩具”, “违反节约原则”, “太注重衣着”, “非常渴望能再看看他的故乡”等。

静态形容词用不着带补语, 它后面有时也跟不定式, 在 *too ... to* 结构里还必须带不定式, 其含义不是前面形容词的动作对象, 而是表示程度与结果的。例如:

These oranges are still sour to eat. (Meaning: too sour.)

This furniture will be heavy to move. (Meaning: rather heavy.)

The warrior was too old to fight.

The fruit bushes there are too thick to let in enough sunshine.

13.3C 形容词的名词化

1) 名词化的形容词一般都是静态形容词, 它能充当名词性

短语的中心词，其典型结构为“限定词 + 形容词”，用于表示类别，大都是指某一类人；它们具有复数含义，并且要求句中有关动词等都与之保持一致。例如：

The wise look to the wiser for advice.

In the young, there is a justification for their feeling.

The injured were conveyed in ambulances to the Great Hospital.

Always speak well of the dead.

除 *the* 以外，其他的特指限定词如 *these, those, our, its* 等，定量限定词如 *two, three, ...* 等，不定量限定词如 *many, no, a group of* 等，有时也能和形容词一起构成名词性短语；此外，还有不用限定词而由形容词单独起名词作用的情形。例如：

Mother whales are very good to their young.

You may ask those best-informed.

An appeal of those seriously wounded was presented to a higher court.

“We will nurse your sick, clothe your naked, and feed your wounded.”

Large numbers of unemployed would walk out except that the board of directors agreed to the Union's terms within three days.

Look! The sparrow is feeding its young.

Are there still poor in London?

The baits were attended by rich and poor alike.

A nation which shows genuine interest in her elderly, her less fortunate and her handicapped is a nation with highly developed spiritual consciousness.

2) 名词化形容词用于专有名词的同位语，或以比较级、最

高级的形式出现时，则不是泛指类别，而是单指某个人。例如：

Alfred *the Great* acted as his own spy.

Have you read anything about Charles *the Bold*?

Here is an anecdote about Ivan *the Terrible*.

— Which of the brothers do you like best?

— Oh, *the younger*, without question.

— Of these radios which do you prefer?

— Well, *the cheapest*, and it's also *the most durable* here.

3) 名词化形容词表示抽象名词含义，汉译时通常要引伸出适当的名词。例如：

The latest is that he is going for reappointment.

(最新的消息。)

Please wait and see. *The very best* is yet to come.

(最好的事情。)

Not many people dare to venture into *the unknown*.

(未知世界。)

There is but one step from *the sublime* to *the ridiculous*.

(真理向前跨进一步就是谬误。)

(从伟大到可笑只差一步。)

The beautiful is not necessarily always the same as *the good*.

(美的不一定总是好的。)

13.3D 动态、静态特征的相对性

形容词的动态、静态特征不是绝对的，不能把动态形容词与静态形容词完全划分为两类形容词。正如不少动词在一个句子里表示动作，而在另一个句子里表示状态一样，许多形容词也兼有两种特征，有时用于动态，有时用于静态。试以 *rough* 和 *difficult* 两个形容词为例：

This paper is too rough. (静态含义,意思是“粗糙不平”。)

Go and tell him not to be so rough with her (the waitress). (动态含义,指耍态度。)

Handling a horse-drawn plough is rather difficult.

(静态含义,意思是“困难的”。)

The patient is being difficult now, I can hardly put up with him. (动态含义,指病人在闹别扭,拒绝和医务人员

合作。)

13.4 形容词、副词在句中的位置

形容词的位置在12.3-4中已作讨论,这里不再赘述。

副词修饰形容词或其他副词时放在被修饰对象之前;作定语时,一般放在被修饰对象之后。例如:

Suzhou, an extremely beautiful spot, is most aptly called the Venice of the East. The landscaped gardens there date back to the 10th century.

副词修饰动词或整个谓语时,有三种位置:句首、句中和句尾。

13.4A 句尾副词修饰语

1) 英语副词修饰语在句中的通常位置是在末尾 (End-Position)。这一点和汉语的习惯颇不相同。例如“今晚有电视《跟我学》”这句话英译时应当是“*There will be Follow Me on the TV this evening.*”

2) 在讲到时间或地点时,汉语的习惯是从大单位到小单位,英语正好相反。例如:“玛丽·居里于一八六七年十一月七日在波兰华沙出生。”这句话的英语译文应当是:“*Marie Curie was born on November 7, 1867, in Warsaw, Poland.*”

3) 当两个或两个以上表示不同方面含义的副词修饰语用在同一句中时,它们通常是按“方式—地点—时间”的次序排列。例

如:

The Poles travelled by sea to Venice about 1295.

Julian worked aimlessly on the ship for years.

The Tortoise trodded without stopping along the road during all the time when the Hare was asleep.

13.4B 句中(位)副词修饰语

英语里的中位 (Mid-Position) 副词修饰语和汉语很相似, 通常位于句中紧靠主要谓语动词之前。这类副词有: always, almost, just, often, quite, never, nearly, etc. 例如:

I *hardly* know how to thank you.

He *frequently* calls on us these days.

You should *always* sleep with your window open.

An S.O.S. (= an urgent message) has *just* been received.

如果谓语动词中有 be, 则置于 be 之后。例如:

Henry's work is *always* carefully done.

Richard was *never* a very good footballer.

此外, actually, accidentally, anxiously, deeply, perhaps, rather, early 等副词也常用于中位。例如:

Mr Chung-li *definitely* refused to give in.

When the order was given, they *immediately* sprang to their feet.

13.4C 句首副词修饰语

英语副词修饰语用于句首 (Front-Position) 主要见于下列场合:

1) 疑问副词 how, when, where, why 等用于句首。例如:

How do you like the music?

Where lies the island of New Guinea?

2) 表示肯定或否定回答的副词 *yes, no*。例如:

Yes, I know him quite well.

No, that is not the case.

3) 感叹句与倒装句中的副词修饰语。例如:

How quickly time has gone!

Here he comes! (Here comes the man.)

Nowhere else will you find so many happy, contented people.

Hardly had he got to the office when his boss wanted to see him.

Only with the full support of everyone can we hope to succeed.

Under no circumstances did the courageous man give up writing his scathing satires on the power politics.

Not until all the attempts at negotiation had failed did the Union decide to go on strike.

13.4D 副词的位置不同引起含义差别的一些情况

前面讲到副词在句中的位置比较灵活,但同时我们应当注意:同一个副词在句中的位置不同,有时会引起含义上不同程度的差异:

1) 表示时间的副词在句中的位置不同,所指的时间概念可能不一样。试比较:

The acting dean will be here presently. (Meaning: soon.)

He is presently giving lectures to the post-graduate class.

(Meaning: at present, in the present period.)

Shall I phone him now? (Meaning: at this time or moment, immediately, at once.)

It was now one o'clock. (Meaning: then, at that time.)

What mixed weather, *now* fine, *now* showery! (Meaning: occasionally, from time to time.)

2) 在句尾表示方式副词前移时可能引起意义上的差异。试比较:

{ He shut the door *angrily*. (Meaning: He did it in an angry manner.)

{ He *angrily* shut the door. (Meaning: As he was angry, he shut the door.)

{ Facing up to obstacles means meeting obstacles *bravely*. (Meaning: in a brave manner, without showing fear,)

{ He *bravely* met all troubles. (Meaning: It was brave of him to do so.)

{ The old man told us all about it *happily*. (Meaning: in a happy mood.)

{ *Happily*, the old man told us all about it. (Meaning: As he was happy, the old man did it.)

{ I don't think he'll interview you *personally*. (Meaning: himself.)

{ *Personally*, I don't think he'll interview you. (Meaning: So far as I consider it, he won't do so.)

{ They treated her *kindly*. (Meaning: in a kind way.)

{ They *kindly* offered me their assistance. (Meaning: It was kind of them to offer me their assistance.)

3) 表示时间、地点、程度等的副词如 *now*, *there*, *so* 等置于句首时往往用作语气词。例如:

Now then, what mischief are you up to? (喂,你在搞什么鬼?)

There, the work's done! (瞧,事情做好啦!)

There you go again! (你又来这一套了!)

So there you are! (= So that's how things are!)

(情况就是这样!)

So you've lost your job, have you?

(那么你又失业了,是不是?)

第十四章 形容词与副词(二)

14.1 引言

英语大多数形容词和副词都能表示“比较”，相当于汉语里“甲比乙高”，“甲和乙一样高”，“甲不如乙高”，“甲跑得比乙快，而丙跑得最快”等等概念。区别在于：一、汉语的形容词可以直接用作谓语，表示“甲比乙高”这样的句子里不用谓语动词，而用英语表示时须加“是”(be)。

二、汉语没有词形变化，而英语里有。

英语中的比较分为比较级 (COMPARATIVE DEGREE) 和最高级 (SUPERLATIVE DEGREE)。词形变化包括综合形式和分析形式两种。除形容词、副词外，some, many 等不论用于限定词还是用于代词，也都有比较级和最高级的形式，因此将它们的比较用法放在本章一并讨论。

14.2 比较级与最高级的词形变化

14.2A 规则变化

1) 规则变化的综合形式是将原形变为以 -er (比较级) 或 -est (最高级) 结尾的词形。通常采取这种变化形式的词有下述两类：

一是一般的单音节词，如：tall—taller, tallest; wide—wider, widest; big—bigger, biggest; early—earlier, earliest; etc.

二是某些以 -ow, -y 等结尾的双音节词，如：narrow—narrower, narrowest; happy—happier, happiest; etc.

注意这里形容词、副词的词尾变化与名词变复数、动词变 -s,

-ed 形式等颇有相似之处(参见2.4A, 4.2B, 4.2C)。

2) 规则变化的分析形式是在原形前加 more (比较级) most (最高级)。通常采取这种变化形式的有以下五类:

一是通常的多音节(指三个或更多音节)词, 如: artificial (ly)—more artificial (ly), most artificial (ly); suspicious—more suspicious, most suspicious; etc.

二是以 -ly 结尾的表示(动作)方式的副词和某些表示频度的副词, 如: quickly—more quickly; sweetly—most sweetly; seldom—more seldom; often—more often (亦用 oftener); etc.

三是由 -ed 或 -ing 分词变来的形容词, 如: crooked—more crooked; boring—most boring; etc.

四是以 -ful, -ish 等结尾的形容词, 如: doubtful — more doubtful; bookish—most bookish; etc.

五是某些用于表语的单音节词用分析形式, 常见于 more ... than 结构之中, 如:

John seems *more mad than* Bob is.

Air at sea level is *more dense than* above.

In all countries, some people are *more free with their hands than* others.

A: It's not worth sixpence.

B: Well, I think mine's *more worth sixpence than* yours is.

14.2B 不规则变化

1) 不规则变化主要是指一些特殊的综合变化形式。这类词为数不多, 但须逐个熟记。例如:

原形	比较级	最高级
good, well	better	best
bad, badly	worse	worst

much	more	most
few	fewer	fewest
many, much, some	more	most

2) 有的词有两种不同的比较级和最高级的屈折变化形式, 其含义与使用亦有所不同。如: old—older/elder, oldest/eldest. 其中 older, oldest 表示一般意义上的年纪长幼, 而 elder, eldest 主要用来表示兄弟姐妹间的长幼关系:

Ada is (two years) *older* than Adam. He is my *elder* brother.

又如: far 的两种比较级形式 further 和 farther 都表示 long in distance 的意思; 另外, further 还可表示 more 的含义, 相当于汉语中“进一步”的意思: further development, further discussion, etc.

3) 有的词用于形容词或副词时的词形变化有所不同。如: little 用作副词时只有一种形式: less (比较级), least (最高级)。它用作形容词时则有两种变化形式, 即: less (亦作 lesser)/littler (比较级), least/littlest (最高级)。

同样, late 用作副词时也只有一种比较级形式(later) 和最高级形式 (latest)。但用作形容词时各有两种形式, 分别为 later, latter 和 latest 与 last, 并且它们在用法或含义上不一样。试比较:

See you *later*. (adv.)

Please be here on Tuesday at (the) *latest*. (adv.)

Have you heard the *latest* about the Joneses? (adj.)

Of the two choices, I prefer the *latter*. (adj.)

John, George, and James were her sons, and she obviously favored the *last*. (adj.)

The late edition of this paper appears at 3 p.m.; there's a *later* one at 5 p.m.; the final edition comes out at 7 p.m.

注意：有的辞书亦将 *latest*, *least* 等作名词。

4) 复合形容词与复合副词的形式变化更不规则，大体上有三种情况：

有些习惯上只用综合形式，如：*bad-tempered*, *worst-tempered*; *well-to-do*, *better-to-do*; etc.

有些只用分析形式，如：*(the) more up-to-date (equipment)*, *(the) most up-to-date (techniques)*; *(the) most short-sighted (views)*; *(the) most far-fetched (argument)*; etc.

有些既可用综合形式，也可用分析形式。现代英语里似乎多用后者，如：*hard-working*, *harder-working/more hardworking*; *well-made*, *better-made/more well-made*; *good-looking*, *better-looking/more good-looking*; etc.

14.3 比较结构的四种基本类型

14.3A -er/more ... than ...

1) 在 *-er/more ... than* 结构中，*-er* 表示综合形式，*more* 表示分析形式；*than* 后面的词语或句同它前面相应的词语或分句相比较。例如：

Example is *more powerful than* precept.

The silence of the next few seconds must have been *louder than* the sound of all the music ever played since time began.

There have been *more* definitions of the sentence *than* we can profitably list here.

(2) *-er/more ... than* 结构表示“比...(更)...一些”这类概念，在 *-er/more* 前面可以加修饰语表示不同程度的含义。试以形容

词 short 为例：原形的意思若用汉语解释为“短”，too short 意为“太短”，shorter 是“比较短一些”，a little (bit) shorter 是“稍短(了)点”，much shorter 是“短多了”，three inches shorter, 是“短三吋”，still/even shorter 是“更短(了)”等。

3) -er/more ... than 结构的反义形式是 less ... than, 表示诸如“较少(小)”、“不及”之类的意思。

This idea is *less attractive than* that one.

Pollution here is *less serious than* it used to (be).

The decision was *less final than* was believed.

在实际使用中，less ... than 不及用 not as/so ... as 的场合多。虽然用于多音节词时，两种形式可以互换，但是用于单音节词时通常只用 not so/as ... as, 或者用反义词的 -er 形式。例如：

The new office is *less convenient than* his former one.

— The new office is *not so convenient as* his former one.

Africa is *not as large as* Asia.

— Africa is *smaller than* Asia.

The St. Lawrence River is *not so long as* the Mississippi.

— The St. Lawrence is *shorter than* the Mississippi.

4) more ... than 有时用于表示“与其说……不如说”这类意思。例如：

She was *more frightened than hurt*.

(她没受什么伤,倒是受惊不小。)

It seems he's *more lazy than sick*.

(看来说他生病,不如说他是偷懒。)

注意用于上述含义时，不可以用综合形式，只可以用分析形式，包括单音节词如 (Someone is) *more big than strong* (个头挺大,但不算结实)。

如果将 *more ... than* 改为 *less ... than* 则意思正好相反。

例如：

She was *less* frightened *than* hurt.

(她虽受到惊吓,可伤势不轻。)

He is *less* lazy *than* slow.

(他倒不偷懒,只是动作慢。)

We regarded him *less* as a teacher *than* as a friend.

(与其说我们把他看成老师,不如说把他当作朋友。)

4) *not* + *-er/more than* *no* + *-er/more than* 这两种否定形式一字之差,含义上区别甚大。试比较:

{ His health is *not* better than hers. (不比她好。)

{ His health is *no* better than hers. (同样糟。)

{ George is *not* wiser than Jim. (不比吉姆聪明。)

{ George is *no* wiser than Jim. (同样傻。)

{ There are *not* more than 1000 such rare birds in the world. (不多于一千。)

{ There are *no* more than 1000 such rare birds in the world. (至多不过一千。)

We *didn't* expect *less* trouble than that. (“不少于”的意思: 我们没有过低地估计到麻烦。)

We expected *no less* trouble than that. (“起码有”的意思: 我们曾估计到至少有那么多麻烦。)

14.3B as ... as

1) 在 *as ... as* 结构中,前一个 *as* 用于副词,后一个 *as* 用于连词,后接原形词语或分句,表示同等程度的比较。例如:

This material is *as* hardwearing *as* dacron.

(这种料子和涤纶同样经久耐穿。)

Gulliver's Travels is *as* a fancy fairy tale *as* a satiric

sociological novel. (《格利佛游记》既是童话, 又是社会讽刺小说。)

Sam is *as modest as* Walt is honest.

(山姆谦虚, 而沃尔特正直。)

The girl was *as brilliant as* she was beautiful.

(那女孩既聪明, 又漂亮。)

上述例句表明, *as ... as* 结构所表示的可以是不同对象的相同方面(如例句中的 *hardwearing*), 也可以是同一对象的不同方面(如例句中的 *brilliant* 与 *beautiful*), 还可以是不同对象的不同方面(如例句中 Sam 的 *modest* 和 Walt 的 *honest*)。

2) *as ... as* 结构的否定形式是 *not as ... as* 或 *not so ... as*。例如:

The Huangho River is *not as navigable as* the Changjiang River.

Here we *didn't* have so much snow *as* you had in Geneva last winter.

Doesn't the 2.10 train travel *as fast as* the 3.55 one?

Aren't there so many students in Class One *as* (there are) in Class Two?

Had there *not* been so timely assistance *as* you rendered, I could not have so succeeded.

14.3C the ... the

1) 这里的 *the* 不是通常的限定词, 而是副词, 用于修饰它们后面的比较级形式。例如:

The more a man learns, *the more* he sees his ignorance.

The more common it is, *the nearer* it comes to being the best of grammar.

The older he is, *the wiser* he'll be.

The more she acted, the worse her conditions became.

2) the' ... the 结构的含义是指某个人、物两方面的变化引起另一个人、物两方面的相应变化，表示某种对称或比例关系，相当于汉语里的“越……越”结构。在 the ... the 结构中省略和倒装特别常见。例如：

The more/sooner/earlier/quicker the better/merrier.

The higher the velocity of steam, the greater the turbine speed.

The longer you live in a place, the more neighbourly are you likely to feel.

The farther they proceeded, the more obstacles did they meet.

14.3D 限定词(the 等) + 最高级 + 所示范围

1) 上述结构用于最高级比较句型，句中常用一个短语或分句表示在哪个范围内的最高级，称为“相对最高级”(RELATIVE SUPERLATIVE)，此结构中的限定词带确指含义，如 the, my, her, David's, etc. 当限定词为物主代词或名词属格时，本身就包含了“所示范围”。例如：

William Shakespeare is the greatest dramatist and poet in the English language.

That is the most unusual thing we've ever heard about him.

Aldersyde is regarded as Annie's first and most successful novel.

He has a talent in many respects, and his most brilliant achievement lies in biochemistry (生物化学).

副词最高级前的限定词(the)往往省去：

Come on. You should try your best.

These folk-tales are all good. But I like this one best of

all.

Among the ten girls, she practises *most conscientiously*.

2) 最高级比较结构的否定形式可以用 *the least ...* 表示;不过在实际使用中,常用反义词的最高级形式代替。例如:

The West was *the least cultivated* area.

— The West was *the most uncultivated* area.

This is probably *the least difficult* poem for you.

— This is probably *the easiest* poem for you.

3) 某些常用比较级的句型实际上表示最高级含义。这类句型有 *-er/more ... than + any ...*, *no/not + -er/more ... than*, *as ... as ever*, *not + so ... as*,

He runs *faster than any* other athlete. (= He runs the fastest.)

Time is *more precious than anything* else. (= Time is the most precious thing.)

Nothing is *more precious than* time. (= Time is the most precious.)

I've *never* seen a *better* show *than* that. (= That is the best show I have ever seen.)

No one in all the land could shoot with bow and arrow so well as he. (= He was the best archer in all the land.)

He was *as brave* a soldier *as ever* lived in Greece. (= He was the bravest soldier that ever lived in Greece.)

4) 有些词语、结构本身带“最高级”含义因而不用最高级或比较级的形式;其“最高级”含义在汉译时需表现出来。例如:

Her performance is *wonderful/excellent*.

(她的表演好极了。)

We like your company of *all things*:

(我们最喜欢有你作伴。)

Johnson was then confronted with a *difficulty of all difficulties*.

(约翰逊当时面临最难解决的难题。)

14.4 类似比较结构的几种形式

14.4A -er/more than

这种结构中的 *than* 实为介词，整个结构表示 *over* 的意思，相当于汉语的“不止是”、“岂止”等意思。例如：

- { — Were you willing to go with them?
- { — Yes. In fact, I was *more than* willing; I was glad.
- { — I heard Mother was angry about it.
- { — She was *more than* angry!

This train goes *faster than* 100 miles per hour.

The Ring and the Book, Browning's longest and in many respects best poems, runs to *more than* 20,000 lines and took *more than* ten years to write.

more than 也可以用在谓语动词之前表示强调含义；如果 *more than* 后边的分句里有 *can* 这样的情态助动词，那么整句表示“不可能(做某事)”的意思。例如：

The manager was *more than* pleased with the result.

(经理对结果十二分地满意。)

She *more than* hesitated to have accepted his proposal.

(她非常犹豫地接受了他的求婚请求。)

The old man has *more books than* he *can* read.

(那老人书很多，简直读不完。)

The beauty of the Huangshan Mountain is *more than* I *can* describe in words. (黄山之美我难以用言语形容。)

Such insult was *more than* they could put up with.

(这般侮辱他们实在受不了。)

14.4B -er/more + and + -er/more

这种结构后面不能跟 *than*，它表示的含义是“越来越”（相当于 *increasingly* 的意思）。例如：

It's certain that *more and more*, and *better and better*, plastic products will be turned out.

After his cataract (白内障) being taken off, he felt he began to see things *more and more clearly*.

Agriculture is getting *more and more mechanized* in the Shanghai suburbs.

As winter is drawing near, it's getting *colder and colder*.

In the last few minutes, the man ran *faster and faster* until he breasted the tape.

14.4C as ... as

在14.3B 讲到的 *as ... as* 比较结构，在某些习惯搭配中并不表示比较含义。例如：

1) as far as

The fisherman is said to walk *as far as* the source of the river. (走到河流的发源处。)

He will help you *as far as* he can. (尽力帮助。)

2) as long as/so long as

You can go where you like *so long as* you get back before dark. (只要你在天黑以前返回即可。)

They've been hiding in the mountain *as long as* eight years. (长达八年之久。)

Neither (of the two women) dared to move a step *as long as* (while) the beast stayed at the foot of the hill.

(野兽呆在山脚下时，两人谁也不敢移动脚步。)

3) as good as (= practically, almost, equivalent to, true to.)

Her bike is *as good as* new, though she's had it a year.

I don't think any further help is needed, for the work is *as good as* done.

Not only did he disbelieve my words, but he *as good as* said I was lying!

What he said has *as good as* shown his attitude.

4) as well as

He gave me money *as well as* advice. (除了忠告,他还给我钱。)

We should travel by night *as well as* by day.

(我们将日夜赶路。)

这种结构有时存在歧义。如:

Doris dances *as well as* her sister.

从比较结构的角度看,上句的意思是: Doris dances *as well as* her sister does. (两人舞跳得一样好)。如果不以比较含义解释,意思就是, Not only her sister but also Doris herself dances (不但她姐姐会跳舞,陶丽丝自己也会跳舞)。

14.4D 关于绝对最高级

前面14.3D 讨论了“相对最高级”,这里介绍“绝对最高级”(ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE)句型。它的意义不是汉语中的“最”,而相当于 very,通常汉译为“非常、极其、十分”等字眼,其结构形式主要有三种:

1) “限定词(the)+形容词最高级+of+名词”。例如:

Tom is *the wittiest of* boys.

汤姆这孩子非常机智。

Marbles is one of *the oldest of games*.

打弹子戏是一项很古老的运动。

The young man appeared to have *the best of manner(s)*.

那个青年看起来落落大方(彬彬有礼)。

You must deal with the situation with *the greatest of care*.

你要十分小心地对付这种局势。

这里有两点需加注意:

一是此结构中的“名词”项不论是可数名词复数还是抽象名词,其前面均为限定词的零形式。如果是复数名词,而且前面有 *my, your, the* 等带特指含义的限定词,其结构便属于“相对最高级”结构,并可将其介词短语“*of ..*”提到句首。试比较:

Mary is the cleverest of all *the girls*.

— Of all the girls, Mary is the cleverest.

(相对最高级)玛丽是那些女孩中最聪明的。

Mary is the cleverest of girls.

— *Of girls, ...

(绝对最高级)玛丽是个十分聪明的女孩子。

二是此结构中的形容词倾向于表示说话人的主观感受及看法,而不是说明客观事实。例如:

可以说: This room is *most comfortable/a most comfortable one*. (可将 *most* 改为 *very*.)

不可说: * The room is *most large*. (应将 *most* 改为 *very*.)

2) “限定词(物主代词)+形容词最高级+of+抽象名词”,
例如:

Please accept my *heartiest/sincerest/warmest congratulation*. 请接受我热诚的祝贺。

Allow me, on behalf of all my colleagues, to express our

sincerest/heartiest appreciation of your help.

让我代表我的同事们对于你们的帮助表示衷心的感谢。

介词短语“at + 物主代词 + 形容词最高级“与” with + the + 形容词最高级 + 抽象名词”均为加强语气的结构，但前者倾向于表示“最”的含义，而后者表示“非常”的意思。例如：

If you go to Wuxi these days, you'll find the plum blossom *at its best*. (强调探梅的最好时节)

I knew her tone, I knew she was *at her worst*.

(说明她那时心情最不好)

They helped us *with the greatest pleasure*.

(强调非常乐意帮助)

The girl sobbed *with the most miserable feeling*.

(形容她带着极为悲切的感情啜泣)

3) “限定词(物主代词) + 副词最高级”。例如：

(Even this far from the waterfall the noise was very loud.)

So they had to speak *their loudest*.

(他们必须尽量大声地讲话。)

(Come what may,) I'll try *my hardest*.

(我将尽力而为。)

第十五章 介词

15.1 引言

英语约有六十个介词，近两百个复合介词和三百多个短语介词。介词使用频繁，搭配和含义都比较复杂。因此，掌握介词是学习英语的一个重要关键。学习介词需要分析类比，更要归纳记忆。

介词不能单独在句中担任句子成分，它后边要跟名词或与之相当的词语或分句，称为介词宾语。“介词+宾语”构成介词短语。介词短语在句中通常起修饰作用，用于修饰主语、宾语、谓语动词或句中的其他成分。

本章准备概述介词短语的结构，并从类比角度讨论若干介词的含义及其使用选择问题。

15.2 介词短语的结构

15.2A 介词宾语

1) 介词宾语通常是由名词担任，有时也用其他词语。

例如：

A preposition is often followed by a *noun phrase*.

Every man is best known to *himself*.

This program is anything but *perfect*.

It is hot there except *late at night*.

At last they gave him up for *lost*.

A man becomes learned by *asking questions*.

This explains why flames burn upwards instead of *downwards*.

2) 介词短语本身也可以作介词宾语。例如：

The word is rare except *in slang*.

The child was looking at us from *behind the door*;

They've known each other since *before the war*.

... But this morning Miss Leman arrived, breathless: at five minutes past ten instead of *on the stroke of ten o'clock*.

3) 有时分句可以作介词宾语。例如：

We are more likely to remember things from *when we were young or when we were excited*.

Now then, I'm rather surprised at *what you were saying*.

There was no agreement upon *when and where they would meet again*.

Little Vida could hardly find an answer to *why she had been scolded*.

Can you give me any information on *how much they would possibly ask for*?

注意：以 *that* 引导的分句一般不用作介词宾语，只在 *in*, *except* 这两个介词后面才有可能。例如：

The flu differs from common cold *in that* it is very infectious.

“Apart from” is similar to “aside from” in meaning, *except that* the latter is Americanism.

We hold identical views *in that* we should all oppose hegemonism.

She knew little of the two fuel generators *except that*

one was more powerful than the other.

4) 有些动词或形容词后面可以直接跟介词短语, 也可直接跟 *that* 分句, 两种结构可以用来表示相似的含义, 如 *ask for / that*, *conceive of / that*, *decide on / that*, *insist on / that*, *tell of / that*, *be afraid of / that*, *be ashamed of / that*, *be aware of / that*, *be sorry about / that*, *be sure of / that*, 等。

另外, 也有些动词须跟了宾语后才可以跟介词短语或 *that* 分句, 如 *convince + 宾语 + of/that*; *inform + 宾语 + of / that*; *remind + 宾语 + of/that*; 等。

由于介词短语与 *that* 分句有时含义相同, 它们之间可以转换。例如:

I was disappointed *at* not finding them in yesterday.

→ I was disappointed *that* I didn't find them in yesterday;

How can I persuade you *of* my sincerity?

→ How can I persuade you *that* I am sincere?

15.2B 介词短语中介词的省略

介词的省略多见于非正式文体, 尤其是日常口语中。省略介词主要见于以下几种情况:

1) 表示时间的介词短语。例如:

I've only had this watch (for) six months.

They might have been married (for) a year or two;

will you be going there (on) Saturday morning?

I can see her (on) Christmas Day:

(At) what time are we to start?

He'll be back(on)Tuesday, I suppose.

They came to pick him up (at) about dusk.

We've been terribly busy (in / during) these days.

注意有时习惯上不应省略介词短语中的介词，尤其是句首介词短语，否定句中的介词短语，或少了介词会造成误解时的介词短语，例如：

For nearly two months he has been lying ill in bed.

Between 12 and 1 o'clock he usually takes a nap.

The fact is he didn't come here at three yesterday afternoon.

You don't have to get up so early on Sundays.

Mr Thomas has been away on business for months.

2) 表示距离或速度的介词短语。例如：

The grass-land stretches (for) nearly one hundred miles.

He traversed (for) thousands of miles, exploring the rivers and mountains.

They are running(at)full speed.

In still air, sound travels (at) about one kilometre in three seconds. If sound passes through iron, it will speed along (at) five kilometres in one second, about fifteen times as fast as in air.

3) 其他省略情况举例：

(Of) what size / colour is the hat he wears?

To tell you the truth, I've got no idea (of) which road we should take.

Jimmy spends much of his spare time (in) taking his motorbike to pieces and putting it together again.

I had a little difficulty (in) finding his address.

They're busy (in) working at a new product.

Couldn't you stop them (from) doing it?

If you send the letter(by) airmail, it will arrive quicker.

15.3 介词与某些词类的习惯搭配

15.3A 介词和动词搭配。例如：

If you do not *abide by* the regulations, you will get into trouble. (假如你不遵守规章,你将会惹出麻烦。)

The delegation *abstained from* voting. (该代表团投票弃权。)

The jury *acquitted* him of any guilt in the matter. (陪审团宣告他无罪。)

Lamb's tales were adapted from Shakespeare's plays. (兰姆的故事是由莎士比亚的戏剧改编的。)

You should always *adhere to* the truth. (你应当永远坚持真理。)

Affix the stamp to the upper right corner of the envelope. (把邮票贴在信封的右上角。)

Mr. Petty *alluded to* his difficulties with his mother-in-law. (皮特先生向岳母婉转地说明他的困难。)

His mother told him to apologize to his sister for his rudeness. (他母亲叫他为自己的无礼行为向姐姐道歉。)

15.3B 介词和形容词搭配。例如。

That's why he was *absent from* class. (这就是他缺课的原因。)

Is the proposal *acceptable to* both sides? (这个建议双方都能接受吗?)

Have you got *accustomed to* the climate here? (你已习惯于这里的气候了吗?)

Such theory is not *consistent with* the facts.

(这种理论与事实不相符合。)

Will it be *convenient for* you to see me on Friday morning?

(星期五上午来看我，方便吗?)

You should be *courteous to* everybody.

(你应当对每个人都有礼貌。)

The two brothers were *guilty of* robbery with violence.

(两兄弟犯有暴力抢劫罪。)

I've been feeling *guilty* all the time *about* my failing to save the man.

(由于……而感到内疚。)

15.3C 介词和名词搭配。例如：

Only graduate students have *access to* the library shelves.

(只准毕业生可进图书馆藏书室。)

His second statement was not *in accord with* his first.

(第二个声明和第一个声明不一致。)

We did not go *on account of* the rain.

(因为下雨我们没去。)

You should take *advantage of* your opportunity to speak English here.

(你应当利用在这里的机会练习讲英语。)

What did you say *in answer to* her question?

(你是怎样回答她的问题的呢?)

I'm not *in the mood for* going fishing.

(我不想去钓鱼。)

She soon got the *hang of* her new washing-machine.

(她很快就知道怎样使用新的洗衣机。)

I've no *regrets about* returning to my motherland;

(我对返回祖国并不觉得后悔。)

She takes great *pride in* doings properly.

(她以办事得体而感到自豪。)

The host team have lots of *confidence in* their ability to beat the visiting team.

(主队很有信心能够打败客队。)

15.4 介词短语的几类基本含义

15.4A 动态含义与静态含义

1) 带动态含义的介词短语表示动作概念, 汉译时介词转化为动词。例如:

I'm *for* (*against*) the motion;

(我赞成(反对)这项提议。)

有时带动态含义的介词短语用于修饰动词短语, 说明动作的方向、方式等。例如:

As the bell was ringing, they climbed *into* (*out of*) their overalls.

(铃响时, 他们匆匆穿上(脱下)工装裤。)

能用于动态含义的介词短语还有。如: *up* (*down*) the tree, *onto* (*off*) the car, *across* the street, *along* the road, *round* the lake, *through* the grass, *over* the water, *towards* (*away from*) the city, etc.

2) 带静态含义的介词短语表示时间、地点等, 汉译时介词转化为方位结构。大多数介词短语都是表示静态含义。例如:

The flats are *above/over* a multiple shop. (Br E).

(公寓在联号商店上面。)

A chain store is *below/under* the apartments. (AmE)

(联号商店在公寓的下边。)

Before the United States declared its freedom from Great Britain in 1776, the economy of the colonies (both north and south) was predominantly agricultural.

(美国于一七七六年宣布脱离英国而独立之前, 南北各殖民地的经济以农业为主。)

3) 介词短语的静态、动态含义不完全取决于介词, 主要还在于前后搭配, 同一个介词在不同的搭配中所表示的含义可能也不相同。例如:

There used to be an orchard behind the house.

(表示地点。)

The bush was a good hiding place, so they dashed behind it.

(表示动作方向。)

Hearing the mother's voice, the child was stealing out from behind the door.

上句中介词 *from* 和 *behind* 连用, 常与 *from* 连用的有 *from above, from across, from among, from around, from behind, from beneath, from between, from inside, from under, etc.*

此外, 还有 *except by, except from, except through, except on, until after, until (right) before* 等介词连用形式。它们所表达的意思是两个介词含义的组合, 不可用其中某个介词单独代替。

15.4B 表示地点的介词

1) 表示地点常用的介词有 *at* 和 *in*, 两者的基本区别在于: *at* 倾向于指在某个“点上”, *in* 倾向于指某个“范围以内”。试比较:

Simon was at the platform.

(在站台上。)

Susan was *in* the train,

(在车箱里。)

当 *at* 和 *in* 都用来指某人的居住地点时，前者往往指具体的门牌号码，后者只说明在某个地区。试比较：

The Jamesons live *at* 23 Bolton Road.

My cousins-german live *in* the District of Columbia.

另外，*at* 可用来说明某人在某处所进行某项活动，或者旅途中经过某个村镇与城市，*in* 强调在某个范围以内的情况。例如：

The associate professor was *at the theater* last night.

(Meaning: watching a play)

When the curtain rose, it was dark *in the theatre*.

(Meaning: inside the theatre.)

The delegation stopped *at Washington* on their way to Pittsburgh.

They made an investigation on noise pollution *in the city of New York*.

2) 表示地点的不同介词有时有习惯上的固定搭配；有时不同搭配的含义很不相同。例如：

to be *on* the outskirts, cf: to be *in* the suburbs;

to be *on* the play-ground, cf: to be *in* the sportsfield / playing field

to work *in* the fields, cf: to work *on* the farm;

to go *into* (a) dock (进船坞), to be *in* dock (在船坞),

to be *in* the dock (在被告席上), to be *on* the docks (在码头工作), etc.

15.4C 表示时间的介词

1) *at*, *on*, *in* : *at* 用于指某个时间点，如具体的钟点，一年、一周或一天的某个时刻等；*in* 用于指某个时间范围，如

年、季、月；on 指介乎二者之间的时间，如日；指早上、下午时，可以用 in，也可以用 on，前者倾向于指“时间范围”，后者突出“日期”概念。例如：

AT: at four o'clock, at 9:30 am, at breakfast, at night, at midday, at Christmas, at the weekend, at that time, etc.

ON: on Sunday(s), on Tuesday morning, on May 21st, on the next day, on the Saturday before last, on a foggy Wednesday afternoon in late spring, etc.

IN: in 1984, in the coming years, in autumn, in February, (early) in the morning, in the night, in the days of Queen Victoria, in days of old (=in former times), in days to come (=in future times), in this day and age (=in this present period), etc.

注意: this week, next Thursday, last year, one day, the other day, day after day, all (the) day, day and night, every day 等表示时间的词组都不用介词。

2) for, since, during : for 用于指“时间段” (a period of time), since 用于指“时间点” (a point of time); during 强调整个时间过程，与连词 while 同义。例如：

Dick's going to France *for* a whole year.

I haven't seen Julia *since* the New Year's Day.

They were always breaking the rules *during* the game (= while the game was going on).

3) in, after : in 表示从现在时间角度所指的将来，after 表示从过去时间角度所指的“之后”。例如：

Dicky is leaving for Houston *in* two days.

We had to take a taxi home *after* the party.

Citizens were not allowed to go out shortly after seven in the evening.

4) before 与副词 ago : before 指某个时间之前, ago 指从现在时间角度所讲的“以前”。例如:

The post office is very busy before Christmas.

Printing was first invented in the Song Dynasty about 900 years ago.

5) from ... to, till / until :

from ... to, till / until 都可以表示一段时间的始末, 即“从……到(什么时候为止)”的意思。例如:

The chrysanthemum show was from November 1st to 15th.

My sister's staying with us till Friday / until Friday.

from ... till / untill 可以用来代替 from ... to, 美国英语 (AmE) 还可以用 from ... through. 例如:

The grocery business is open from nine till five-thirty.

The industrial exhibition will be closed from tomorrow until next Tuesday / from tomorrow through next Tuesday.

till 比 until 通俗一些, 但注意句首或 not 之后用 until. 另外, 汉语里所说的“从…时开始, 到…时为止”不能译为 * (to) begin from ... to ... 的形式, 而应译为 (to) begin at ... and (to) end at ...

15.4D 介词的含义区分与使用选择

1) 前面讲过介词和名词、形容词、动词等常有习惯上的固定搭配(参见15.3)不同的搭配用于表示不同的意思, 我们在学习中要注意观察, 比较和记忆。例如不同的介词可以与形容词 happy 搭配出现在如下句子中:

John is happy at the news /
... over his success.

... *about* his promotion.

... *with* his friends.

... *in* having another opportunity.

形容词 *good* 后面可以搭配表示关系的几种介词。例如：

The work is good *for* you.

Sunshine is good *to* children.

He's one of these teachers who's very good *with* students.

That firm's fairly good *to* its staff.

Her brother is good *at* arithmetic.

She's good *in* cooking fish.

从上述有关 *happy* 和 *good* 的例句中可以找出介词与它们搭配的某些共同点，如 *at* 通常指具体的事，*in* 后边常常跟动词的 *-ing* 形式，*to* 指单向的关系，*with* 指相互间的关系等等。这些当然不能作为普遍的规律套用，只可作为我们选用介词时参考。

2) 我们在选用介词时，不能只从表面上看结构和含义是否可行，还要结合整个句子所指的对象来看是否正确，在科技英语中尤其如此。例如：

(A) Punched cards may vary according to the design of the computer _____ which they are made.

(B) One very important type of box in a computer is the decision box, _____ which a question is asked.

上面两句的空白处，*in*, *from*, *for*, *about* 等等介词似乎都可以填进去，但从所述的对象看，A) 句只能用 *for* B) 句只能用 *in*，因为不同的打洞卡是为 (*for*) 适应不同型号的计算机所准备的，而“问题箱”是计算机中 (*in*) 的一个重要部件，如果选用其他介词，就要导致意思上的差错。又如下面各句中介词的选择都必须准确无误：

Japan is *to* the east of China.

Taiwan is *in* the east of China.

Air enters the engine *through* a divergent inlet duct, *in* which its pressure is raised to some extent, It then passes *to* a compressor, where it is compressed, and *from* which it is delivered *to* the combustion chambers. These are arranged radially round the axis of the turbine, *into* which the products of combustion pass on leaving the combustion chambers ...



第十六章 并列与主从

16.1 引言

并列结构 (COORDINATE STRUCTURE) 和主从结构 (MAIN AND SUBORDINATE STRUCTURE) 是英语句子成份的两种基本构成形式, 又是英语句间连接的常用手段。

由并列连词 and, but, or 等连接的词语或分句称为并列结构的成分, 它们之间既没有从属关系, 也不是修饰关系, 而是处于同一层次上的平等的联合关系。并列成分之间一般要求对称, 即要求相同类型的短语并列, 或相同类型的分句并列, 等。例如下述句子中的斜体部分就是不合要求的并列成分:

To strive, to seek, to find, and not *yielding*.

(应改为 to yield)

Say well is good, but *doing* well is better.

(应改为 do)

When was the Declaration of Independence adopted, *June* 7, or on July 7, 1776?

(应改为 on June 7)

本章在说明以 and, but, or, for, nor 为代表的五类并列连词时, 结合介绍一些表示类似含义的连接副词, 在讨论并列结构的使用时, 也联系到以后几章将要集中讨论的主从结构, 以利于学习者进行区别比较, 灵活运用。

16.2 以 and 为代表的并列连词

这类连词除 *and* 外，还有 *both ... and*, *as well as*, *not only ... but (also)* 等，主要表示含义增补及强调。

16.2A AND

1) 以 *and* 连接名词短语，主要表示“和”、“及”、“与”、“兼”、“而且(也)”等含义。例如：

Banneker was the son of a slave father *and* a freewoman mother.

This exercise requires changing the form of every noun, pronoun, verb, adjective, *and* adverb.

Pride and Prejudice was written by Jane Austen.

Edward Gibbon (1737—1794) is regarded as historian *and* essayist.

The heated underground water gushes out of the ground in the forms of spuring fountains, *and* hot springs.

上述这种结构有时也表示转折含义 (=but)。例如：

He is Jack of all trades *and* master of none.

(他样样都会，一门不精。)

There is all talk *and* no action.

(尽是空谈而无行动。)

2) 以 *and* 连接动词短语，表示动作的连续或反复。例如：

Will you please close the window *and* turn off the light before you leave?

The little goat walked *and* walked *and* walked, went across a small stream *and* found a beautiful pasture of green grass.

在日常口语中，尤其是祈使句里，常用 *and* 连接两个原形动词表示动作的目的；注意如果不是原形动词，就要用不定式。例如：

Try and come early next time.

cf: She *tried to come* early but was held up by the train.
Go and see him once a week.

cf: He *goes to see* him once a week.

3) 以 *and* 连接形容词、副词或介词短语，通常起强调修饰作用。例如：

It's getting *warmer and warmer*. (Meaning: increasingly warm.)

The room is *nice and warm*. (Meaning: warm to just the right degree.)

You'll find it *lovely and cool* to be there even in the hottest summer days. (Meaning: comfortably cool.)

Anything edible? I'm *good and hungry*. (Meaning: very hungry.)

Let him have a rest; he's *well and truly* drunk. (Meaning: very.)

The man talked *on and on and on*. (Meaning: continuously for a terribly long time.)

They hit the poor boy *again and again*. (Meaning: repeatedly; very often.)

We walked *for hours and hours*. (Meaning: for a very long time.)

She carried on the experiments *with little and with no assistance*.

16.2B BOTH ... AND

both ... and 比 *and* 的语气强，可以连接各类词语，表示“两者都”“既……又”等含义。例如：

Both China and many other Third World countries are trying to enhance South-South co-operation.

The Young Pioneers have *both* swept the floor *and* mopped it.

Mrs. Smith is *both* kind *and* gentle to her Chinese pupils.

Resistance came *both* from the guerillas *and* from among the citizens in the occupied city.

16.2C AS WELL AS

1) *as well as* 和 *both ... and* 一样可用于连接不同词语,其含义也基本相同,区别在于:*as well as* 倾向于更强调其前面的词语。例如:

In approaching a problem a Marxist should see the whole *as well as* the parts. (更强调要看到全体。)

You should help the students apply *as well as* understand what they are taught. (更强调要学以致用。)

We shall see how a man acts *as well as* hear what he says. (更强调要观其行。)

2) *as well as* 有时与 *both* 连用,有时以 *and ... as well* 形式后置。例如:

This testifies to the growing role of that periodical *both* in national *as well as* international affairs.

I've read some of his plays, *and* one of his novels *as well*.

Franklin was a great scientist, *and* an outstanding politician *as well*.

3) *as well as* 在句中的位置比较灵活:除了通常置于连接成分之间外,*as well as* 有时带着它后面的连接成分一起移到句首或插到中间,以便使句子结构平衡,也突出移动部分的内容。例如:

As well as classroom teaching, we saw their foreign language extracurricular activities, audio-visual building, diningroom, clinic, dorm, sports-field together with a swimming pool and a gymnasium.

Mr Thachual, *as well as you*, has been digging into that subject, I was told.

4) *as well as* 中的 *well* 作副词时为 *as ... as* 比较级结构 (参见 14.3 B); 另外, *as well as* 有时起复合介词 *in addition to* 的作用。如:

She can sing *as well as* a star;

(唱得与歌星一样好。)

The National Liberation Army there killed more than 100 troops, shot down five air force planes, *as well as* destroying many bridges throughout the northern and eastern regions.

(除了……以外, 还……)

16.2D NOT ONLY...BUT ALSO

1) *not only ... but also* 的强调重点在后面的成分, 这与 *well as* 正相反。例如:

You should *not only* map out your plan *but also* go into action.

cf: You should go into action *as well as* map out your plan.

Milton was *not only* a great poet *but also* a staunch revolutionary:

cf: Milton was a staunch revolutionary *as well as* a great poet.

2) *not only ... but also* 和 *as well as* 都能在一定的句子

结构中 *and* 互用。例如：

The former king was *not only* compelled to stay indoors, *but* he was *also* forbidden to see any of his ministers or friends.

The former king was compelled to stay indoors *as well as* forbidden to see any of his ministers or friends.

The former king was compelled to stay indoors *and* (he was) forbidden to see any of his ministers or friends.

但从语气上看，以 *not only ... but also* 最强，它还可以置于句首构成倒装句。例如：

Not only was the former king compelled to stay indoors *but* he was *also* forbidden to ...

16.3 以 *but* 为代表的并列连词

并列连词 *but* 表示转折含义，相当于汉语里的“但是”，“然而”等意思。在不同句子中，*but* 所引导的分句的具体含义还会有某些差别：

1) *but* 引导的分句表示与前一分句完全相反的情况，形成鲜明的对照。例如：

Charms strike the sight, *but* merit wins the soul.

Fools learn nothing from wise men, *but* wise men learn much from fools.

用于这种含义时，*while*, *whereas* 等能起类似 *but* 的作用。

例如：

The whole room was made into a mess: books strewed the floor, *while* magazines covered the tables.

Motion is absolute *while* stagnation is relative.

Some people like meat or fish *whereas* others prefer vegetable dishes.

2) *but* 引导的分句用于解释前面分句中所示的意图或动作未能实现的原因。用于这种含义时, *but* 分句通常用一般过去时, 其前面的分句可以用过去时或过去完成体, 动词常用 *expect, hope, think, intend, mean (=intend), suppose, want,* 等。例如:

I meant to come to see you last night, but a friend dropped in.

I had meant to call on you, but was prevented from doing so.

They had wanted to see you off at the airport but couldn't get there in time.

3) *but* 分句表示一种比较委婉的转折含意, 似乎是以确认其前面分句的事实为前提, 有一种“让步”的概念。例如:

He makes good promises, but (he) seldom keeps them.

cf: *Although he makes good promises, he seldom keeps them.*

The advertisement sounds perfect, but the product may not be so good.

cf: *Although the advertisement sounds perfect, the product may not be so good.*

连接副词 *yet, still* 和 *nevertheless* 等也能用于表示 *but* 的这种含义(参见 12.5B)。例如:

We've made good progress, yet (=but) more difficulties may still be ahead of us.

This essay is by no means perfect; still, it contains some original ideas.

The news may be unexpected; nevertheless, it is true. Everything went against him, still he persisted.

Your arguments are strong, *nevertheless*, they do not convince me.

The sea changed, the fields changed, the rivers, the villages, and the people changed, *yet* Egdon remained.

16.4 以 *or* 为代表的并列连词

这类并列连词有 *or*, *either ... or* 等, 用于表示选择含义, 相当于汉语里的“或者”, “否则”, “不然”等概念。例如:

Knowledge is of two kinds: We know a subject ourselves, *or* we know where we can find information upon it.

You'll *either* sail this boat correctly *or* you'll never go out with me again.

Seize the chance, *or* you will regret it.

注意由 *or*, *either ... or* 所连接的两个部分在内容上相互排斥, 两个可能性中只能选择其中的一个(习惯上说话人常把认为比较理想的选择放在前面); 另一方面, 由选择连接词所连接的两个部分又相互依存, 如果去掉一个组成部分, 整句的含义就表达不出来。例如:

To be *or* not to be, that is the question.

Is he innocent *or* is he guilty?

Either he was not in *or* he was unwilling to interview us.

We can *either* buy a television *or* hire one.

We can buy *either* a colour television *or* a black and white one.

在向别人提出劝诫时, 往往用 *or* 引导的分句指明如果对方不听将会出现的情况(后果)。在这类并列句中, 除用连接词 *or* 以外, 还可以用 *or else* (= *or if not*), (*or*) *otherwise*, 等。例如:

Seize the chance, *otherwise* you will regret it.

Do it now. *Otherwise* it will be too late.

I only told him to leave my horse alone, *or else* it would kick him.

Don't leave your car under NO PARKING sign; *or else* your car may be towed away by the police.

16.5 以 for 为代表的并列连词

for 用于并列连词时可以表示因果关系，但和表示因果关系的连接副词 so 及从属连词 because 等均有某些区别。

1) so 作为连接副词表示因果关系时，它所引导的分句是在其前句的内容基础上所作出的结论，相当于汉语的“因此”，“所以”。例如：

I had broken my glasses, so (I) couldn't see what was happening.

Electricity is expensive so please put the light out when you leave the room.

and so 可以连用；此外，hence, therefore 等连接的词也能表示 so 的含义。常见于比较正式的英语中。例如：

Thomas Gray wrote a famous poem, *and so* he holds a high place in English literature.

The Lacons were famous for their brevity in expressions, *hence* a short answer is often spoken of as a locanic answer.

The rare book had a torn flyleaf; *therefore* it was advertised at a reduced price.

2) because 引导的从属分句用于说明主句中的动作或情况为何发生，是整个句子的重心所在。because 分句的位置可以在主句后面，也可以提到主句之前，前置时用逗号与主句隔开。例如：

I didn't show up at the match yesterday *because* I had sprained my wrist.

— *Because* I had sprained my wrist, I didn't show up at the match yesterday.

由于 *because* 分句代表全句的重心，因此在口语中常常使用以 *Because* 引导的句子来回答以 *Why* 起首的疑问句。例如：

— *Why* can't you do it now?

— *Because* I'm too busy.

as 和 *since* 与 *because* 相类似，也能引导表示原因的从属分句。例如：

As Jane was the eldest, she looked after the others.

She stayed at home *as* she had no car.

Since we live near the sea, we can often go swimming.

注意 *because* 和 *as, since* 在含义上有些不同：*because* 倾向于直接说明 *why*；而 *as, since* 主要表示与有关的主句之间的因、果关系。在比较正式的英语中，有时用 *consequently* 表示这种关系。例如：

The city is situated near the sea and *consequently* enjoys a healthy climate.

3) *for* 引导的分句只能后置，并有逗号与前一分句相隔。

例如：

The days are getting longer, *for* it is now February.

A good deal of rain must have fallen, *for* the brook is very high.

上述 *for* 分句的含义是表示对前面分句内容的解释或者提供证据。由于前面的分句往往表示一种推测或判断，因此常用情态助动词表示推测性含义，尤其常用“*must* + 现在完成体”来说明过去。例如：

It *must have rained* last night, for the road is wet.

Electricity *must have been* cut off, for not even a street lamp was on.

There *might* be an accident, for I noticed a big crowd in the street.

The brook *will* be very high, for a great deal of water fell in the night.

上述表示因果关系的 *for*, *because*, *as* 等在含义与使用上虽有某些差别, 但它们之间也有可以互用的情形。例如:

Do as you are told, for much depends on it. (*for* = *because*)

She looks pale, for she has been ill for some time. (*for* = *because*)

"He will not come back," thought the King, *because* he knew that any man who looks at the face of Medusa is changed into stone. (*because* = *for*)

He saw her, *as* they were both getting off the bus at the same time. (*as* = *for/because*)

16.6 以 *nor* 为代表的并列连词

这类连词有 *nor*, *neither*, *neither ... nor* 等, 表示“(也)不”, “既不……也不”之类的否定含义。例如:

Mr. Blaggs doesn't smoke, *nor* does his brother.

She cannot swim, *neither* can her sister.

Neither does Dr Fisher love the environment *nor* is he accustomed to the weather.

Neither has John written to his parents *nor* has he heard from them since three months ago.

注意 *neither*, *nor* 在句首时会引起倒装, 将谓语中的作用

词，如上例中的 *has*，移到主语的前面。

16.7 平行并列

这种并列句通常表示同时发生的动作或同时存在的情况，前后分句在结构与含义上都很对称，可以彼此互换位置而不影响整句的意义或结构平衡。用于这类并列句中的连接词主要是 *and*，有时也用分号或者逗号。例如：

As is reported, a trade agreement was signed *and* a cultural exchange was arranged.

— As is reported, a cultural exchange was arranged *and* a trade agreement was signed.

Stephen as hero is an adolescent; Stephen as artist is an adult.

— Stephen as artist is an adult; Stephen as hero is an adolescent.

Children are playing blindman's buzz by the lake, parents are sitting on the bench and chatting.

— Parents are sitting on the bench and chatting, children are playing blindman's buzz by the lake.

表示相反含义时，连接词除用 *but* 外，有时还可以用 *and*，或者用 *neither, nor* 等。例如：

Jim is fond of sports *and/but* Mary is interested in music.

— Mary is interested in music *and/but* Jim is fond of sports.

Neither has he a silk hat *nor* does he wear overalls.

— *Neither* does he wear overalls *nor* has he a silk hat.

当然，在两个分句交换位置时，有时也需要对原来的某些词语作相应的调整，如变换主语或宾语的前后位置，以及代词格的

变化等。例如：

Father stays up late at night *and* he gets up early in the morning.

— Father gets up early in the morning *and* he stays up late at night.

He is not unkind to her, *nor* is she to him.

— She is not unkind to him, *nor* is he to her.

Stevenson's romances are entertaining; they are full of exciting adventures.

— Stevenson's romances are full of adventures; they are entertaining.

16.8 顺序并列

这类并列句中分句的前后次序比较固定，一般不能象平行并列中的分句那样可以互换位置。用于顺序并列的连接词有 *and*, *so*, *for*, *or* 等，有时也可用逗号、分号。顺序通常用来表示下列四种含义：

16.8A 表示先后或连续发生的动作或情况

The pupils finished their lessons *and* they went out to play.

“I find what the world needs; then I go ahead *and* try to invent it.” (Edison)

Just insert it into the slot here, wait until you hear it fall into the machine; then pull this lever out.

... Winston poured out nearly a teacupful, nerved himself for a shock, and gulped it down like a dose of medicine. Instantly his face turned scarlet *and* the water ran out of his eyes ...

这类并列句中的分句有时可以颠倒前后次序，但除了对原分

句的主语或宾语作适当调整之外，还须根据动作发生的先后，对时态形式作相应的变动，原来的连接词 *and* 也要改用其他形式（如分号）来代替。例如：

Tom finished the paper *and* he handed it in.

— Tom handed in the paper; he had finished it.

The scouts caught sight of something *and* they stopped moving.

— The scouts stopped moving; they (had) caught sight of something.

16.8B 表示对情况的进一步说明

He could make out three men lying on the beach *and* one of them was holding field-glasses.

The seal can provide meat for many meals, *and* it will provide skin and oil as well.

His brothers and sisters numbered 8, *and* he was the oldest.

He saw men shoot men with guns in the head; they fell down like sacks of rice.

The minister and his wife sat next to each other, they introduced Arturo to the other people present.

表示上述含义时，有时 *but* 可与 *and* 互用。例如：

Many of the papers are good, *but/and* these are the best.

Inside the cave he saw many pots and boxes full of food, *but/and* there was not a single soul to be found.

Both suggestions are helpful, *but/yet/and* theirs seems more practical.

16.8C 表示评论或看法

They've finished half of it, *and that's not bad*.

He was my first teacher — *and I am proud of it.*

The Importance of Being Earnest is probably the wittiest comedy in the English language; *it is certainly the least earnest.*

It was a stab-in-the-back business; *he could not have done it.* Many students at the university — *and it is difficult to explain this* — rejected the proposed reform in school administration.

上述各例中，斜体部分的分句都表示对前面分句的评论或者看法，其中末尾一例中的 *and* 引导的分句插到前一分句中间，带有插入语的味道。

16.8D 表示因果关系

Cotton became the king of crops, *and* production rose into millions of pounds per year.

The old gardener watered the seeds regularly *and* they grew faster than expected.

为了强调，有时将 *and* 和 *so* 连用。例如：

Trollope produced a large number of novels (dealing with Victorian life) *and so* he was regarded as a prolific writer.

Most of the Sahara receives almost no rain at all, *and so* there are no trees, no flowers, no grass.

前面 16.5 讲过，以 *so*, *for* 等引导并列分句都是表示因果关系，但它们连接的两个分句位置不同。试比较：

He was too cocky, *so* I gave him a piece of my mind.

— I gave him a piece of my mind, *for* he was too cocky.

但注意：表示因果关系的分句之间如果只用逗号或分号连接，则不一定是顺序并列，而可以视为平行并列，其前后分句能

互换位置。例如：

I can't borrow any more money; I'm already in debt.

— I'm already in debt; I can't borrow any more money.

16.9 并列结构的使用

英语中并列结构的使用十分普遍。

16.9A 并列结构的句法功能

并列结构可在句中作不同的成分：

1) 作主语。例如：

Tom and Mary are now ready.

What I say and what I think are my own affair.

Reading the text and doing the exercises will take each pupil an hour or so.

Either today or tomorrow will do.

作主语的并列结构有时含义上是复数，有时是单数，有时既可以看作是复数，也可以看作是单数，应注意谓语动词保持数的形式一致。例如：

War and peace are alternatives between which man must continually choose.

"War and Peace" is a fascinating novel by Tolstoy.

The minister, as well as the trade union, is responsible for the present impasse.

Neither he nor his wife have/has arrived.

以并列结构作主语的句子往往也是带有省略的并列复合句（即省去了其中一个分句的谓语），并且可以根据意义转化为两个完整的分句。但有时作主语的并列结构是指一个不可分割的整体，那就只应看作是简单句，不应转化为并列复合句，否则就改变了原句的含义。试比较：

These desks and those chairs are for sale;

= These desks are for sale and those chairs are for sale too.

A watch and (a) chain will cost you more than one hundred.

A watch will cost you more than one hundred and a chain will cost you more than one hundred.

2) 作谓语。例如:

You may go or stay.

She tried another time but failed again.

He sat down, picked up a pencil and started writing.

以并列结构作谓语的简单句, 通常都可以看作是带省略的并列句(省去了其中一个分句的主语), 并可根据整句的含义将省去的主语表示出来。例如:

He gave up the official post and (he) began writing.

Her sister had much more earnings but (her sister) often fell short of money.

但有时谓语是一个不可分割的整体, 则只应看作是带并列结构谓语的简单句。例如:

You can go and see a doctor if you need.

One shouldn't just eat, drink and make merry all day long without working or learning.

3) 作宾语、主语补语(表语)、状语或定语等。例如:

You can buy either a watch or a bike.

It's not cheap but good.

Tony went to the pharmacy and then to the grocery.

上述各句都可转化为由完整分句组成的并列复合句:

You can buy a watch, or you can buy a bike.

It's not very cheap, but it's good.

Tony went to the pharmacy and then he went to the grocery.

但注意有时并列结构是个统一体，因而不能象上面那样转换。例如：

It's getting *colder and colder*.

I'm afraid that man is *well and truly* mad.

I don't use chopsticks. Can I have *knife and fork*?

Her *clear but inaccurate* pronunciation left a deep impression on us.

16.9B 并列结构的修辞作用

并列，不论用于句子成分的构成形式，还是用于句间的连接形式，都具有特定的修辞作用。恰当运用并列结构作为排比手法，在论说、叙事或描写等各类文章中都会产生很好的效果。这里仅举三例：

1) 用于说理条理清晰。例如：

The purpose of writing is to communicate facts, feelings, attitudes, and ideas clearly and effectively. Having something to say, thinking about it clearly, developing general ideas with ample, fresh, specific, and accurate details — these are all indispensable to effective writing. And so also are many details of basic sentence structure and punctuation. Unless our sentences observe the limits of English grammar and conform to the conventions of written English, we are not likely to have any readers to ask whether our ideas are interesting and our writing is vivid...

2) 用于叙事层次分明。例如：

She took off her cloak, dismissed the servant, and went

over to the fire-place, and stood peeling off her gloves; the firelight shone on her hair, Harry came across the room and caught her in his arm — “Rosabel, Rosabel, Rosabel...”

3) 用于写景简练明快。例如:

The valley went darker with dust and smoke, and there were only shadows and a big noise of many cries and hoofs and guns. On the left of where I was I could hear the shod hoofs of the soldiers' horses going back into the brush and there was shooting everywhere. Then the hoofs came out of the brush, and I came out and was in among men and horses weaving in and out and going upstream, and everybody was yelling, “Hurry! Hurry!” The soldiers were running upstream and we were all mixed there in the twilight and the great noise. I did not see much; but once I saw a Lakota charge at a soldier who stayed behind and fought and was a very brave man. The Lakota took the soldier's horse by the bridle, but the soldier killed him with a six-shooter. I was small and could not crowd in to where the soldiers were, so I did not kill anybody. There were so many ahead of me, and it was all dark and mixed up.

16.10 主从结构

前面讲到, 并列结构既有普遍的句法功能, 又有重要的修辞作用, 因而在各种文体中都很常见。但正如其他语言形式一样, 并列结构也须使用得当。如果过多地重复使用, 会使句式呆板。试比较:

Paul was careless, and he cut his finger; and so his

mother was angry and scolded him.

— Paul cut his finger *because he was careless, so his mother was angry and scolded him.*

上例经过调整，将“Paul was careless and he cut his finger; and so...”改为“Paul cut his finger because he was careless, so...”前后省去了两个 and 整句的形式显得较为活泼，结构上也较为严谨。这里以 because 引导的分句与前边的“Paul cut his finger”之间不是并列关系，而是从属关系，称之为从属分句 (SUBORDINATE CLAUSE)。而前面“Paul cut his finger”为主句 (MAIN CLAUSE)。从句在结构上依附于主句，充当主句的一个组成部分，包括主语、宾语、修饰语等，如上述 because 分句就是主句的状语，说明原因。

一个结构充当另一结构的某个组成部分，这是主从结构的基本特征，前面讲到的形容词、副词、介词短语等在句中的基本职能是充当从属结构。由主句和从句组成的主从结构，叫做主从复合句。前面讲过的并列复合句是由并列连词连接，而主从复合句中的从句则由从属连词 (SUBORDINATOR) 引导。

从属连词比并列连词的数目要多得多，构成形式与使用也复杂得多。以单词作从属连词的有 after, although, as, because, before, if, lest, once, since, that, till, until, when, where, whereby, whether, while, 等；关系代词 who, whom, whose, which, that 和关系副词 when, where, why, how 等也常用作从属连词。此外，还有一些由两个以上单词组成的复合从属连词，如 for all that, for fear that, given that, granting that, granted that, in order that, on condition that, provided that, providing that, save that; as far as, as long as, as soon as, so far as, so long as; as if, as though, in case, no matter who/how/when/where; rather than, sooner than; more/less/

-er ... than, no sooner than, such ... as; etc. 注意某些复合从属连词之间以及它们与单词从属连词之间有时可能同义。例如：

For all that/In spite of the fact that she has a good sense of balance, she can't dance well.

The transistors to be transported have been well packed *for fear that/lest* they be damaged.

Granted that/Granting that/Even though John has the right of inheritance, it doesn't mean he's going to have the property without legal procedures.

Provided (that)/Providing (that)/If there is no opposition, the legal time limit is therefore confirmed.

从属分句可分为三大类，即：名词性分句、形容词性分句和副词性分句，分别见下面17、18、19章。



第十七章 主从复合句(一):名词性分句

17.1 引言

名词性分句 (nominal clause) 是指主从复合句中一种带名词性质的分句,它能在复合句中担任句子的主语、宾语、补语、同位语等。

名词性分句由两类连接词引导:一类是从属连词 *that* 及 *whether, if* 等引导的分句;另一类是由 *who, whom, whose, what, which, whoever, whatever, whichever* 等连接代词和 *where, when, how, why* 等连接副词引导,这些引导词大都以 *wh* 字母开首,由它们引导的分句统称为名词性“*wh* 分句”。前类分句以 *that* 为代表,称为名词性“*that* 分句”。关于 *whether, if* 用法详见 17.6B。

17.2 名词性分句作主语

17.2A *that* 分句作主语

That I have to come here is a token of what I have already learned.

That Jim had done it all alone made many of his friends astonished and many of them simply couldn't believe their ears when they heard the news.

一般说来, *that* 分句置句首时,分句本身比较短,而后边主句的谓语部分比较长,并且往往还含有其他分句。不然,则 *that* 分句一般置于句末,句首用先行词 *it*。在这种句子里,引导词 *that* 有

时省略。例如：

It is the peculiarity of knowledge that those who really thirst for it always get it.

It will scarcely be disputed by his warmest friends that he was in error.

It seems unlikely (that) she will refuse to offer.

cf:

It is doubtful whether (NOT: if) they will be able to win the scholarship.

如果以 *that* 分句为主语的句子是疑问句，那就只能用先行词 *it* 结构。例如：

Is it probable that the climber still remains alive?

Is it any wonder that electric computers are sometimes called "thinking machines"?

Isn't it a pity that none has passed the test?

Does it matter that they will not come tomorrow?

17.2B 以 *wh* 分句作主语

What people fear is the unknown and making fools of themselves.

How the prisoner escaped remains a complete mystery.

Who was responsible for the accident will soon be made clear.

Whether he could pay off his creditors was a question that worried him a lot.

wh 主语分句和 *that* 分句一样，也常置于先行词 *it* 后面（若分句较长，则更宜后置）。例如：

It is not clear who will be in charge of the project,

It is most interesting how they managed to breed these

rare birds.

It is hard to explain why he has been there again and is planning to go there the third time.

It doesn't matter much whether he comes or not.

(Or: *Whether he comes or not doesn't matter much.*)

17.3 名词性分句作宾语

17.3A that 分句作宾语

Edison once remarked *that* genius was "two percent inspiration and ninety-eight percent perspiration".

I have just received a letter from my old school informing me *that* my former headmaster, Mr Reginald Page, will be retiring next week.

They have been told *that* rescue operations are going smoothly.

I wonder whether we shall be in time for the last bus or *whether* we shall have to walk home.

在 11.2, 11.3 曾提到, *that* 句分在 *suggest*, *demand* 等动词后面作宾语时, 分句中常用表示虚拟含义的动词形式, 包括 "should + V" 形式。例如:

I wish it *were* never foggy in London.

The committee has voted *that* the program (*should*) be put into action.

The public insisted / demand *that* the criminal (*should*) be sentenced to death.

在下列几种情况下, 常用先行词 *it* 作宾语, 后跟 *that* 分句:

1) 当宾语为分句加补语时, 例如:

Something put *it* into his head *that* she was a spy, who

might have already got information about the manoeuvre.

We thought *it* wrong *that* you should drink to anaesthetize yourself.

Most members considered *it* appropriate *that* every proposal (should) be passed on in advance.

2) 在某些习惯搭配中间。例如：

We owe *it* to you *that* the plan has been working out so successfully.

You should see *to it that* every article is properly packed.

I take *it that* you will start soon.

Don't take *it for granted that* every word he says is true.

3) 在介词后面。例如：

You can depend *on it that* John will be on time.

I'm counting *on it that* you will come.

注意介词 *in* 和 *except* 后面可以直接跟 *that* 分句作宾语。

Men differ from animals *in that* they can work, think and speak.

Little is known of his childhood *except that* he began to work in a factory at the age of eleven.

17.3B *wh* 分句作宾语

No one knows *what* made him act like that.

I can't imagine *how* long it will last.

I haven't decided yet *which* is the best thing to do.

Could you explain *why* one of the four countries with

ancient civilization disappeared on earth long ago?

wh 分句可以直接作介词的宾语。例如：

There isn't a word of truth in *what* you say, but still I'll go with you.

When her son-in-law bustered about *how* he was going to get even with the boss who had docked his pay, Imelda fixed him with a cold eye and said, "Little fish doesn't eat big fish."

17.4 名词性分句作主语补语

17.4A that 分句作主语补语

这种复合句用于表示客观事实或主观看法等，其中主句的主语通常用诸如 *the fact*, *the problem*, 或者 *my view*, *her conviction* 等名词短语，*that* 分句补充说明其实际内容。例如：

The truth is that the fairest-looking shoe may pinch the foot.

One advantage of her proposal seems *that* it will bring better economic results.

My opinion is that we must try to take the initiative.

His explanation was that he didn't notice the car till too late.

All I can tell you now is (that) he won't accept the invitation.

17.4B wh 分句作主语补语

"That's *what* I'll do," said Ruth.

My problem is *who* will play the right guard.

Her question is *when* the Great Wall was built.

This is *how* he accumulated so much health and medical

information.

17.5 名词性分句作同位语

17.5A that 分句作同位语

Napoleon lingered for a month among the ruins of Moscow in *the belief that* Alexander would open negotiation for peace.

They had to face *the fact that* their food would run out in a few days.

By the time when Albert Einstein was 14 years old, he had recovered from a short to *the extent that* he taught himself advanced calculus and geometry from textbooks.

有时为了避免头重脚轻的句子结构，将谓语（通常简短）置于名词短语和它的同位语之间，因而出现同位语分句的分隔。例如：

The danger remains that she may die of heart failure.

The name "volcano" indicates the belief of the ancient Greeks that the burning hills of the Mediterranean were the workshops of the divine blacksmith, Vulcan.

17.5B wh 分句作同位语

Have you *any idea when* they will arrive?

My original question, why he did it at all, has not been answered.

Then arose *the question who* would go to tie a bell on the cat's neck.

The weatherman's forecast when it was going to rain turned out to be quite correct.

17.6 名词性分句连接词的选用

17.6A 间接引语中的连接词

1) *that* 引导陈述句:

Samuel Johnson said, "No man ever yet became great by imitation."

→ Samuel Johnson said *that* no man ever yet became great by imitation.

"Good children make glad parents." — English proverb.

→ An English proverb goes *that* good children make glad parents.

Notice: Passengers must not lean out of the window.

→ The notice says *that* passengers must not/are not allowed to lean out of the window.

"I can type 300 words a minute," she claimed.

→ She claimed *that* she could type 300 words a minute.

2) *wh* 连接词引导 *wh* 疑问句:

"What are you planning to do at the week end?" he asked.

→ He asked (me) *what* I was planning to do at the week end.

"Where does Mr Henry live? the man inquired.

→ The man inquired *where* Mr Henry lives.

"How long will it take me to get to town?" was the stranger's question.

→ The stranger's question was *how* long it would take him to get to town.

3) *whether* 或 *if* 引导 yes-no 疑问句.

The child asked, "Can I eat it all, Mummy?"

— The child asked his mummy *whether/if* he could eat it all.

“Shall I write to him in reply?” the girl wondered.

— The girl wondered *whether/if* she should write to him in reply.

17.6B *whether* 与 *if* 用法上的若干区别

1) 在及物动词和 “be + adj” 结构后面的名词性分句既可用 *whether* 引导, 也可以用 *if* 引导。例如:

Please go and see *whether/if* every one has arrived.

When she was asked *whether/if* she had seen the accused on the night of the 25th, the woman kept silent.

As the authorities were doubtful *whether/if* his design was practical, most of his efforts were politely ignored.

To tell you the truth, I'm uncertain at all *whether/if* the seminar will be held as scheduled.

2) 下列分句应当用 *whether* 引导:

当该分句位于句首作主语时, 如:

Whether my government will accept their latest proposal depends on *whether* it is practical.

Whether he should accept/*whether* to accept the invitation was a question that worried him a long time.

当该分句跟在名词后面作同位语时, 如:

I have doubts *whether* he is the same person that committed the crime.

当该分句用作介词宾语时, 如:

It depends on *whether* they can reach an agreement.

There is doubt as to *whether* these portable typewriters

are of good quality:

当与 *or, not* 连用时如:

He hasn't decided yet *whether* he will buy preference shares or ordinary shares.

I can't tell *whether or not* he will be able to do what he claims to.

有时为了使自己的意思得到准确表达,特意选用 *whether* 引导宾语分句,以免对方误解为状语分句。试比较:

A): Please send me a telegram informing me in advance *whether* I am to come.

(Meaning: Send me a telegram saying "Come" or "Don't come".)

B): Please send me a telegram informing me in advance *if* I am to come.

(Meaning 1: Send me a telegram only if I am to come, no telegram being needed if I am not to come.

(Meaning 2: This sentence may have the same meaning as sentence A.)



第十八章 主从复合句(二):形容词性分句

18.1 引言

形容词性分句即主从复合句中的定语分句,起类似形容词的修饰作用,位置在所修饰的对象——先行词之后(见12.3)。形容词性分句通常要用关系代词或关系副词引导,因而这类分句又叫做关系分句。

汉语里的定语通常放在被修饰的先行词之前,很少有象英语句子里头套句子的复合句,因此,对于初学英语的中国人来说,形容词性分句也是一个难点。

18.2 限制性定语分句与非限制性定语分句

形容词性分句按其句法作用可分为限制性与非限制性两种定语分句。

18.2A 两种定语分句的基本区别

1) 含义上的区别

所谓限制性定语分句 (restrictive attributive clause) 和非限制性定语分句 (non-restrictive attributive clause), 主要是指含义上的不同。限制性定语分句对先行词起限制、确定的作用,它与先行词之间有着不可分割的联系,因而不能随意省略。例如:

A book *that remains shut* is but a block.

A man *who hesitates* will accomplish nothing.

上句中的 *that* 与 *who* 引导的均为限制性定语分句,是句中必不可少的修饰语。非限制性定语分句只对先行词作补充性的说

明。例如：

The visitor, *who speaks with a marked Dublin accent*, seems to be a native Irishman.

Thank you very much for your car, *which drives very well*.

上述两句中的定语分句都是非限制性的，它们虽然对 the visitor 和 your car 分别提供了进一步的情况，但如果省去了也不影响句子的基本意思。

(2) 结构上的区别

非限制性定语分句通常用逗号与主句隔开，限制性定语分句与主句之间通常不用逗号；逗号在语调上表现为停顿。

Eckersley 在 *A Comprehensive English Grammar* 中讲到一个牧师不喜欢穿牧师服装，他曾说过：

“I will wear no clothes which will distinguish me from my fellow-men.”

当他的这句话在报纸上报导时，错加了一个逗号：

“I will wear no clothes, which will distinguish me from my fellow-men.”

这样将原来的限制性定语分句变成非限制性的，本来讲不愿意穿那种与众不同的牧师服装，却弄成是要一丝不挂，完全歪曲了愿意。

上例说明，在定语分句中正确使用逗号十分必要，因为一个逗号往往会影晌整句的基本意思。但是另一方面，也不能机械地仅仅把有无逗号作为两类定语分句的唯一标志。在实际使用中，有时不用逗号隔开的定语分句是非限制性的，而有逗号隔开的定语分句却是限制性的。例如：

When young, Marie lived in Poland *where her father was a teacher*.

(非限制性定语分句)

Husbands and wives, *who were themselves only children*,
may have a second child. (限制性定语分句)

若将上述两句译成汉语,第一句应当“分译”(参见 18.5B),第二句应当用“的”字结构。

玛丽亚幼年时生活在波兰,她父亲在那里当教师。

独生子和独生女结婚的夫妇可以生育两个孩子。

18.2B 限定词与两类定语分句的一般搭配关系

1) 以 *a, the* 等限定词引导的名词短语,可以被限制性或非限制性定语分句修饰。例如:

Her room has a window *which faces the botanical gardens*.

(不排除还有其他窗户的可能性)

Her room has a window, *which faces the botanical gardens*.

(只有一扇面向植物园的窗户)

The examinees who had been well-prepared found the questions quite easy.

The examinees, who had been well-prepared, found the questions quite easy.

2) 以 *any, all* 等限定词引导的名词短语跟限制性定语分句。例如:

Any participant *who is through with the activities* will be given a photographic album.

All members *who wish to attend the lecture* should bring their identification cards.

3) 以形容词性物主代词 (*my, your, his, etc*) 形容词性指示代词 (*this, that, etc*) 作限定词的名词短语或以专有名词作中心词的名词短语,其后的定语分句通常都是非限制性的。例

如:

These advertisements, *whose cost is very high*, appear at suitable times during the entertainment: at the end of a play, or between Part 1 and Part 2 of a film.

If his father, *who was a man of good position*, had refused to pay the fines for his son, William Penn wouldn't have been able to become a free man and go to America, *where he gave his father's name to Pennsylvania*.

The Nile, *which is a beautiful river*, flows into the Mediterranean Sea.

18.3 关系代词的选用

18.3A that, who (m), which

1) 在限制性定语分句中,指人时用 *who (m)*, 或者用 *that*, 指物时用 *which*, 也能用 *that*; 在日常口语中, 当关系代词在分句中作宾语时, 可以省去关系代词, 也常用 *who* 代替 *whom*. 例如:

The boy *who/that* is playing the violin has been under the coach of a famous Chinese violinist.

Is it Mr Johnson (*who/whom/ that*) you're looking for?

The writing table *which/that* stands in the corner was shipped here from Fujian a few days ago.

Please fill in here the address (*which/that*) you wish to send the telegram to.

2) 在非限制性定语分句中,通常用 *who(m)* 指人, *which* 指物. 例如:

I received a trunk telephone from Mary this morning,

who told me she was to arrive at 11 a. m. tomorrow.
Charles, *who(m)* I'm teaching to read and write, has been making remarkable progress these days.

This book, *which* only appeared two years ago, has already gone through several editions.

有时,也可以见到用 *that* 引导非限制性定语分句的情况,这种分句表示的含义是状语,或者带有感情色彩,也可能是为了有别于修饰前面整个主句的分句 *which* (参见 18.3C)。例如:

Tatham, *that* the doctor thinks such a genius, does all his constringing from cribs.

(句中以 *that* 引导的分句是状语分句,表示让步意义:“虽然博士认为泰瑟姆才华出众,他在解译句子时却全赖简易参考书。”句中 *conster* 为古体字,含义相当于 *construe*。)

Jim himself, Jim, *that* I hadn't seen for over a month.

(*that* 引导的分句表示爱的情感。)

That United States of America have a system of their own, presidential government, *that* the French entirely overlooked when they made their present constitution.

(*that* 分句只用来修饰 *a system ...*, 若用 *which* 引导,则是修饰它前面的整个主句,即指美利坚合众国自己的政体——总统制这件事。

3) 在“介词 + 关系在代词”或者“名词 代词 + 介词 + 关系代词”结构中,指人时用 *whom*, 指物时用 *which*, 不与 *that* 互用。例如:

He reminded Banford of a younger brother — someone with *whom* he would talk and take tea.

He gave an interview to a Sunday newspaper, in *which* he developed the ideas about youth he had dimly out-

lined to me in his garden.

There are over 40 participants in this short term language course, two-thirds of *whom* are non-native speakers.

Let's now have a further observation of the sentence, the subject of *which* contains two pre-modifiers and a post defining clause.

但是，在“介词 + 关系代词”结构中的介词如果后移，则 *that* 仍然能和 *who(m)*, *which* 互用，并且可以省去关系代词。这种情况在日常口语中很常见。例如：

Henry is the very person (*who/whom/that*) I want to have a talk to.

The case (*which / that*) you're referring to is now closed.

18.3B 通常用 *that* 的几种场合

1) 当先行词是指人和指物的两个并列词语时，关系代词要用 *that* 兼指人和物。例如：

The visitors spoke highly of the pioneers and their performances *that* they saw at the children's Palace.

He talked brilliantly of both the woman and her books *that* impressed him considerably.

2) 有时为了避免重复 *who* 或 *which* 而特意使用 *that*。例如：

Who will be the man *that* is to speak on TV tonight?

Which is the car *that* has overtaken us?

当然，应当注意也有为了避免重复 *that* 的情况。例如：

That's good wisdom *which* is wisdom in the end.

That's not my brother *who* you met at the inn.

3) 先行词为指物的不定代词时, 后跟以 *that* 引导的定语从句。例如:

All that we can do now is (to) wait and see.

Is there anything that is worth reading in this book?

注意指人时应当用 *who (m)*。例如:

Is there anyone who can say something about Lu Hsin?

Let's talk about somebody who(m) we all know.

4) 下列结构中的分句要以 *that* 引导, 带有类比含义。例如:

{ *He is the greatest man that has ever lived.*

{ *That's the most expensive hotel that we've ever stayed in.*

{ *Dorathy is no longer the star that she was.*

{ *The lane is not a place that you thought it to be.*

{ *He is the same author that we have touched upon earlier this chapter.*

{ *Shall we meet at the same place that we last met?*

上述 *the same ... that* 相当于 *the same ... as* 结构, 两者常常互用。

18.3C *which* 的几种特殊用法

1) *which* 引导的非限制性定语从句有时含义上修饰前面的整个主句, 表示对主句的评论或看法等意思。例如:

He managed to stand on his hands for five minutes, which — as you know — is rather a difficult thing to do.

The young man thought highly of Hitler, which I found very absurd.

在上叙这类句子中, *as* 可以和 *which* 互用。例如:

Her father is a teacher, *as / which* is clear from his manners.

The ships were frozen in, *as / which* not unfrequently happens in those regions.

上述这类分句如用 *as* 引导时, 则也可以置于主句之前, 表示“正如……”, “据……”等含义。例如:

As he hoped he would, he saw the sunrise.

As is announced over the radio today, Kohl is to visit China.

2) *which* 引导的非限制性定语分句有时和它所修饰的主句各自单独成句中间句号隔开但含义上仍然是修饰其前面的整个句子。例如:

The conference is put off till next week. *Which* is exactly what we want.

Every bottle of “BUZZ” has been tested in our laboratories.

Which is why we're so sure of our guarantee.

3) *which* 引导的非限制性定语分句有时是指主句中的某个部分。例如:

The crocodile *can swim*, *which* the monkey cannot.

Mrs Hammands is *sociable and talkative*, *which* Mr Hammands rarely is.

Many people consider her *guilty*, *which* she isn't.

Nick told me *he failed again in the exam*, *which* made me rather disappointed.

He emigrated *in 1948*, *at which* time there was much hardship and unrest.

18.3D 在分句中作特指限定词的关系代词

1) whose 常用于指人,也可以指物。例如:

This speech may serve as a reply to those *whose* questions have a bearing on my government's foreign policies.

Only these pronouns *whose* use presents special difficulties are treated in this section.

2) whose 指具体事物或抽象概念时,能与“of which”结构互换使用,但 whose 较为通俗。例如:

You may find some corns *whose* cobs are turning black with disease.

— You may find some corns the cobs *of which* are turning black with disease.

在正式文体中, whose 还可为“of which + NP”结构所代替。例如:

The 20-year-old technician improved the computer *of which the time signal* (=whose time signal) is carefully controlled by the computer “clock”.

I suggested that Professor Stanley write a preface to a selection of stories, *of which in the meantime three volumes had appeared* (= ..., whose three volumes had appeared in the meantime).

3) “which + 名词中心词”可在分句中作主语或宾语。例如:
He is old, *which fact* is important.

The driver of the stationary omnibus had signalled the defendant not to overtake, *which signal* the defendant had failed to observe.

It was blowing a gale, and raining cats and dogs for hours, *during which time* the poor boat broke into

pieces.

18.3E 双重定语分句中的关系词

1) 两个定语分句并列修饰同一个先行词时,要重复使用关系词;关系词相同时可以省去一个,关系词不同时都不要省,以免影响含义的正确表达。例如:

The house (*which*) he bought in 1968, and *which* he sold two years later, is again on the market.

He was a man *whom* all his friends admired and *who* the respect even of his many enemies.

They wanted a prince *whose* life was good, and *who* had not wronged any man.

The gas then passes to a compressor, *where* it is compressed, and from *which* it is delivered to the combustion chambers.

2) 两个定语分句依次修饰同一个先行词时,构成下述结构:先行词+定语分句(1)+定语分句(2)。在这个结构中,定语分句(1)的关系词总是该分句的宾语,通常省略;定语分句(2)的关系词可以是该分句的主语,也可以是该分句的宾语,一般都不省略。例如:

There was one point () he told me *which* I don't quite agree to even today.

Any question () you've asked (*that*) remains unanswered?

On their way back that evening, they happened to come across a huge man () neither of them could recognize *whose* voice made them, especially Ledia, very much frightened.

Faulkner was brought up by a black nurse (*whom*) he

called Mammie Cally, *who* told him many stories remembered from the time of slavery.

18.4 三个常用的关系副词: *when*, *where*, *why*

18.4A 三个关系副词与两种定语分句的搭配

1) *when* 和 *where* 既可以引导限制性定语分句,也可以引导非限制性定语分句。例如:

Can you tell me the year *when* Pittsburgh University was founded?

Can you show me the house *where* Lu Xun once lived?

I'm seeing the manager tomorrow, *when* he will be back from Hong Kong.

The next day John took me to Trafalgar Square, *where* I had a good time with the doves.

2) *why* 只能引导限制性定语分句。例如:

The reason *why* there was no agreement arrived at is because the other side showed little sincerity in the talk.

18.4B 三个关系副词的先行词

1) *when* 的先行词除 “the time *when*” 中的 *time* 外,也可以是 *day*, *morning*, *week*, *month*, *year*, *season* 等等表示时间的词语。

2) *where* 的先行词除 “the place *where*” 中的 *place* 外,也可以是 *spot*, *room*, *house*, *school*, *town*, *country*, *village* 等等表示地址的词语。

3) *why* 的先行词只有 *reason* (表示理由)。

18.4C 与关系副词含义相当的“介词 + *which* 结构”

1) 在通常情况下,应根据 *which* 的先行词及分句中有关动词与介词的习惯搭配选用“介词 + *which*”。

the day when — on which; the house where — in which;
the reason why — for which

There are few streets in London *where* (= at which place/in which) you cannot buy books.

No explanation could be given to *the reason why* the ship lost there.

— People could find no explanation *for which* the ship lost there.

2) 日常口语中“the reason why”或“the time when”结构中的关系副词都能用 *that* 代替, 并往往省略。例如:

That's the reason (*that*) he came to see you, isn't it?

This is the time (*that*) No.14 Express arrives.

当先行词是 *way*, *direction* 等词时, 其后定语分句中的 *in which* 常常省去。例如:

The laser beam is also different from ordinary light beams in the way () it travels.

The hound followed the tracks of the man in the direction () he had gone.

3) 在科技英语中, 不仅要看介词与有关词语在通常情况下的习惯搭配, 还要结合所述的具体对象来确定“介词 + *which*”结构中应选用什么介词(参见 15.4D)。又如:

When fuels burn, they return once more to the simple materials *out of which* they are made. (燃料燃烧时, 又转变成原来组成它们的简单物质。)

In each of the combustion chambers, there is a perforated flame-tube, *in which* kerosene is sprayed and ignited.

(每个燃烧室有一个带孔的火筒, 煤油喷进去并燃烧起来。)

Molecules must themselves be almost incompressible,

because under any high pressure a limit is reached above which the gas can not be further compressed.

(分子本身几乎是不可压缩的,因为在非常高的压力下,会达到一个极限,气体再也不能压缩了。)

Holding current defines the maximum relay current below which it will no longer remain energized.

(维持电流限定过载继电器电流,低于此值时继电器不再保持激磁状态。)

上述句中的 out of 与 into, above 与 below 都同整个句子的含义密切相关,不可随意调用。这说明在科技翻译中除了注意语言结构,还须结合有关的专业对象,两者缺一不可。

18.5 定语分句的理解与翻译中的两个问题

18.5A 定语分句的多种含义

英语的定语分句有时在含义上和主句并列或者是主句的状语分句。例如:

Then he met Mary, *who invited him to a party.* (= ..., and she invited him to a party.)

Here is John Smith, *who(m) I mentioned the other day.* (= ...; I mentioned him the other day.)

I bought this map, *which helped me a lot.* (... , and it helped me a lot.)

He got lost on Snowdon, *which was enveloped in fog.* (= ... when it was enveloped in fog.)

A sailor *who was fixing a rope* lost balance and stumbled overboard. (A sailor lost balance and stumbled overboard when he was fixing a rope.)

He would be a rash man *who should venture to forecast the result of the event.* (... if he should venture to...)

The young man is clever and quick at his work, for which he is honoured with the title of a model worker
(... so that he is honoured ...

18.5B 合并与分译

英语的定语分句译成汉语时，要注意合并与分译两个基本方法：前者是将原文的分句用汉语的适当词语表示，合并为主句的某个部分，后者是将原文分句套分句的主从复合句分译成单句。例如：

That would be to destroy the very basis upon which our cooperation is consolidated.

那样做就会损坏我们的合作赖以巩固的基础。(译为“的”字结构作定语)

My wife was wearing a hat that looked like a lighthouse,
我妻子戴的帽子象灯塔。(译为主句的谓语)

He took his pajamas and went to the filthy lavatory, where he changed into them since there was no screen in the bedroom.

他拿了睡衣睡裤到那脏不可言的厕所去换上，因为房间里连个屏风都没有。(译为汉语的连动式结构)

Even the pine logs which burned all day in the fireplace couldn't keep the little house warm and dry.

火炉尽管成天烧着松柴，还是不能使小屋子温暖与干燥。(译为状语分句)

... eventually Louisa found a sucked ostrich egg which she liked and Henry bought it for her.

……临了，路易莎发现一枚鸵鸟蛋的空壳，她喜欢，亨利就给她买下了。(译为表示原因的分句)

第十九章 主从复合句(三): 副词性分句

19.1 引言

副词性分句 (ADVERBIAL CLAUSE) 即主从复合句中的状语分句, 由从属连词 *when, as, where, if, though* 等引导, 其作用类似副词, 有时可以用副词替代。例如:

Dr Burns got there *when it was late (= late), as soon as he arrived (= immediately)*, they rang the bell for dinner.

从句法特征和含义上看, 副词性分句可以大体分为三类: 修饰性状语分句 (ADJUNCT CLAUSE), 评注性状语分句 (DISJUNCT CLAUSE) 和连接性状语分句 (CONJUNCT CLAUSE).

19.2 修饰性状语分句

19.2A 修饰性状语分句的修饰功能

1) 修饰主句的动词短语——谓语动词。例如:

The vehicles *started* just as the light changed to green.

The sun *was setting* when we reached the top of Klookman Rock.

Beginners *must do everything* as they have been taught.

2) 修饰主句中的形容词——主语补语。例如:

Mother became *panicky* when the car ran out of gas.

We're sorry that you can't attend the reunion.

3) 修饰主句中的副词——状语。例如:

The car was running so *fast* that it swayed violently.
He was speaking *very quietly*, so that it was difficult to hear what he said.

4) 修饰主句中的非限定动词——不定式, -ing 或 -ed 分词。

例如:

Mr Marcus plans *to fly to Paris* when he has finished his business in Brussels.

I still remember *being told about its past, present and future* as we were shown round the plant.

The potatoes, *fried* until they were crisp, were served piping hot.

5) 修饰整个主句。例如:

When the weather is cool, *we enjoy hiking through the hills.*

Rice can also grow there if water is supplied.

Although it was rather foggy, *they decided to play the match.*

19.2B 修饰性状语分句的句法特征

修饰性状语分句可以置于主句之前, 也可置于主句之后; 前置时应用逗号将分句和主句隔开。例如:

Maize is also called Indian corn *because it was first grown by the American Indians.*

Because maize was first grown by the American Indians, it is also called Indian corn.

在使用中, 还须注意下述几点:

1) 有的从属连词有不同形式, 如 *till*, *until*, *'till* 都是表示 “up to the time of ...” 的意思, 其中 *'till* 为 *until* 的缩略形式, 和 *till* 读音相同。在使用上, *until* 多用于句首, 比较

正式，而 *till* 和 *'till* 习惯上用于句子中间，比较通俗。例如：

Until further information arrives, we cannot take any decisive measures.

Don't go out *till/'till* the rain stops.

2) 有些连接副词出现在句首时引起倒装。例如：

She had no sooner heard the news than she fainted.

— *No sooner* had she heard the news than she fainted.

The doctor had scarcely got into bed before he was called out.

— *Scarcely* had the doctor got into bed before he was called out.

They had hardly started to work when electricity was cut off.

— *Hardly* had they started to work when electricity was cut off.

I had barely begun to talk when he cut in.

— *Barely* had I begun to talk when he cut in.

19.2C 修饰性状语分句的含义类别

1) 时间状语分句，通常由 *after*, *as*, *before*, *once*, *since*, *till*, *until*, *when*, *whenever*, *while*, *as long as*, 等从属连词引导。例如：

After you have read this chapter, let's do some exercises.
You'd better write down the number *before* you forget it.

I'm going to work on this lesson *until* I have learned it.

When one rows a boat, he must keep firmly seated.

除上述连词外，*immediately*, *directly*, *instantly* 等副词也

能引导时间状语分句，表示 *as soon as* 的含义。例如：

I got in touch with him *immediately* I received his letter.

My sister came *directly* she got my message.

Instantly the button is pressed, the engine starts working.

有时，表示时间的“名词组 (+*that*)”也可以引导时间状语分句。例如：

We were there *the week that* it snowed so heavily.

The moment he learned the truth, he changed his mind.

I saw them *the day* I left for Australia.

2) 地点状语分句，通常由 *where, wherever* 引导。例如：

The house stands *where* the London road meets the Brighton road.

Where bees are, there is honey.

A motto of New China's youth is: We will go *wherever* the Party directs us.

3) 方式状语分句，通常由 *as, as if, as though* 引导。例如：

Now try top-spins and back-spins (上旋球与下旋球) *as* I have shown you.

The boy kicked the can *as if* it were a football.

Mary was behaving *as though/as if* she hadn't grown up.

在日常口语中，有时用 *how, the way, like* 等引导状语分句。例如：

You can do it *how* you like.

Joseph doesn't bother about trifles *the way* his sister does.

An iron ball won't contract *like* a rubber one does.

上述句中的 *like* 等于 *in the same way as* 的含义。注意

like 和 as 引导的方式状语有时在含义上有区别。试比较：

Father to son: I must do what I should *as* a father.

The woman spy was playing with the children *like* their mother.

第一句中的父亲是事实，第二句中的母亲不是事实，只是装出象母亲的样子以掩饰自己的本来面目。

4) 程度状语分句，除 14.3 讲到的四种比较句型外，还有 *to such an extent that ...*, *to such a degree that ...* 等引导的程度状语分句。例如：

The temperature dropped *to such a degree that* the lake froze up.

Dissatisfaction and non-confidence rose *to such an extent that* the prime minister had to resign.

由 *so ... that*, *such ... that* 引导的结果状语分句也具有程度状语的含义，有时还可用于替代 *to such an extent* 等引导词语。例如：

Modern science and technology is progressing *to such an extent that* you will find your knowledge somewhat out of date very soon if you don't keep up studying.

→ Modern science and technology is progressing *so rapidly that* you will find ...

5) 原因状语分句，最常见的引导词是 *because*, *since* 和 *as*；此外，*seeing that*, *now that*, *in that*, *on the ground (s) that*, *for the reason that*, *by reason that* 等，也可以用来引导原因状语分句。例如：

I brought an umbrella *because* I thought it might rain.

Since/As/Seeing that/Now that you won't help me, I have to do the cleaning myself.

As it was hot, I took off my coat.

Jane divorced him *on (the) grounds that* he had in fact deserted her and the children.

The man cannot be charged with murder *for the simple reason* that he was not in town when the crime was committed there.

The young girl was exempt (= freed) from punishment *by reason* that she confessed her crime of her own accord.

Henry Garnet didn't let his son go abroad for the spring tournament *for fear* that he would get lost.

注意 *because* 比 *since*, *as* 的语义都要强, 在回答以 *why* 开头的疑问句和强调原因的 IT 句型中, 都要用以 *because* 引导的分句。例如:

{ — Why were you absent yesterday?
— *Because* I was ill.

It was *because* he was ill that he didn't go to the party.
此外, 还要注意 *because* 与 *for* 的区别(见16.5)。

6) 结果状语分句, 由 *so ... that*, *such ... that*, *that, so that*; *with the result that* 等引导。其中 *so ... that* 和 *such ... that* 可以互用, 区别在于 *so* 带副词特征, *such* 带限定词特征, 相比之下, *so ... that* 显得十分正式, *such ... that* 比较通俗。
例如:

He is *so* excellent a teacher *that* many schools want to hire him.

He is *such* an excellent teacher *that* many schools want to hire him.

so that 既可以引导目的状语分句, 也可以引导结果状语分

句，两者的区分主要从整句的含义上确定，至于 *so ... that*，则只能引导结果状语。例如：

The room was packed with people *so that* no outsiders might get in. (目的)

The room was packed with people *so that* we couldn't get in. (结果)

The room was *so* packed *that* we couldn't get in. (结果)

7) 目的状语分句，通常由 *so that*, *in order that*, *so*, *lest*, *in case* 等引导，其中以 *so that* 用得最多(参见结果状语分句)。*in order that* 和 *lest* 均用于正式文体，在日常口语及非正式文体中常分别用 *so* 和 *in case* 代替。例如：

We took a short rest *in order that* we could gather strength to reach the summit at one breath.

→ We took a short rest, *so* we could gather strength to reach the summit at one breath.

The president proclaimed martial law *lest* more riots would occur.

— The president proclaimed martial law *in case/for fear that* more riots would occur.

8) 条件状语分句(见11.4)

9) 让步状语分句，主要由 *though*, *although* 引导，也可由 *even if*, *even though*, *granted (that)*, *granting (that)*, *admitting (that)*, *for all that*, *in spite of the fact that*, *despite the fact that*, *regardless of the fact that*, *notwithstanding the fact that* 等词语来引导。例如：

Though they were running out of food and drink, the men were cheerful and confident *that* they would get out of the desert.

Although/Even though the traffic held us up, we got to the airport on time.

Granted that/Granting that/Even supposing that/Even though he can live on his money for the rest of his life, it doesn't mean (that) he is going to do so.

if 和 while 既可以引导让步分句，也可用于引导其他分句，须视不同句子的含义加以区分。例如：

If he was poor, how could he buy such luxuries? (条件句)

If (=Though) he was poor, he was at least honest. (让步句)

While (=Though) I admit that these problems are complicated, I don't agree that they can't be solved.

Please keep quiet *while* (=when) they are reading.

Some people like sports *while* (=whereas) others like music.

在正式文体或文学作品中，为了强调让步含义，可用 *as* 引导一种倒装的状态分句：将分句的补语或状语置于句首。这种句型在含义上相当于 *even though* 等引导的分句。例如：

Rich as he is, I don't envy him.

→ I don't envy him, *even though* he is rich.

→ *However rich he may be*, I don't envy him.

→ *No matter how rich he is*, I don't envy him.

Fast as the Hare could run (=Though the Hare could run fast), it was beaten by the Tortoise in the race.

此外，还有一些句型也能表示让步概念。例如：

Keep calm, *whatever* (=no matter what) happens.

Wherever (=no matter where) he may be, he must be

found.

Come what may (= Whatever may happen), I will stick it out.

Be he white or black (= Whether he is a White man or a Black man, he is to enjoy equal rights given by the law.

World champion he is (= Though he is a world champion), he met with challenges once and again these years.

As arrogant as he is (= Arrogant as he is/Though he is arrogant), that fellow is not without merits.

Unfortunately, *where one should expect gratitude* (= though one should ...), he often finds just the opposite — ingratitude!

I failed to keep the trees alive, *and I had watered them regularly, too.* (= ... though I had watered them regularly.

It isn't unusual in history that many people *who had few advantages in their youth* were tempered in life and turned out to be among the talent (ed). (= ... many people, though they had few advantages in their youth, were ...)

19.3 评注性状语分句

19.3A 含义与句法特征

评注性状语分句同前面 12.5B 讲到的评注性状语一样，它不是修饰某个句子成分，而是对全句进行说明或解释，表示说话人的看法或态度等。它与主句的结构关系比较松散，在句中的位置比较灵活，可能出现在句首、句中或句末，并通常要用逗号与主句隔开，因此有的语法书把它叫做“分离性状语”(DISJUNCT)，

也有的归入“插入语”(PARENTHESIS)。例如:

As you probably know, the Smiths are going to Europe.

— *The Smiths, as you probably know, are going to Europe.*

— *The Smiths are going to Europe, as you probably know.*

19.3B 评注性分句的类别

1) 结构上类似主句, 如 *I admit, I believe, I hope, I guess, I think, I suppose, I wonder; you see, you know; they tell me, they say; who knows, God knows: one hears; it seems (to me), it is claimed; I am pleased to say, I'm sorry to say, I'm afraid, I'm sure, etc.* 有时还采用一般疑问句的形式, 如 “*do you know?*” 以上都用来表示说话人的某种看法或口气。例如:

It's quite a good shopping centre, I believe, — one of the best in this city.

The trees there, it is said, are mostly over 1000 years old and more than 30 feet high.

The acrobatic show was fantastic, don't you think?

注意评注性分句与带宾语分句的主句之间的不同:

I suppose, the position was about 30 miles from land or somewhere in the Bay of Biscay. (评注性状语置句首)

I suppose the position was about 30 miles from land or somewhere in the Bay of Biscay. (主句、与从句间无逗号相隔)

2) 结构上类似 *as* 或 *if* 引导的状语分句, 实际上只是表示说话人的一种口气, 如 *as you know, if you don't mind, if I may say so* 等等, 可以置于句首、句中或句末。例如:

Our difference, as I see it is one of method, not one of

principle.

As it happens, we probably won't have all that much time for a holiday, though.

I'd really rather not go, *if you don't mind*.

19.4 连接性状语分句

19.4A 连接性状语分句的句法功能

连接性状语分句即以分句形式起连接性状语的句法作用(参见 12.5 B), 有的语法将这类分句也归入插入语。例如:

The car was running out of fuel; and *what's more serious*, there was little food left.

Professor Eugene is too busy to go over your essay, and *what's more*, he's feeling unwell today.

The 39-year-old "native expert" had bred a number of fine crop seeds; *what was more remarkable*, he succeeded not long ago in breeding a short-stemmed, high yield variety of corn after 13 years and some 85,000 attempts.

We call them non-finite clauses, *that is to say*, these non-finite verb forms are equivalent to a clause in meaning and function.

19.4B 连接性状语与“过渡词语”

在一些论写作的书籍中, 作连接性状语的词语称为“过渡性词语”(TRANSITION WORDS & PHRASES), 它们在句中既不用于修饰, 也不表示评注, 而是用来达到承上启下或前后贯穿的目的。从含义上看, 这类词语可以大体上分为以下十类:

一是表示先后次序者, 如 *first (ly)*, *first of all*, *next*, *second (ly)*, *third (ly)*, ... *last*, *finally* 等;

二是表示强调或补充等含义者, 如 *besides*, *in addition*,

moreover, furthermore, also, indeed, even more important, by the way 等;

三是表示转折、对比含义者, 如 *instead, on the contrary, in contrast, by comparison, on the other hand* 等;

四是表示列举者, 如 *for example, for instance, that is, such as, specifically, considering as an illustration, as an example, namely* 等;

五是表示因果关系者, 如 *thus, so, then, as a result, therefore, hence, accordingly, consequently* 等;

六是表示时间先后者, 如 *then, later, once, subsequently, meanwhile, meantime, finally* 等;

七是表示等同含义者, 如 *equally, likewise, similarly, in the same way* 等;

八是表示让步含义者, 如 *anyhow, anyway, however, still, nevertheless, yet, in any case, at any rate, inspite of that, after all* 等;

九是表示推论, 如: *else, otherwise, then, in that case, therefore, so* 等;

十是表示概括、总结含义者, 如 *then, (all) in all, thus, in short, in a word, in conclusion, in summary, to sum up, on the whole* 等。

下述句子或段落中的斜体部分均为连接性状语:

I don't want to buy that house, *for the price is too high;*
and moreover, its environment isn't at all satisfactory.

Mountain torrents damages the railway line; *consequently/*
therefore/and so we had to go there by helicopter.

To be effective, an expository essay (说明文) must meet certain requirements. *First,* it must discuss one topic

only:

All thoughts and expressions should centre on the topic. *Secondly*, it must say all its reader needs to know about it.

That is, all important points must be touched upon, and *on the other hand*, don't hesitate to cross out any unnecessary words, sentences, or even paragraphs. *Thirdly*, it must adopt an order easy to follow; and *finally*, it must hold together. *In a word*, it must have unity, completeness, order, and coherence.



第二十章 非限定动词与非限定分句(一)

——词性特征及句法作用

20.1 引言

不定式 (INFINITIVE), -ING 分词 (-ING PARTICIPLE) 和 -ED 分词 (-ED PARTICIPLE) 统称为“非限定动词” (NON-FINITE VERBS)。其中 -ING 分词在有的语法书里分为“现在分词”和“动名词”, -ED 分词也叫“过去分词”。这类动词形式在句中不受主语的人称和数的制约, 也无确定的现在时或过去时词形变化, 因而称为“非限定”动词。非限定动词具有动词、名词、形容词、副词等多重词性, 它们本身有时能带宾语、修饰语等, 构成非限定动词结构。它们有时和助动词相结合构成进行体、完成体或被动结构, 在句中作谓语, 此外, 还可以单独在句中担任主语、宾语、补语、定语、状语等成分。

20.2 非限定动词的多重词性

20.2A 非限定动词的动词特征

1) 可与 *not* 连用构成否定形式。例如: *to do — not to do, going — not going, covered — not covered, etc.*

2) 可以带有状语、补语或宾语。例如: *to speak fluently, to feel happy, to smoke a cigar; jumping through the rings, getting late, balancing a jar; (to be) covered with snow, (to be) left open, etc.*

3) 不定式和 -ING 分词可以有进行体和完成体, 如果及物

时还可以变被动结构 (-ED 分词没有这些变化)。例如: to do — to be done, to be doing, to have done, to have been done, to have been doing; doing, being done, having done, having been done, having been doing, etc.

20.2B 非限定动词的名词、形容词、副词特征

1) 在句中起名词短语的作用。例如:

Would you mind my *switching* on the fan? (作动词的宾语)

To see is *to believe*. (作主语及补语)

Special care was taken of *the wounded* and *the diseased*.

(作介词宾语)

2) 在句中用作形容词性修饰语。例如:

The young mother is looking after the *sleeping* baby.

The satirist jeered at a "meeting fan", who always had meetings *to attend*.

A *learned* man refers to one who has much knowledge.

3) 在句中用作副词性修饰语。例如:

His return (from Taiwan) was a joy to his 82-year-old father who said, "I'm lucky *to have lived* long enough to see you back, son!"

Standing on the balcony, you can have a bird's-eye view of the city.

Painted red, the corridor looks graceful.

Harvey was *disappointed to have failed*.

20.3 不定式的句法作用

20.3A 作主语

1) 不定式往往带有宾语或状语等构成不定式结构,不定式结构可以担任句中的主语。当不定式结构比较简短时,可以直接置

于句首，否则倾向于采用先行词 *it*，而把不定式结构后置。例如：

To read rhymes is interesting for pupils who begin to learn reading.

As Galileo put it, "*Freely to question and freely to answer*" must be the aim of all men of science.

To know the main facts is by no means sufficient.

— It is by no means sufficient to know the main facts.

To remember to turn off the electricity is important.

— It is important to remember to turn off the electricity.

如果句中的谓语动词不是 *be*，应用 *it* 结构。例如：

It took us five hours to get there.

It requires diligence to learn a foreign language.

2) 在疑问句或感叹句中，均应采用不定式后置的句子形式。

例如：

Isn't *it* a good idea *to open a bank account*?

How long did *it* take you *to get there*?

What a joy *it* was *to read Keats*!

How exciting *it* was *to fight a shark*!

20.33 作主语补语

My idea is *to climb the mountain from the north*.

What I would suggest is *to have another try*.

To know everything is *to know nothing*.

To mention the wolf's name is *to see the same*.

主语中如果含有动词 *DO* 的某种形式，那么，后面作补语的不定式通常省去 *to*。例如：

The only thing I could *do* was *go on by myself*.

All she seems *to do* is *gossip with her neighbours*.

The best (way) to do now is *wait and see*.

What she did was *put* a little sugar into the dish.

What this chap'll do is *spoil* the whole thing.

在由 *what* 引导的主语分句中，如果谓语动词部分的 DO 是完成体形式，后面的补语也可以用 -ED 分词表示；如果 DO 是进行体，则补语应当用 -ING 分词。例如：

What he's *done* is (to) *spoil/spoilt* the whole thing.

What he *is doing* is *making* the problem more complicated.

20.3C 作宾语

1) 动词 + 带 *to* 的不定式结构

You must learn *to creep* before you walk.

They attempted *to justify* their behavior.

Don't teach your grandmother *to suck eggs*.

He decided *not to tell* his friend about the accident.

cf: He didn't decide *to tell* his friend ...

动词 *afford* 通常要与 *can*, *can't*, *could* 或 *couldn't* 连用：

He *can/can't afford to pay* for it. (也可用 *paying ...*)

动词 *bear*, *bother*, *stand* 等通常以否定或疑问形式出现：

I *can't bear to see* children unhappy.

He *didn't bother to wait* for us.

Can you stand to have your teeth drilled?

除不定式作宾语外，这类动词也可用动名词或名词作宾语：

I *can't bear sleeping in a cold bed/such behavior*.

2) 动词 + 疑问词 (*why* 除外) + 带 *to* 的不定式结构

I don't know *what to do/how to answer it/where to stop/who(m) to ask/when to start*.

She hasn't decided *whether to buy it or not/which to*

choose/how to reply/where to stay/what to talk about.

He knows much who knows *how to hold* his tongue.

Ask the policeman *where to park* the car, will you?

如果作宾语用的不定式有补语，就得先用先行词 *it*，而将不定式放到补语后面去。例如：

He thought *it* wrong *not to tell* her about the truth.

Do you consider *it* wise *to interfere*?

She counts *it* a great honour *to work* for her motherland.

I'll make *it* my business *to help* you in your studies.

3) 介词 *except, but* 可带不定式作宾语

He seldom comes *except to* have something urgent.

Father will do anything *except* sell these books.

There was no alternative for the weak *but to* be bullied.

Her daughter can do anything *but* dance.

上述句中凡用不带 *to* 的不定式也是由于前面有 *Do* 的缘故(参见 20.3B)。另外，“疑问词 + 不定式”结构作宾语，则不只限于 *except* 或 *but* 等极少数介词。例如：

No arrangement has been informed *except when to start*.

The problem of *how to get* the grand piano through the doorway baffled the workmen.

Their doubt lies in *where to obtain* such a big sum of money.

20.3D 作宾语补语

1) 用带 *to* 的不定式结构作宾补：

The king asked her *to finish* the story which she had broken off halfway the previous night.

The maths teacher expects us *to turn in* our homework tomorrow.

The regulation requires me *to be back* by 10 p.m.

The tickets entitled us *to sit* in the first row.

在动词 *consider, declare, find, prove, think* 等的宾补中, *to be* 往往可以省去。例如:

We consider him (*to be*) reliable.

The court has declared him (*to be*) innocent.

Not long afterwards, people found him (*to be*) a tyrant.

2) 用不带 *to* 的不定式结构作宾补:

Did you see the man *break* the window?

I heard her *sing* five folk songs, which were all beautiful.

They watched the linotype *complete* a line of letters for printing.

I felt something *crawl* up my arm, and it turned out to be an ant.

Do to others as you would have them *do* to you.

带上述这类宾补的动词本身多能转为被动结构 (*notice, watch, have* 等例外), 同时后边的宾补应转为带 *to* 的不定式。例如:

The boss made the children *work* long hours.

— The children *were made to work* long hours.

Someone saw the man *kill* two birds with one shot.

— The man *was seen to kill* two birds with one shot.

20.3E 作定语

Have you anything *to say*?

I've got several letters *to reply* today.

I had no wish *to quarrel* with him.

They will make an attempt *to beat* the Champion team tonight.

上述不定式与先行词之间有时在含义上是主谓关系或动宾关系；有时不定式后面要带适当的介词帮助，表示与先行词的动宾关系(先行词为 *place* 时可不用介词)。例如：

There were 24 fashion models *to appear* (=that appeared) at the exhibition.

The nurse has five children *to look after*.

Could you give me a bench *to sit on*?

cf: The room was so packed that I could hardly find a place *to sit*.

20.3F 作状语

1) 表示目的

Do not rob Peter *to pay Paul*.

He used to go early in the morning *to avoid traffic*.

When the boys walk home from school, they stop *to look into* every toy shop window.

A Woodman came into a forest *to ask* the Trees to give him a handle for his Ax.

用于这类状语的不定式前面可以加上 *so as* 或 *in order* 以加强“目的”含义；在下面的例句中必须加 *so as* 或 *in order*，否则不定式结构会被误解为宾语：

Let's begin *so as* to finish earlier.

She asked *in order* to defend her reputation.

另外，在“not + 不定式”前面通常都要加 *so as* 或 *in order*。例如：

We crossed over a field, nearly dropping ourselves in the swamp, and permanently stooping *so as not to be* sighted.

She stepped across the room very quietly *in order not to*

disturb the sleeping children.

当表示“目的”的不定式置于句首时，只可以加 *in order*，不能加 *so as*。例如：

Mrs Jones kept asking about the party *so as/in order to* be invited.

— *In order to* be invited, she kept asking about the party.

2) 表示结果

表示“结果”的不定式结构和表示“目的”的形式相似，须根据句子含义判断。试比较：

She arrived late to find the train had gone. (=He arrived late and found the train had gone)

She arrived late to avoid meeting Robert. (=She arrived late in order to avoid meeting Robert.)

表示“结果”的不定式结构常与 *so/such ... as to*, *enough to*, *too ... to* 等搭配。例如：

Would you be *so kind as to* lend me two-pence?

He is *such a fool as to* think that his idle chatter can be of interest to all others.

This sea fish looks almost good *enough to* eat.

It'll be *too late for there to be* any taxi. (=It'll be so late that there won't be any taxi.)

It's *too (=so) kind of you to have told me that.* (=You are very kind to have told me that.)

3) 表示原因或条件

表示“原因”的不定式结构和表示“目的”或“结果”等的形式相似，区别在于词汇意义上不同。试比较：

She wept *to hear the news.* (原因)

She wept *to obtain sympathy.* (目的)

She wept *to become all tears*. (结果、状态)

表示“条件”的不定式通常置于句首。例如：

To view the matter objectively, you'll soon be able to find an appropriate answer. (=If you view the matter objectively, you'll ...)

To go on a trip to China, you would become 10 years younger. (=If you were to go on a trip to China, you ...)

One would be a brute *not to feel* (=if he should not feel) for the sufferings of the black people in South Africa.

20.4 -ING 分词的句法作用

20.4A 作主语

Learning is the eye of the mind.

Teaching others teaches yourself.

Cycling to the sea is a joy indeed.

March was content not to talk, but Banford could not keep still. Merely *listening* to the wind in the pines outside, or the drip of water, was too much for her.

-ING 分词作主语也可以用先行词 *it* 句型：

It is enjoyable *having* friends from afar.

It is no good *feeling* self-satisfied over your first success.

-ING 分词和不定式相比较，前者倾向于指一般的情况或普遍的事实，后者的含义比较具体，往往指某一特定场合的动作。

试比较：

It's no use, I fear, *to ask* Tod.

It's no use *crying* over spilt milk.

上句 to ask Tod 是指具体动作, 可以理解为说明 Tod 的性格和处境, 使他不可能接受请求或邀请, 因而你去找他也无济于事。下句是格言, 意为普遍适用, 所以用 -ING 分词形式。另外, 注意在与 a good idea, my plan, important, necessary, essential 等搭配的句型中通常用不定式。例如:

It's a good idea to meet them at Yugoslavia.

It's important to know more about modern science and technology.

20.4B 作宾语

Retirees here prefer doing social work to staying idle.

I'm sure they'll enjoy listening to light music.

I got to thinking a good deal about the situation.

A man becomes learned by asking questions.

All the money the young Wright brothers made from selling and mending bicycles was used in trying to build aeroplanes.

20.4C 作补语

1) 主语补语

Speaking without thinking is shooting without aiming.

There is nothing frightening about difficulties. The only thing to worry about is being afraid of them.

2) 宾语补语

They are watching the new-married couples dancing.

I would if you could get the clock going again.

20.4D 作名词修饰语

1) 前置名词修饰语

有时 -ING 分词表示它所修饰的名词所做的动作, 朗读时主重音落在后面的名词上。例如: a sleeping 'baby, Sleeping 'Beau-

ty, Sleeping vol'cano, boiling 'water, setting 'sun, smoking 'dish, easy-going 'man, etc. (这类 -ING 分词也称现在分词)

有时 -ING 分词表示的不是被修饰名词的动作,而是其性能、用途,朗读时主重音落在 -ING 分词上。例如: 'sleeping draught, 'sleeping-wear, 'sleeping car, 'typing paper, 'washing machine, 'carving knife, etc. (这类 -ING 分词亦称动名词。)

2) 后置名词修饰语

They are trying to catch the train *leaving* at 13:24 for Mosco.

Will the people *sitting* at the back please move forward.

All articles *belonging* to college must be returned within the semester.

A countryman *returning* home one winter's day found a snake by the hedge-side, half dead with cold,

20.4E 作状语

1) 用于表示时间、原因、目的、条件、让步、结果、行为方式、伴随情况等意义。例如:

Hearing the air-raid alarm, the whole city instantly turned into confusion. (Meaning: The moment the air-raid alarm was heard, ...)

Not *having* the money to hire workers to help him, Matzlinger continued his work alone, filing, forging, machining, and fitting parts for the machine by himself. (Meaning: As he didn't have the money to hire workers to help him, ...)

"Did you ever write to Sir Charles, *letting* him be aware of your intentions?" (Meaning: ... in order to let him be aware of your intentions?)

Granting the achievements to be great, we have no reason to be conceited. (Meaning: Even if the achievements are great, ...)

Our car was caught in a traffic jam, thus *causing* the delay. (Meaning: ... and that caused the delay.)

Suddenly the house door opens and Francis comes *running* through the rain.

It was ten o'clock, and she was still asleep. The sun came through the window, *carrying* street noises on its beams ...

2) 少数 -ING 分词有时直接用作副词去修饰形容词, 表示强调含义, 相当于 *exceedingly, extremely, to an unusual degree* 一类含义。例如:

It is *freezing/biting/piercing* cold today.

That day was *burning/steaming/blazing/scorching* hot.

That man was *raging/raving* mad!

The children got *soaking* wet in the rain.

The scared soldiers tried to turn the forward position *dazzling* white by illuminating projectiles.

20.5 -ED 分词的句法作用

20.5A 作主语或宾语

The disabled enjoy a great deal of attention.

It is the duty of us medical workers to rescue *the dying* and heal *the wounded*.

(参见13.3 C)

20.5B 作补语

1) 作主语补语

The door remains *unlocked*.

She seems *worried* at the rumour.

After the climbing, she felt *exhausted*.

"Time flies," she said. "You're no sooner *come* than you're *gone*."

2) 作宾语补语

I heard much *said* of the extreme difficulty of separating cotton from its seed.

Many readers wished the serial story (to be) *continued*.

When he revisited the mountain village, he found it greatly *changed*.

How often do you have your hair *cut*?

It was terribly windy that day. I had my hat *blown off* while crossing the bridge.

20.5C 作定语

Lost time is never found again.

Spoken English is somewhat different from *written* English.

Although China, as the *said* article indicated, has a long way to go in order to develop a completely spiritual civilization, it most assuredly is on the right track.

A human skeleton *unearthed* last year in Egypt and *dated* at between 60,000 and 80,000 years old, could offer new clues about human evolution.

20.5D 作状语:

Heated, water changes into steam. (Meaning: When/If water is heated, it ...)

Founded in 1915, each 1966 SFWA has given achievement awards for the best stories of the year. (Meaning: Af-

ter it was founded in 1915, ...)

Encouraged by the Spanish resistance, Austria tried to throw off the Napoleonic yoke. (Meaning: As Austria was encouraged by the Spanish resistance, she/it tried to ...)

イ
オ
ン

第二十一章 非限定动词与非限定分句(二)

——搭配与含义

21.1 引言

前一章讲到,非限定动词具有多重词性和多种句法功能,它除了须与助动词配合才能充当谓语动词外,还能单独担任句中主语、宾语、补语、定语、状语等等成分。本章将进一步讨论非限定动词在担任上述句子成分时与主句在含义和结构方面的一些联系。在句中,非限定动词形式上是词语结构,含义上却具有分句的功能,并有自己的逻辑主语,这种逻辑主语和主句的主语或宾语密切相关;另外,非限定动词和主句的谓语动词有种种习惯上的固定搭配,搭配不同会引起意义上的差别。

21.2 非限定分句的逻辑主语

21.2A 以主句的主语作为逻辑主语

I hope *to be able to come*.

→ I hope (that) *I'll be able to come*.

I don't know what *to do*.

→ I don't know what *I should do*.

He has a large family *to support*.

→ He has a large family that *he has to support*.

She was lucky *to find* it.

→ She was lucky because *she found* it.

Do you remember *seeing* this man?

→ Do you remember (that) *you* saw this man?

The people *sitting* in the garden are retired workers.

→ The people *who* are sitting in the garden are retired workers.

Injured in the leg, they couldn't walk further.

→ Because *they* were injured in the leg, they couldn't walk further.

21.2B 以主句中的宾语作为逻辑主语

Most people consider Henry *to be* very trustworthy.

→ Most people consider that *Henry* is very trustworthy.

They think it wrong *to punish* John.

→ They think it wrong that *John* should be punished.

I can't understand him *behaving* that way.

→ I can't understand why *he* has behaved that way.

Suddenly I heard someone *knocking* at the door.

→ Suddenly I heard that *someone* was knocking at the door.

21.2C 引伸出来的逻辑主语

The way *to start* such toy car is to give it a push.

→ The way *you* can start such toy car is to give it a push.

The question of what *to do* next is not yet decided.

→ The question what *we* should do next is not yet decided.

After *using* the brush, put it in its proper place.

→ After *you* have used the brush, put it in its proper place.

Getting down from the bus, my ankle was sprained.

→ While I was getting down from the bus, my ankle was sprained.

She felt herself gently touched on the shoulder; and looking round, her father stood before her.

→ ...; and her father stood before her as she was looking round.

21.3 不定式结构和 -ING 分词结构与动词的搭配

21.3A 与不定式结构搭配的动词

1) 通常与不定式结构搭配的动词有: agree, aim, arrange, ask, attempt, choose, claim, consent, dare, decide, decline, demand, deserve, determine, expect, hope, learn, long, manage, mean, offer, pretend, promise, refuse, threaten, want, wish, etc. 例如:

Finding himself in opposition to the whole family, the man agreed to smoke no more cigarettes.

Roland and Rosa happened to be sitting quite near, but they just pretended not to see each other.

For many years Jonathan Wild managed to bring in a good profit in this sinful way, and when he was caught, people demanded to put him to death.

2) 在与不定式结构搭配的动词中, 有些动词后面直接跟不定式, 有些要先跟宾语再接不定式 (参见 20.3C, 20.3D)。兹将几类主要的搭配情况列表说明如下:

搭配形式	动 词 举 例
V. to. V	afford, aim, agree, apply, arrange, ask, attempt, choose, claim, consent, dare, decide, decline, demand, deserve, determine, expect, hope, learn, long, manage, mean, offer, pretend, promise, refuse, threaten, want, wish, etc.

搭配形式	动 词 举 例
V. V.	make (+do/believe/etc); let (+drop/fall/fly/slip/drive/go/etc); hear (+say/tell of/etc); leave (+go of/loose of/etc); etc.
V. 疑问词 to. V (why 除 外)	decide, find out, forget, inquire, know, learn, remember, see, consider, understand, wonder, etc.
V. 宾语 to. V	advise, allow, ask, beg, cause, drive, encourage, expect, force, get, invite, permit, persuade, remind, teach, tell, trust, urge, want, warn, etc; hate, like, prefer, etc; arrange for, ask for, long for, prepare for, provide for, wait for, wish for, call (up) on, count on, depend (up) on, rely on, etc.
V. 宾语 V	feel, have, hear, let, make, notice, observe, see, watch, etc.

例如:

"I want to leave tonight," said King Charles. "I've decided to go to the West Coast."

I've often heard tell of the wonderful parties she gives, but I've never been invited.

Don't let go (of) the handle. Hold it tight and don't let go.

Could you inform me when to get the passport?

Robert had good voice, and his wife fussed about his singing. She encouraged him to sing in church and she ordered him to sing when they had visitors.

He observed the fish swim, the bird fly, the snake crawl and the leopard leap, which all in turn helped him in

his later inventions.

21.3B 与 -ING 分词结构搭配的动词

通常与 -ING 分词结构搭配的动词有: acknowledge, admit (to), avoid, consider, contemplate, defer, deny, [dislike, escape, evade, facilitate, fancy, favour, finish, forgive, give up, cannot help, include, keep (on), don't mind, miss, postpone, practise, put off, resent, resist, risk, cannot stand, suggest, take to, etc.

You mustn't *delay sending* for the doctor.

To *evade doing* something may mean to *avoid doing* something one should do.

Mrs. Soames had actually *given up wearing* feathers.

Seeing my wry face, Dad *couldn't help laughing*.

Most of the members *insisted on holding* the election as scheduled/the election being held as scheduled.

Uncle has *agreed on staying* longer with us.

Uncle has *agreed on me staying/my staying* longer with him.

21.3C 既能与不定式结构又能与 -ING 分词结构搭配的动词

1) 表示感觉情态的一些动词。如: cannot bear, dread, forget, hate, intend, like, love, neglect, prefer, regret, remember, etc,

Granny preferred *to watch/watching* television at home.

In winter, children love *to play/playing* snow balls in the garden.

I don't mind *living* in the city, but I do regret *selling* the farm.

We regret *to inform* you that you are to be dismissed next week.

这类动词后边,有时也可以先跟宾语再跟非限定动词。例如:
We'd like you(r) to go/going by water.

People simply couldn't bear such beautiful spots to be/
being spoilt.

Did you remember to tell/telling him about it?

(参阅 21.3D 含义剖析)

2) 表示过程的一些动词。如: begin, start, continue, cease, omit, plan, try, understand, etc.

Shall I start to read/reading, Sir?

In spite of her deep sorrow, the staunch woman scientist continued to work/working in her laboratory as if nothing had happened.

3) 有些动词本来与不定式搭配,同时也可以跟介词后与 -ING 形式搭配,含义相同。例如:

The two companies agreed to share/on sharing the profits equally.

In the end she decided to buy/on buying her husband a necktie.

They aimed to integrate/at integrating Chinese and western medicine in curing cancer.

How I am longing to see/for seeing you!

21.3D 关于不定式与 -ING 分词结构的含义剖析

前面 20.4A 曾提到不定式和 -ING 结构都可以作主语,但有时含义上存在差别:不定式倾向于指具体动作,-ING 倾向于指一般情况。当不定式和 -ING 分词与动词搭配的时候,也需要注意它们在含义上的问题。

1) 在某些句子里用不定式或用 -ING 分词,只是为了句式多样化,含义基本一样。例如:

I like *reading* in bed but I don't like *to eat* in bed.

“You can begin *writing* now,” said the teacher; and the children began *to write*

2) 在某些句子里，-ING 指已经发生了的事，而不定式所指的动作尚未发生。例如：

Joe didn't like *giving in*, but it couldn't be helped.

Joe didn't like *to give in* and he fought till the last;

{ — Do you remember *seeing* this man somewhere?

{ — No, I've never seen him.

{ — Did you remember *to phone* Mary?

{ — Sorry, I forgot *to do* it.

{ — Dick, why is your coat in my drawer?

{ — Oh, I've forgotten *putting* it there.

3) 在某些动词短语后面 -ING 分词是指已在进行的动作，而不定式系指某个动作或阶段的开始。例如：

The captain rushed in and shouted to his men: “You stop *talking*, everybody!” (命令他们停止谈话)

When the foreman was away, a few workers stopped *to talk*. (指停止干活而开始谈起话来)

People said they made a fine couple when they married. and many years later people went on *saying* so. (继续讲原来说过的话)

Father told us Mother had gone to hospital, and went on *to say* that Aunty was coming to take care of us. (接着讲另外的内容)

4) 在“see, hear, watch, notice 等动词 + 宾语”后面的 -ING 分词表示当时动作正在进行，不定式 (不带 to) 表示动作已经完成。例如：

The teacher stood there till she saw all the children *cross* the road. (指看着他过完马路)

When I drove there, I saw children *crossing* the road, and so I stopped to wait. (指看见他们正在过马路)

根据上述区别,当描述动作的进行状态时要用 *ing*, 单纯说明某件事实时要用不带 *to* 的不定式结构。例如:

With immense interest they watched the gold fish *swimming*.

I wasn't there at that time, and didn't see the ball *break* the window.

Look at the rain *pouring* down. What a driving rain it is!

The vocalist is listening to the birds *singing*, which will help him improve his mimicry.

I've never heard him *speak* against his friends behind their backs.

5) 在 *need*, *require*, *want* 等动词之后,既可以跟不定式,也可跟 *-ing* 分词。表示被动意义时,不定式的被动结构和 *-ing* 分词的主动形式可以互用。例如:

The door is cracking. It needs *oiling/to be oiled*.

It's quite dirty here. The floor requires *cleaning/to be cleaned*.

Only two small incidents need *mentioning*.

A lot of work wants *doing*. (Let's start right now.)

但注意:当 *need* 等后面的非限定动词不是单独出现而带有其他成分时,则应当用不定式的被动结构表示被动意义。例如:

He needs *to be told* about the truth.

This work wants *to be done* with great care.

6) 其他某些搭配中的含义区分:

If you want a bike, I'll *try to buy* one for you:

(Meaning, make an effort to do something.)

If an ordinary doctor can't help you, why don't you *try going* to a spiritual healer?

(Meaning: experiment with doing ...)

If I take that job, it'll *mean moving* to the north of England.

(Meaning: involve moving.)

I meant to *telephone* you yesterday but I didn't have time to.

(Meaning: intend.)

I *prefer boating to* mountaineering. (-ING.)

He *prefers to go boating rather than* go mountain climbing.

I should prefer to wait here/you not to wait here alone.

21.4 -ED 分词的含义

21.4A -ED 分词的几种基本含义

1) 及物动词的 -ED 分词带有被动意义。例如:

Mary broke a dish. She threw away the *broken* dish.

You can never go wrong by giving a youngster lots of love and kisses *mixed* with discipline.

I'll be waiting in front with my briefcase all *loaded*.

与不定式或 -ING 分词相比较, -ED 分词的被动含义更为明显。例如:

The picture was painted by a very good friend of mine whom I'd love to have you *meet* sometime.

I won't have you *saying* such things about my sister.

I heard much *said* of the Lung Chin Tea of Hangchow, which is fragrant in smell, bright in colour and full in taste.

2) 不及物动词的 -ED 分词不带被动含义, 只是表示状态。

例如:

Many people find her *advanced* ideas difficult to accept. According to The Random House (Dictionary), a *gone* feeling means in the state of being "weak and faint".

3) 一般说来, -ED 分词都带有某种“完成”含义, 或表示较短动作造成的结果, 或说明较长习惯形成的事实等。例如:

Mr Rudolph, a jobbing gardener, rose early and cleaned out the *fallen* leaves. (= leaves that had fallen)

Here's a fresh flower. Take away the *faded* one (= flower that has faded).

Edric has been writing an essay on *written* language and *spoken* language. (= referring to language that has been used chiefly in writing and speaking.)

Energy *stored* in fuel is chemical energy. (=referring to energy that has stored in fuel.)

与不定式或 -ING 分词比较, -ED 分词的完成含义更为明显。例如:

At daybreak, the tourists were already on the top waiting for the sun *to rise*.

The sun is rising. I like to watch the *rising* sun.

The late comers only saw the *risen* sun.

21.4B 作定语用的 -DE 分词与作补语用的 -ED 分词

1) 在 4.2C 中曾介绍过不规则 -ED 分词可能有两种拼写形式, 并且有时用法也不相同。少数古英语遗留下来, 现在用作形

容词的 -ED 分词, 有的通常用作定语, 有的通常用作补语。例如:

用作定语的有:

bounded

drunken

molten

shrunken

sunken

用作补语的有:

bound

drunk

melted

shrunken

sunk

这类 -ED 分词虽为数不多, 但在含义与使用上比较特别。例如其中 *molten* 和 *melted* 的原形动词 *melt*, *molten* 是古老的形式, 有的词典完全把它列入“形容词”条, 并注明通常用于修饰冷却后变得很硬的物质。如 *molten steel*, (熔化的钢, 钢水), *a molten image of god*, (铸造的神像)。 *melt* 则既可用于作定语, 也能用作表语。例如:

That's melted/molten lead.

There isn't any snow even on the north slope. It's all melted. (Not: molten.)

2) 用于形容词的 -ED 分词, 有的拼法相同, 但读音不一样。例如:

The record breaker is aged only ten (years). (作表语时读 /eidʒd/)

Young Pioneers often go to help the aged windows or widowers with their housework. (作定语时读 /'eidʒid/)

The Blessed Virgin refers to the mother of Jesus (圣母) while the *Blessed Sacrament* to Holy Communion (圣餐) (作定语时读 /'blesid/)

May you always be blessed with good health! (作表语时读 /blest/)

21.4C 带 -ED 分词作宾语补语的几类动词

1) see, hear, watch, think, feel 等表示心理状态的动词, 带 -ED 作宾补说明客观情况。例如:

As she got to Broadway, New York's most famous thoroughfare, she felt her eyes *dazzled* by neon lights. Not long afterwards, he heard his own voice *sent* back and was much surprised as he had no idea of echo.

前面 20.3D 和 21.4 A 都讲到非限定动词作宾补的用法及意义, 这里再举例作一比较:

Clifton was the witness of the tragedy. He saw the ship *sink*.

He saw the ship *sinking* but could do nothing.

The damage done to the Egypt was unusually severe, and we found her *sunk* in twenty minutes.

上述例句中用 -ING 分词作宾补时表示正在发生的事, 用不定式 (不带 to) 是说明沉船的整个过程 (包括开始到结束), 而 -ED 分词则是指 (客观存在的) 既成事实。

2) make, get, have, keep 等带“致使”含义的动词, 用 -ED 分解作宾补以表示目的或结果。例如:

The stranger was trying hard to make himself *understood*; but as he couldn't speak the native dialect, his efforts produced little results.

Jane got her bad tooth *pulled out* at the dentist's yesterday afternoon.

在“have + 宾语 + -ED 分词”这一结构中, have 可能有三种不同的含义。试比较:

I have only a few pounds *left* for next month.

(表示“剩余”)

She had her arm *broken* in an accident.

(表示“遭受”，指意外的事)

In the end, she had her hair *done* in town.

(表示“让”、“使”等有意识的行为)

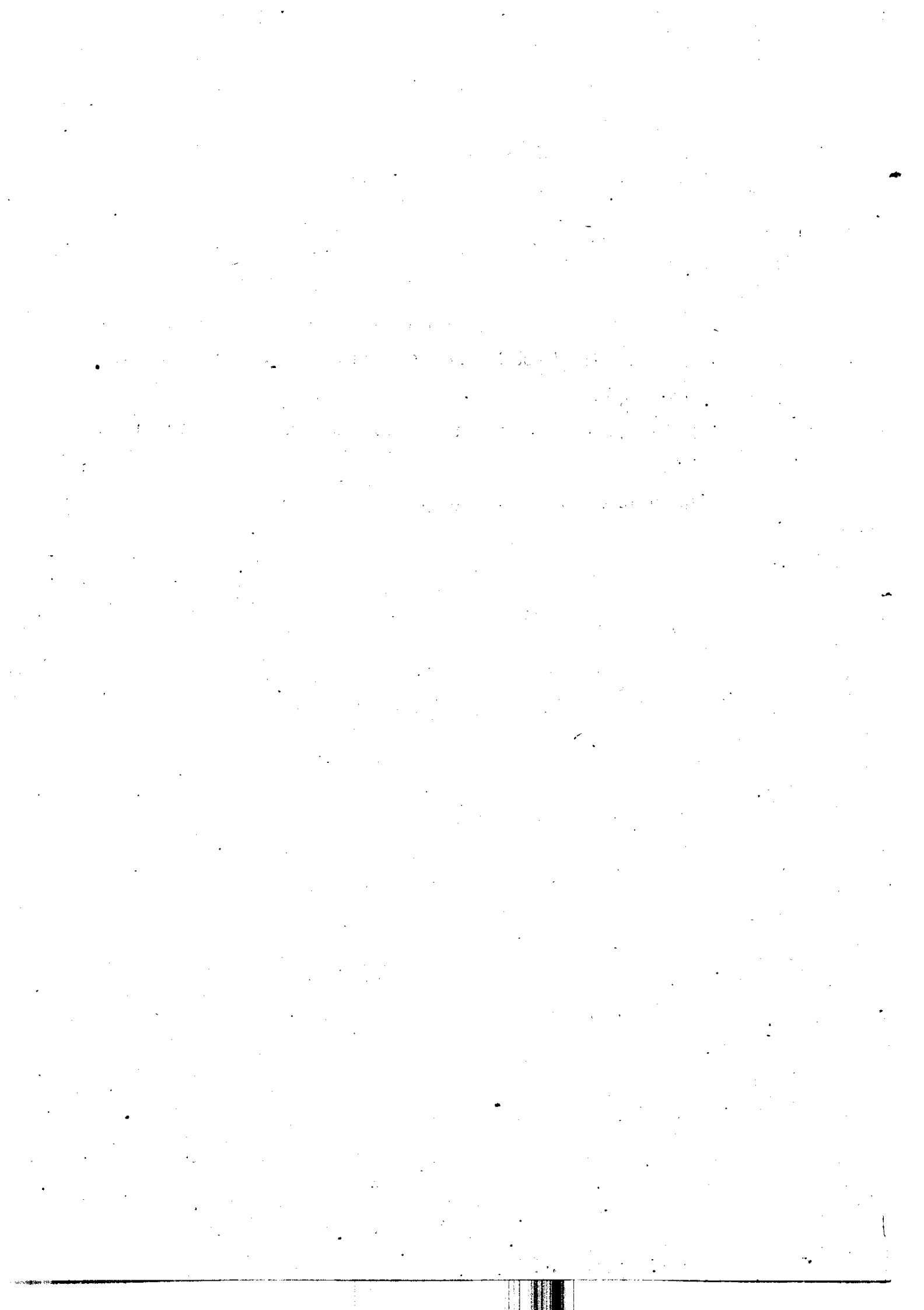
3) like, want, wish, order 等用 -ED 分词作宾补表示希望、要求、命令等含义。例如:

I don't want any of you (to be) *involved* in the scandal.

Will you like such questions (to be) *discussed* at the meeting?

The censors, finding the film unhealthy, ordered it *banned*.

The public wished the play (to be) *restaged*.



第二十二章 非限定动词与非限定分句(三)

——句型转换

22.1 引言

非限定动词结构也称为非限定分句 (NON-FINITE CLAUSE), 因为它在含义与作用上都相当于一个分句: 它有逻辑主语, 能根据主句体现出自己的时态含义, 并能在一定的条件下转化为限定分句 (FINITE CLAUSE)。本章着重讨论非限定分句转化为限定分句的有关问题。

22.2 非限定分句转换为名词性分句

22.2A 当非限定分句用作主语或复合主语的一部分时

1) 转化为主语分句。例如:

When and where to hold the next tournament is still to be discussed.

→ *When and where we shall hold the next tournament is ...*

Joe is thought to be having a good time.

→ *It is thought that Joe is having a good time.*

Father's putting on weight makes us very much worried.

→ *It makes us very much worried that Father is putting on weight.*

不定式或 -ING 分词转换为以 IT 作形式主语的句型时, 要注意“时体呼应”。这里试以不定式为例列表说明一般的呼应规

则:

主 句	非 限 定 分 句	限 定 分 句
一般现在时 (如主句为过 去或将来时, 则限定分句 的“时”相应 前后推移。)	非限定动词一般式 (如 to do)	一般现在时或将来时
	非限定动词进行体 (如 to be doing)	现在或将来进行体
	非限定动词完成体 (如 to have done)	过去时或现在完成体
	非限定动词完成进行体 (如 to have been doing)	过去进行体或现在完成进行体

例如:

James is thought *to be* rather stubborn.

→ It is thought that James *is* rather stubborn.

She is expected *to come*.

→ It is expected that she *will come*.

A trade fair is known *to be going on* there.

→ It is known that a trade fair *is going on* there.

He is believed *to have passed* the exam.

→ It is believed that he *passed/has passed* the exam.

Mr Samson is rumoured *to have put* into jail.

→ It is rumoured that Mr Samson *has been put* into jail.

Oliver is reported *to have been driving* without a license.

→ It is reported that Oliver *was driving* without a license.

A car bomb was reported yesterday *to have exploded* near the U. S. Consulate.

→ It was reported yesterday that a car bomb *had exploded* near the U. S. Consulate.

Mr Louis will soon be announced *to be* Chairman of the

Board.

→ It'll soon be announced that Mr Louis is Chairman of the Board.

2) 转换为主语的同位语分句。例如:

Scarcely had I finished reading the letter, my sister's *falling* ill already turned Mother into grief.

→ ..., the news *that my sister had fallen* ill already turned Mother into grief.

Your being late should be explained to the woman who is chairing the meeting today.

→ The reason *why you are late* should be explained ...

22.2B 当非限定分句作宾语或复合宾语的一部分时

1) (宾语)转换为宾语分句。例如:

Do you know *how to fill in this form*?

→ Do you know *how you should fill in this form*?

I hope to get *there next Tuesday*.

→ I hope *that I can get there next Tuesday*.

I still remember *seeing her somewhere*.

→ I still remember *that I have seen/saw her somewhere*.

Her success lies in *(her) persevering in her studies*.

→ Her success lies in *that she has been persevering in her studies*.

2) (宾语)转换为宾语的同位语分句。例如:

They finally agreed to *share/on sharing* the remuneration (=pay).

— They finally came to an agreement *that they would share the remuneration*.

Have you heard the rumour of *her deciding to resign*?

→ Have you heard the rumour *that she decided to resign?*

3) (复合宾语)转换为宾语分句, 例如:

We consider *him to be a man of many gifts.*

→ We consider *that he is a man of many gifts.*

I'm so happy to hear *your plan working out successfully.*

→ I'm so happy to hear *that your plan is working out so successfully.*

I find *some of the expressions (to be) overused.*

→ I find *that some of the expressions are overused.*

She expects *every one to be present at the party.*

→ She expects *that every one will be present at the party.*

22.2C 当非限定分词为名词性补语时

1) 主语补语转化为主语补语分句。例如:

My idea is *to stop for a break here.*

→ My idea is *that we stop for a break here.*

Her question is *where to get her visa stamped.*

→ Her question is *where she can get her visa stamped.*

Her work is *teaching physics and chemistry.*

→ Her work is *that she teaches physics and chemistry.*

22.3 非限定分句转换为形容词性分句

22.3A 转换为限制性定语分句

The next train *to arrive* is from York.

→ The next train *which is to arrive* is from York.

Will anyone *wanting a ticket* please apply to me.

→ Will anyone *who wants a ticket* please apply to me.

Cars *parked illegally* were removed.

→ Cars *that were parked illegally* were removed.

22.3A 转换为非限制性定语分句。例如:

The palace, *burnt down in 1845*, was never rebuilt.

→ The palace, *which was burnt down in 1845*, was never rebuilt.

This scholar, *to be seen daily in the British Museum*, has devoted his life to the history of science.

→ This scholar, *who can be seen daily in the British Museum*, has devoted his life to the history of science.

The fine crops of wheat, *waving gently over the fields*, promises another good harvest.

→ The fine crops of wheat, *which are waving gently over the fields*, promises another good harvest.

22.4 非限定分句转换为副词性分句

22.4A 转换为时间或条件状语分句

1) 表示时间

Going down town, I met a friend who I hadn't seen for a dozen of years.

→ *While* I was going down, I met ...

He wrote his greatest novel *while working* as an ordinary seaman.

→ ... *while* he was working as an ordinary seaman.

Before settling down in the U. S., he had been in Europe for many years.

Before he settled down in the U. S., ...

In trying to open the old safe, he broke the key.

→ *As/When/While* he was trying to open the old safe, ...

We all grieved *to hear of his death*.

→ We all grieved *when* we (had) heard of his death.

2) 表示条件:

Keeping it up, you will succeed.

→ *If you keep it up. ...*

To hear him speak, you would think that he was a know-all.

→ *If you should hear him speak. ...*

One cannot accomplish anything without venturing.

→ *One cannot accomplish anything if one didn't venture.*

Even if invited, I won't go.

→ *Even if I'm invited, I won't go.*

3) 表示时间或者条件:

When/If heated, water changes into steam.

→ *When/If water is heated, it (water) changes into steam.*

United, we stand; divided, we fall.

→ *When/If we are united, we stand; when/if we are divided, we fall.*

22.4B 转换原因或结果状语分句

1) 以表示喜怒哀乐的形容词 + 不定式结构表示因果关系, 形容词表示主语对不定式所示动作发生后产生的情感。例如:

Sidney was delighted to receive the letter.

→ *Sidney was delighted as he received the letter.*

We are sorry not to be at the party that day.

→ *We are sorry that/because we were not at the party that day.*

Henry was happy to be accepted a union member.

→ *Henry was happy because/as he was accepted a union member.*

Lucia was worried *to find* her husband jobless again.

→ Lucia was worried *because/as* she found her husband jobless again.

2) 以表示运气或性格作风好坏的形容词 + 不定式结构表示因果关系, 形容词表示说话人对不定式所示动作的评论或看法。

例如:

Gilbert was lucky *to find* a job soon after he graduated from university.

→ Gilbert was lucky *because* he found a job soon after he graduated from university.

He was fortunate *to escape* being seriously injured in the car accident.

→ He was fortunate *because* he escaped being seriously injured in the car accident.

She was unlucky *to miss* the train.

→ She was unlucky *because* she (had) missed the train.

The boy was considered rather thoughtful *to remember* to get coffee ready before we returned.

→ The boy was considered rather thoughtful *because* he remembered to get coffee ready before we returned.

注意有些形容词 + 不定式结构并不表示因果关系, 有时也不能转换为限定分句, 其含义要作具体分析。例如:

Well, since he is reluctant *to go*, let him stay here.

(表示主语 he 对 *to go* 的态度)

I'm quite willing for your brother *to come* with me.

(表示主语 I 对 *your brother to come with me* 的态度)

James is unlikely *to keep* the record.

→ It is unlikely *that* James will keep the record.

He is foolish *to meet* her again.

→ It is foolish *of him to meet* her again.

Nancy is easy *to teach*.

To teach Nancy is easy./It is easy (for you) to teach Nancy.

This coffee is bitter *to taste*.

→ Meaning: The coffee is a little too bitter. Some more sugar is needed.

The tributary is narrow *to sail up*.

→ The tributary is narrow, so it's difficult for ships to sail up.

cf: The brook (=small stream) is *too narrow to sail up*.

→ The brook is so narrow *that* ships cannot sail up.

These clothes are easy *to wash*.

→ These clothes wash easily./It's easy to wash them.

3) 以 -ING 分句表示原因通常置句首，表示结果通常置句末。例如：

Not understanding each other's language, they were trying to communicate with gestures.

→ *Because/As* they didn't understand each other's language, they ...

Having lived in Berlin many years, he knew the city well.

→ *As* he (had) lived in Berlin many years, he ...

One by one Philip sold his bits and pieces, *getting* only a mite of their worth.

→ One by one Philip sold his bits and pieces; *as a result/in return*, he got only a mite of their worth.

The train was held up by the fog, thus *causing* the delay.

→ The train was held up by the fog, *as a result/therefore/and* it caused the delay.

22.4C 转换为目的、结果、让步分句等

1) “so as + 带 to 不定式”结构往往转为以“so that”连接的目的状语分句; “so/such ... as + 带 to 不定式”结构往往转为以 so/such ... that 连接的结果状语分句。例如:

He worked all night *so as to get* the job done in time.

→ He worked all night *so that* he could get the job done in time.

He spoke through a microphone *so as to be heard* better.

→ He spoke through a microphone *so that* he could be heard better.

Zhan's mezzo soprano was *so good as to make* her internationally famous.

→ Zhan's mezzo soprano was *so good that* it made her internationally famous.

He was in *such bad health as to be obliged* to resign.

→ He was in *such bad health that* he was obliged to resign.

2) 根据句中搭配及含义转换成让步或表示伴随情况的分句等。例如:

Though invited, he refused to come.

→ *Though* he had been invited, he refused to come.

Weighing almost one hundred kilograms, the huge stone was moved by him alone.

→ *Although* the huge stone weighs almost one hundred

kilogramms, it was moved by him alone.

The children were sitting around the blind musician,
listening to him attentively.

The children were sitting around the blind musician *while*
they were listening to him attentively.

The old man plodded along, *utterly exhausted*.

→ The old man plodded along, *as/because* he was *utterly*
exhausted.

22.5 非限定分句转换为并列分句

前面的某些定语或状语分句也可以用并列分句表示。例如：

The truck *broken down here* was towed to the nearest
garage.

(i) → The truck *which broke down here* was towed to
the nearest garage.

(ii) → The truck broke down here *and* (it) was towed
to the nearest garage.

An ancient town, *destroyed by mud-rock flow* ()
some 800 years ago, was discovered last month.

(i) → An ancient town, *which* was destroyed some 800
years ago, was discovered last month.

(ii) → An ancient town was destroyed some 800 years
ago *and* (it) was discovered last month.

Keeping it up, you will succeed.

(i) → You will succeed *if* you keep it up.

(ii) → Keep it up, *and* you will succeed.

Henry was amazed *to hear* it.

(i) → Henry was amazed *when* he heard it.

(ii) → Henry heard it *and* he was amazed.

下列非限定分句均能转换为并列分句:

He got to the top *only to be disappointed* to find that someone else had reached it first.

→ He got to the top *and* (he) was much disappointed when he found that someone else had reached it first.

Would you be so kind as *to lend* me your umbrella?

→ Would you be so kind *and* lend me your umbrella?

22.6 非限定分句与限定分句转换中应注意的几个问题

22.6A 转换的局限性

前面各节讨论为转换的种种可能性,但是另一方面,也要注意转换的局限性,并不是任何非限定动词结构都能转换为以限定动词短语为谓语的从句。例如:

Seeing is believing./To see is to believe.

We don't want any disturbance *to occur.*/We don't want there *to be* any disturbance.

There is no royal road *to learning.*

He who is ashamed of *asking* is ashamed of *learning.*

At four o'clock, when it was fairly dark, and Mrs Hall was trying *to find* courage *to go and ask* her visitor if he would take some tea, Teddy Henry, the dock-member, came into the bar.

有时虽然同样的意思既能用限定分句,也能用非限定分句表示,但不同的文体或不同的使用场合有不同的选择,不应随意转换。例如下面两句中的非限定分句都用于比较正式的文体,如换做限定分句,则应用于比较通俗的场合。试比较:

Feeling tired, John went to bed early.

→ *As he felt tired,* he went to bed early.

There *being* a bus stop so near the house is a great

advantage.

→ There is a bus stop so near the house, and this is a great advantage./It's a great advantage that there is a bus stop so near the house.

22.6B 人称、数及时体一致

1) 须根据主句有关词语确定分句的人称性别和单复数形式。

例如:

The Jewish woman looked admiringly at Mr Sanders for *being* so quick to read her thoughts.

→ The Jewish woman looked admiringly at Mr Sanders; for *he* was so quick to read her thoughts.

Left to itself, the country would long have achieved its unity.

→ If *it* had been left to itself, the country would long have achieved its unity.

Being a grass-land country, Australia finds it favourable to develop her livestock-raising.

→ As *she* is a grass-land country, Australia finds it favourable to develop her livestock-raising.

There are a lot of sheets *to mend*.

→ There are a lot of sheets *that we have to mend/that need mending/that need to be mended*.

One of the houses *wrecked* by the storm yesterday used to be my grandfather's.

→ One of the houses *which were wrecked* by the storm yesterday used to be my grandfather's.

She is the only one of these girls *chosen* to play the heroine.

→ She is the only one of these girls who has been chosen to play the heroine.

2) 非限定分句转换为限定分句时,其时体和主句相呼应。例如:

Experience, when dearly bought, is seldom thrown away.

→ When experience is dearly bought, it is seldom thrown away.

This same thing, happening in wartime, would amount to disaster.

→ This same thing, if it should happen in wartime, would amount to disaster.

They won't come unless invited properly.

→ They won't come unless they are invited properly.

Having been informed of the flood, he went there by plane.

→ As he had been informed of the flood, he went there by plane.

22.6C 助动词与连词

1) 在转换中有时要根据原来非限定分句的含义选用适当的助动词,主要是情态助动词。例如:

We thought it strange for him to say a thing like that.

→ We thought it strange that he should say a thing like that.

Haven't you anything to loosen the screw with?

→ Haven't you anything with which you can loosen the screw?

Do you think I'm free? On the contrary, there are piles of manuscripts to type today.

→ ... there are piles of manuscripts *that I must/I have (got) to type today.*

I insist on *instituting* proceedings against these legal offenders.

→ I insist that we (should) institute proceedings against these offenders.

2) 在转换中常常要根据原来非限定分句的句法作用选用适当的连词,有时还须调整个别词语,以组成包括两个完整限定分句的主从复合句或并列句。例如:

Taking the bus, you can get there in twenty minutes or so.

→ *If you take the bus, ...*

Punished, they will not cooperate.

→ *If/When* they are punished, ...

Admitting what you say, I don't quite agree with you.

→ *Though* I admit what you say, ...

Having supper, I glanced at the evening paper I had just bought.

→ *While/As* I had supper, ...

The strikers decided to *continue* the strike.

→ The strikers decided *that* they (should/would) *con-*
tinue the strike.

The captain was the last man to *leave* the ship.

→ The captain was the last man *who* left the ship.

He arrived late to *find* the others had gone.

→ He arrived late *and* found (that) the others had gone.

第二十三章 附加疑问句

23.1 引言

附加疑问句 (TAG QUESTION) 是英语口语中的一种常用句子形式, 由“陈述部分 + 附加疑问”所构成: 前者是一个陈述句型, 其后用逗号与附加疑问部分隔开, 在附加疑问后边加问号。根据陈述部分和附加疑问部分之间的肯定, 否定关系, 可将附加疑问句分为两大类:

一) 反意附加疑问句 (POLARIZED TAG QUESTION), 句中陈述部分和附加疑问部分在肯定与否定关系上两极分化:

陈述部分	附加疑问部分	举例
肯定	否定	The clock <i>is</i> fast, <i>isn't</i> it?
否定	肯定	The clock <i>isn't</i> fast, <i>is</i> it?

二) 非反意附加疑问句 (NON-POLARIZED TAG QUESTION), 句中陈述部分和附加疑问部分同时使用肯定或否定结构:

陈述部分	附加疑问部分	举例
肯定	肯定	The watch <i>is</i> slow, <i>is</i> it?
否定	否定	The watch <i>isn't</i> slow, <i>isn't</i> it?

上述两类附加疑问句中, 后一类使用较少, 并且要注意场合; 前一类使用较多, 有的语法书将附加疑问句通称为“反意疑问句”。

23.2 陈述部分与附加疑问部分的对应

23.2A 主语的对应

1) 陈述部分是 *we, you, he, it, they* 等代词时, 附加疑问

部分应用同样的代词作主语；陈述部分主语若为一般名词短语，附加疑问部分改用相应的代词。例如：

We are having a test tomorrow, aren't we?

You are doing your exams soon, aren't you?

Multiple choice questions are becoming very popular, aren't they?

May is a nice girl, isn't she?

Further education is expanding rapidly, isn't it?

2) 当陈述部分的主语是 *everybody, everyone, somebody, someone, nobody, no one* 等指人的合成词时，附加疑问部分的主语往往用 *they*，同时谓语动词相应地使用复数。例如：

Everyone's having a good time, aren't they?

Someone's offered you a lift home, haven't they?

Anyone can join that club, can't they?

Everybody drinks wine, don't they?

3) 当陈述部分是以 *everything, nothing, anything* 等指物的合成词作主语时，附加疑问部分的主语通常用 *it*，例如：

Everything's now ready for the party, isn't it?

Anything you buy costs the earth these days, doesn't it?

Something'll have to be done about the rising prices, won't it?

Nothing can buy back one's lost time, can it?

4) 如果陈述部分以不定代词 *one* 作主语，附加疑问部分的主语用 *one*，非正式场合也用 *one*；当陈述部分是 *there* 句型时，附加疑问部分同样用 *there*。例如：

One never learns without asking, does one?

One cannot be in two places at once, can one?

There's no help for it, is *there*?

There seemed to be some misunderstanding between us,
didn't *there*?

23.2B 谓语的对应

1) 如陈述部分为一般现在时或一般过去时的动词短语形式，附加疑问部分用 DO 的相应人称及时态形式。例如：

She likes discotheques, *doesn't she*?

They play in a dance band, *don't they*?

Swimming does you the world of good, *doesn't it*?

I looked as fit as a fiddle after my holiday, *didn't I*?

He didn't go on holiday this year, *did he*?

2) 当陈述部分的谓语动词为表示“所有”含义的 HAVE 时，附加疑问部分可以用 HAVE 或 DO 的相应形式；如果 HAVE 不表示“有”的含义而用于表示其他及物动词含义时，附加疑问部分只应用 DO 的相应形式。例如：

Your brother has a large family, *hasn't he / doesn't he*?

You often have (=suffer from) headaches, *don't you*?

Your manager has (=drinks) a cup of coffee at 11 o'clock,
doesn't he?

They had (=spent) a good holiday, *didn't they*?

3) 陈述部分带有 seldom, hardly, rarely, never, none, little, few, nowhere, nothing 等带否定含义的词语时，附加疑问部分用肯定形式。例如：

He *never* comes on Tuesday, *does he*?

Birds *rarely* build nests in your garden, *do they*?

Few people spoke against him, *did they*?

None have arrived yet, *have they*?

Your sister *seldom* goes to the cinema, *does she*?

The Simmons *no longer* stay there, *do* they?

4) 助动词(包括基本助动词和情态助动词)的对应规则参照
9.3关于助动词的否定式形。例如:

I am going to be responsible for it, *aren't* I?

The man ought to be dismissed, *oughtn't* he (BrE) /
shouldn't he (Am)?

That island used to be a British colony, *usedn't* it? /
didn't it?

You needn't be in such a hurry, *need* you? / *must* you?

You didn't need to go there at all, *did* you?

You must learn to answer questions in English, *mustn't*
you?

We must stop for a break now, *mustn't* we? / *needn't*
we?

如果陈述部分的 *must* 表示“想必”、“一定”等推测含义, 附加疑问部分往往不重复 *must*, 而是根据陈述部分动词短语的具体含义采用相应的形式。例如:

Your brother doesn't look well today. There *must* be something wrong with him, *isn't* there? (Meaning: There is certainly something wrong with him.)

A wilful man *must* have his way, *won't* he? (Meaning: A wilful man will certainly have his way.)

The train *must* have started when you got there, *hadn't* it? (Meaning: I believe the train had started when you got there)

You *must* have seen the play last Thursday evening, *didn't* you? (Meaning: I am sure you saw it that evening.)

23.2C “祈使句 + 附加疑问句”中的对应

1) 当祈使句部分表示要求对方作某事或不作某事时, 用 *will you* 相对应。另外, 有时在句首、句尾或句子中间插入 *please* 以加强语气。例如:

Don't make a noise, *will you?*

Do not touch the exhibits, *will you?*

Please come here, *will you?*

Come here, please, *will you?*

Come here, *will you, please?*

2) 用 *would you?* 和祈使部分提出的要求相对应, 含有 *Would you ... ?* 的意味。例如:

Be seated, *would you?*

Be quiet, *would you?*

Stay longer, *would you?*

3) 祈使部分表示建议、邀请或要求对方别忘了做某件事时, 用 *won't you* 相对应, 带有期待的含意。例如:

Be polite to your hosts, *won't you?*

Come and play with granny, *won't you?*

Write soon, *won't you?*

Take care, *won't you?*

Go to Eva's party Saturday evening, *won't you?*

4) 用 *Shall we* 和以 *Let's* 开首的祈使句对应, 表示建议和对方一道去做某件事。例如:

Let's go skating tomorrow morning, *shall we?*

Let's have a vegetarian meal, *shall we?*

如果祈使句以 *Let us* 开首, 附加疑问部分改用 *will you* 对应, 因为 *Let us* 含义上相当于 *Allow us (to do something)* 表示请求对方的允许。例如:

(Two athletes to the coach) — We're tired, Let us have

a break, *will you?*

(Visitors to the host) — Let us hang our rain coats here, *will you?*

(Passengers to a railway ticket-collector) — Let us have a smoke here, *will you?*

(Pupils to the teacher) — Let us use dictionaries in the quiz, *will you?*

23.3 附加疑问句的含义与使用

23.3A 反意附加疑问句的基本含义与使用

1) 反意附加疑问句在含义上不同于一般的疑问句。一般疑问句是提出问题请对方给予回答，反意附加疑问句的提出者自己对所述情况有一定的看法，并通过陈述部分表示了出来，但对陈述的情况不完全有把握，于是附带提出疑问，以求得到对方的证实。

例如：

{ Father: You did post my letter, didn't you? It's very important.
Son: Don't worry, I did.

{ Wife: You did switch off the gas, didn't you?
Husband: Of course I did.

2) 有时为了找话和别人（包括陌生人）攀谈，或接过对方的话题表示肯定或否定时，也常常使用反意附加疑问句，句中的附加疑问部分只是一种自然谈话的语气，并非表示真有什么问题。

例如：

{ — It's a very nice day, isn't it?
— A nice day, isn't it?

{ — That was a lovely meal.
— Yes, it was, wasn't it?

{ — There's a mouse in the kitchen, Mother!
— No, there isn't, is there?

3) 附加疑问句一般可用升调或降调, 其含义有时无甚区别, 有时有所不同。用升调表示说话人对所述内容把握不大, 希望对方加以证实, 或者是说话人为了语气婉转, 表示客气。例如:

You know Ms \Ida, /don't you?

He couldn't lend us a hundred \pounds, /could he?

You're Mrs \Robinson, /aren't you?

I needn't phone him a \gain, /need I?

如果用降调, 则表示说话人对所述内容较有把握, 期待对方同意, 或者仅为引起对方的注意。这时附加疑问句实质上相当于陈述句。例如:

She can join us this \week, \can't She?

It looks like \rain, \doesn't it?

Miss Rebecca didn't accept his pro \posal, \did she?

It isn't going to rain to\ morrrrow, \is it?

4) 对陈述部分为否定结构的反意附加疑问句表示回答时, 要根据事实情况(而不是对方的话语)使用肯定或否定句。对初学英语的中国学生来说, 要注意防止汉语习惯的干扰。试看下面的对话:

Teacher: You haven't borrowed my history book, have you?

Student: Yes.

Teacher: Oh, you have, have you? Well, can I have it back, please?

Student: No, sir, I haven't got it.

Teacher: But you said you'd borrowed it, didn't you?

Student: No.

上段对话中，学生对老师第一个附加疑问句回答本来应当用否定形式：No, I haven't borrowed the book. 其简略回答为：No, I haven't. 或 No. 因为他实际上是没有借过。但由于误用 Yes. 变成了肯定回答，而末尾又误用 No. 这与前边说过的 Yes 矛盾，以致越讲越把老师弄糊涂了。那个学生这样的回答，正好符合汉语的表达方式：“你没有借我的书吧？”“是的(,我没有借)。”试比较：

英语	汉语
问句：You didn't see him, did you?	你没见到他，是吗？
肯定回答：Yes, I did.	不啊，我见到他了。
否定回答：No, I didn't	是呀，我没见到。

5) 注意反意附加疑问句与“对比疑问句”(CONTRASTIVE QUESTION) 之间的区别。试比较：

A. You haven't been to Munich, *have you?*
 B: Yes, I have. *Have you?*

上述 A 句中的“have you?”是“附加疑问”，可以读升调或降调，B 句中的“Have you?”是“对比疑问”，只读升调。所谓对比疑问，通常是说话人就已有的话题向对方发问。结构上惯用省略疑问句，它可以是肯定形式(如 Have you?)，也可以用否定形式(如 Haven't you?)。

另外，反意附加疑问部分的主语只能用代词，与陈述部分的主语相呼应(23.2A)而对比疑问中的主语既可以用代词，也可用名词，它不要呼应。试比较：

{ — Dick used to behave well, *didn't he?*
 { — Yes, he did. *Doesn't he now?*
 { — Charles fell asleep on the tree, *didn't he?*
 { — Yes, he did. *Did Colonel Carlis?*

口语中常用“What about ... ?”句型来表示对比疑问：

- { — We have to take a big tent, haven't we?
- { — Yes. That's necessary. *What about (taking) sleeping bags?*

上述句型中的 What 可以用 How 代替, 但注意类似句型“*What do you think of ...?*”中的 What 不可以改用 How.

23.3B 非反意疑问句的含义特征及使用

1) 非反意疑问句。尤其是在答话时使用简短的非反意疑问句, 往往带有感情色彩, 句末一般要用外调。例如:

表示反感、讽刺、挖苦对方:

- { Father: I'm afraid you can't marry my daughter; she's too good for you.
- { Young man: She's too good for me, is she? Well, We'll soon see about that!

- { Husband: Your cooking's useless.
- { Wife: My cooking's useless, is it? Well, in future you can eat in restaurants, then.

表示不服气, 甚至表现出粗鲁的挑衅口吻:

- { Coach: You'd better not come. You can't swim so far.
- { Swimmer: So I can't swim so far, can't I?

- { Railway ticket-collector: You mustn't smoke here, sir; it's a nonsmokers' compartment.
- { Pompous business man: I mustn't mustn't I? And what do you propose to do about it if I do smoke here and now?

表示惊奇、疑虑:

- { — D'you know Harry won £500 on the pool last Saturday?
- { — He won £500? Did he? Fantastic!

- { — Did I pass?
- { — No, I'm afraid you failed.
- { — I failed, did I? What a shame!

2) 非反意附加疑问句大都带有某种较强的感情色彩,有的语气颇不文明,不可随便使用;有的可以用(如表示惊奇等),但须注意场合。在句型结构上,非反意疑问句有时用 so, oh 等词语引导。例如:

“Oh, Shirley said something, did she?”

“And he wouldn't be persuaded by the ladies, wouldn't he?”

- { — You're stupid. You've made a mess of it.
- { — So I have, have I?

第二十四章 THERE 句型和 IT 句型

24.1 引言

IT 常用作代词, THERE 用作副词。例如:

I've just seen the carving knife. *It* is in the kitchen.

Don't you like swimming in the sea? No, I can't bear *it*.

We have time to go *there* and back before dark.

They are *there* busily harvesting the corn.

另外, IT 和 THERE 又都是英语句中的重要结构词。由于英语不象西班牙语或意大利语那样可以出现不见主语的句子,有时就将 THERE 或 IT 用来担任形式上的主语。“昨天下了一场大雨”这样的句子,汉语里叫做“无主句”;英译时就需要 THERE 或 IT: *There* was a heavy rain yesterday. / *It* rained heavily yesterday.

本章拟从结构词的角度讨论 IT 和 THERE 引导的句型结构及使用方面的一些问题。

24.2 THERE 句型与其他句型间的转换

24.2A 基础句型转为 THERE 句型

1) 由 S.V 句型转为 THERE 句型。例如:

Someone was grumbling.

→ There was someone grumbling.

Clouds are gathering.

→ There are clouds gathering.

2) 由 S. V. C 句型转为 THERE 句型。例如:

Over 7000 athletes were present.

→ There were over 7000 athletes present.

Some screws must be rusty.

→ There must be some screws rusty:

3) 由 S.V.O 句型转为 THERE 句型。例如:

Two boys were flying a kite.

→ There were two boys flying a kite.

Several cranes are loading the vessels.

→ There are several cranes loading the vessels.

4) 由 S. V. IO. DO 句型转为 THERE 句型。例如:

Something has been causing her distress.

→ There has been something causing her distress.

Sympathizers will be rendering him assistance.

→ There will be sympathizers rendering him assistance.

5) 由 S. V. O. C 句型转为 THERE 句型。例如:

A bulldozer is knocking the ground flat.

→ There is a bulldozer knocking the ground flat.

Pollution is turning the river dirty.

→ There is pollution turning the river dirty.

6) 由 S. V. A 句型转为 THERE 句型。例如:

Is anyone upstairs?

→ Is there anyone upstairs?

Tears were running down her cheeks.

→ There were tears running down her cheeks.

7) 由 S. V. O. A 句型转为 THERE 句型。例如。

A girl is putting the kettle on.

→ There is a girl putting the kettle on;

Several doctors have been treating her for her hemiplegia.
→ There have been several doctors treating her for her hemiplegia.

24.2C 基础句型转为 THERE 句型中的几个问题

1) THERE 句型的基本含义是表示客观存在, 因此也叫 THERE 存在句。句中 THERE 作形式主语, 作真正主语的名词短语在后面, 通常都是泛指, 带特指含义的名词短语不能用于 THERE 存在句。试比较下面两句:

{ 有人在家吗? Is anyone in / Is there anyone in?
{ 爸爸在家吗? Is Daddy in? / Is there Daddy in?

没有人在家。No one is in. / There is no one in.

爸爸不在家。Daddy is not in. / * There is not Daddy in.

在带泛指含义的名词短语中, 限定词用不定冠词、零冠词, 还有 some, any, several, many, much, more, (a) few, (a) little, a lot of, another, plenty of, a (large) number of, enough, no/ 等非特指限定词, 以及基数词等。

2) THERE 存在句中的谓语动词除 BE 以外, 某些不及物动词如 come, exist, happen, lie, live, occur, remain, rise, stand 等, 也能用于 THERE 句型, 表示类似 BE 的含义, 并通常可以用 BE 的适当形式顶替。例如:

There may come / be a time when ordinary people will travel through space to the moon and other stars.

There exist / are / is (inf.) similar medieval crosses in different parts of the country.

Not long after that, there occurred / was a revolution in public taste.

Once there lived / was an old fisherman in a small village near the lake.

有时可将地点状语前移，构成倒装句，句中 THERE 往往省去。例如：

In front of the carriage (*there*) rode two men in uniform.
Beside the house, (*there*) towers a skyscraper, which was rebuilt seven years ago.

3) THERE 存在句中的时体形式与谓语动词的含义有关：如果谓语动词为表示存在概念的 BE 或带类似含义的 EXISTS 等不及物动词时，常常用一般现在时或一般过去时。例如：

There *lies* / *is* a reservoir in the valley.

When he jumped into the sea, there *happened* to be a shark, which instantly bit him to death.

但是，如果谓语动词是表示动作的其他动词，通常要用 -ING 或 -ED 形式。例如：

An unknown ship *is calling* for help.

→ There is an unknown ship *calling* for help.

A ship *has been calling* for help.

→ There *has been* a ship *calling* for help.

A foreign submarine *will be sailing* across this zone.

Five cases *are being examined*.

→ There *are* five cases *being examined*.

A lot of trees *were rooted* by the gale.

→ There *were* a lot of trees *rooted* by the gale.

A whole box *has been stolen*.

→ There *has been* a whole box *stolen*.

No shops *will be left open*.

→ There *will be* no shops *left open*.

24.3 THERE 引导的分句

243.A THERE 引导非限定分句

1) 以 *there to be* 结构作动词宾语, 例如:

I don't want *there to be* any misunderstanding.

People expected *there to be* better management.

Pupils like *there to be* more time to spare.

The public hate *there to be* hijacking.

除上述句中的动词外, 能带 *there to be* 结构作宾语的动词还有 *mean, intend, prefer, love* 等。这类动词为数有限, 通常表示人们的愿望、打算, 或者好恶之类的含义。

2) 作介词宾语时有两种情况。当介词为 *for* 时, 后面跟 *there to be* 结构。例如:

It was unusual *for there to be* so few people in the streets.

It is not uncommon *for there to be* problems of communication between old and young.

如果介词不是 *for*, 而是其他, 后面跟 *there being* 结构。例如:

He was disappointed *at there being* so little to do.

"I am greatly distressed *about there being* no cucumbers, not even for ready money."

John was relying *on there being* another opportunity

It is possible *in there being* more crude oil than estimated.

3) *THERE* 引导的非限定分句有时能作主语或独立结构。例如:

There being a park so near the house is a great advantage.

For there to be so much traffic jam was rather common during the rush hours.

There being no further business, the Chairman declared

the meeting closed.

There being earthquakes one after another, the place was once deserted.

24.3B THERE 引导限定分句

1) 以 THERE 引导主句, 后跟定语分句。例如:

There's something (that) keeps upsetting him.

There appeared to be no one who could answer our inquiries.

There is, however, a limit at which forbearance ceases to be a virtue. (Edmund Burke)

There is nothing which has not been bitter before being ripe. (Syrus)

2) 以 THERE 引导主句, 后跟状语分句。例如:

There's no pot so ugly it can't find a lid.

Just wait for the break of dawn. There will come a moment with so much fun that everyone will enjoy to their heart's content

3) 以 THERE 引导定语或状语分句。例如:

"It (here ESP) is generally used to refer to the teaching / learning of a foreign language for a clearly utilitarian purpose of which there is no doubt."

Where there is a will there is a way. (Scott)

24.3C THERE 引导的限定与非限定分句的转换

1) 以 THERE 引导的非限定分句一般能转换为限定分句。

例如:

We expect there to be give-and-take on both sides.

→ *We expect that there will be give-and-take on both sides.*

It was unusual for *there to be* so early frosts.

→ It was unusual *that there was* so early frosts.

He was happy in *there being* plenty of reference books.

→ He was happy *that there were* plenty of reference books.

There having been no rain, the ground was dry and crops withered.

→ *As there had been* no rain, the ground was dry and crops withered.

2) 前面 22.6 讲到的有关非限定分句与限定分句转换中的有关问题在这里同样适用。注意有时 *-ing* 型分句不但可以转换为 *there + -ing* 型分句, 并可转换为表示类似含义的几种限定分句。例如:

Having no further supplies, the army's morale was shaken.

→ *There being* no further supplies, ...

→ *As there were* no further supplies, ...

→ *There were* no further supplies, *and* ...

→ The army's morale was shaken *because there were* no further supplies.

→ ...

Having no further supplies, the army's morale remained unshaken.

→ *There being* no further supplies, ...

→ *Although there were* no further supplies, ...

→ *There were* no further supplies, *however*, the army's morale remained unshaken.

→ The army's morale remained unshaken *despite/inspite of the fact that there were* no further supplies.

24.4 IT 的几种基本用法

24.4A 无确指含义的 IT

所谓“无确指含义”(NON-REFERENTIAL)的 IT 有时用于指时间、地点等,有时纯粹用于构成习语,它本身无确切意义。

1) 表示时间、气候、地点、距离等。例如:

What time is *it*? *It* is seven minutes to eight.

What day is (*it*) today? *It* is Wednesday (today).

cf:

What's the date today? (Not: What date is it ...?) *It* is
November 15.

It's cloudy today, isn't *it*?

How peaceful *it* is in the early morning in the country!

What a nice sanatorium *it* is!

How far is *it* from here to the nearest supermarket?

It takes only a few minutes' walk/drive (to get there).

在表示上述含义时,如果指状态,有时也可以用相应的名词短语作主语;但如果有关动作概念,则必须用 IT。例如:

It was cold in Manchester yesterday.

→ Manchester was cold yesterday. / Yesterday was cold
in Manchester.

It was dark in the streets during that period of time.

→ The streets were dark during that period of time /
That period of time was dark in the streets.

It's flat in Norfolk.

→ Norfolk is flat.

It's 112 miles from Norwich to London.

→ (From) London to Norwich is 112 miles.

It was dull in the evening without the children.

→ The evening was dull without the children.

It was raining in Pittsburgh yesterday.

→ * Pittsburgh was raining ... / * Yesterday was raining ...

2) 用作表示时间、地点的分句的先行词。例如:

It seemed a long time *before* my turn came.

How trying *it* was *when* so many experiments ended in failure!

It is most beautiful *where* two cliffs meet over the bay.

3) 用于填补时间、地点状语前的宾语空缺。例如:

All of us enjoyed *it* in your beautiful city.

Frank liked *it* when his old friends supported him.

I could hardly bear *it* whenever Nancy swore at Robert.

The photographer likes *it* where some of the rockeries are of traditional Chinese style.

4) 用来构成“v + it”形式的习语。这种习语可大致分为以下三类:

一是表示交通手段的用语, 其中动词即说明交通工具, 如 to boat/bus/taxi/tube/train/tram it (坐船、乘公共汽车, 等)。

二是表示人的某个动作或做某件事, 例如: to foot it (步行), to leg it (逃走), to walk it (走), to trip it (旅行); to lord it (称王称霸), to king/queen it (做皇帝/女王, 统治), to dog it (打扮起来摆阔气), to hotel/inn/pub it (住旅馆/饭店/客栈), etc.

三是表示其他诸种意义的习惯语, 如 to catch it/get it (挨骂), to brave it out (拼着干, 顶到底), to come it strong (做得过分, 过于夸大), to cool it (平静下来, 缓和下来), to go it (干), to go it alone (单独干), to go it blind (瞎干), to go it strong on sth. (热烈赞许某事), to have it (了解),

etc.

24.4B 主语、宾语的先行词 IT

1) 作形式上的主语，后面的真正主语通常是不定式结构、-ING 分词结构，或名词性限定分句。例如：

It is easier to be wise after the event, isn't it?

It is no use pumping a dry well.

It remains a problem what we should do next.

And it won't matter where we meet again, either.

It didn't matter a bit that we hadn't met before, didn't it?

It is a mystery why they've never met before.

It is not yet decided whether he should be given an operation.

在正式的书面语中，有时不用形式主语，而直接将正确的主语取代先行词 IT 的位置。例如：

To be wise after the event is easier.

Pumping a dry well is (of) no use.

What we should do next remains a problem.

And where we meet again won't matter, either.

That we hadn't met before turned out to be a disadvantage.

Why they have never met before has become a mystery to many students.

Whether he should be given an operation was not decided until August 11.

注意有时作真正主语的 that 分句不能转到前面去取代形式主语 IT 的位置，而只能转换为非限定分句。这类情况通常都是由于谓语动词不宜单独置句尾有关。例如：

It seems that John's not coming after all.

→ John doesn't seem *to be coming* after all.

It happened Mary was the only witness.

→ Mary happened *to be* the only witness.

It is believed that she slipped arsenic into the sea.

→ She is believed *to have slipped* arsenic into the sea.

It turned out that there was only one applicant.

→ There turned out *to be* only one applicant.

2) 作形式上的宾语，后面跟不定式、-ING 分词或名词性分句等真正的宾语。由于这类句型中的谓语动词都是带“宾语 + 补语”，因而整个句子的结构为：S.V. it ,OC.O. 例如：

I find *it exciting working here.*

Linda doesn't consider *it necessary to dress fashionably.*

Something put *it* into his head *that she was jealous.*

另外，由于 take, leave 等少数动词和大多数介词后面都不能直接跟 that 宾语分句，因而也采用形式宾语 IT 作为中间媒介。例如：

I take *it (that)* you'll come back next week.

Let's leave *it* that I'll ring you then.

You can depend *on it* that he'll be on time.

You can get away *from it* that they shoot in cold blood.

24.4C 强调句型的先行词 IT

1) 以 IT 引导的强调句型为：IT + BE + 被强调成分 + that 分句。句中的 BE 有不同的时体变化，被强调成分指人时可以用 who 代替 that，指时间、地点时可以特分用 when 或 where 代替 that，但如果被强调的是介词短语，应一律用 that。例如：

It is the first step that costs.

It is not the beard that makes the philosopher.

It was Galileo who called on us "freely to question and freely to answer."

It will be 1999 when you commemorate the 200 years' anniversary of Balzac's birthday.

It was this hall where the late ambassador held the press conference.

It might have been in the bus that you left behind the handbag.

2) 以 IT 引导的强调句型也叫分裂句(CLEFT SENTENCE), 是由陈述句转换而来, 说话人根据需要 will 原句中的某个成分提出来作为强调成分。例如:

Pasteur gave Little Joseph a vaccine after his success in vaccinating animals.

→ It was Pasteur who gave Little Joseph ...
(S)

→ It was Little Joseph who(m) Pasteur gave a vaccine ...
(IO)

→ It was a vaccine Pasteur gave Little Joseph after his success ...
(DO)

→ It was after his success in vaccinating animals that
(A)

Pasteur gave Little Joseph a vaccine.

The northerners wanted to make the slaves factory workers.

→ It was factory workers that the northerners wanted to
(OC)

make the slaves.

The whole city has become a big rubbish dump because the dustmen went on strike three weeks ago.

→ It is because the dustmen went on strike three weeks
(A)

ago that the whole city has become ...

3) 谓语动词, BE 后面的主语补语, as 或 since 引导的原因状语分句, 以及 although, whereas 引导的分句等, 都不能用作 IT 句型中的被强调成分。如果要对它们进行强调, 须通过其他方式, 如语音、词汇、修辞等手段; 也有可能利用下述这样的句型转换达到强调目的。例如:

I want to bring out the secret of nature and apply them
for the happiness of man.

→ *What I want to do* is (to) bring out the secrets of
nature and apply them for the happiness of man. (强
调谓语动词)

Ostrovsky was a great man.

→ *What a great man* Ostrovsky was! (强调主语补语)

Paul's life was meaningful.

→ *How meaningful* Paul's life was! (强调主语补语)

24.5 THERE 与 IT 句型的转换及使用

24.5A 两个句型间的转换

1) 由非限定分句转非限定分句。例如:

There's no stopping him.

→ *It is impossible to stop* him.

There's no saying what he'll do next.

→ *It's impossible to say* what he'll do next.

For there to be so many flower beds on the campus is
most fascinating.

→ It is most fascinating for there to be ...

2) 由非限定分句转限定分句。例如:

There is said to have been trouble on the border.

→ *It* is said there has been trouble on the border.

There is likely to be a large audience.

→ *It* is likely that there is (going to be) a large audience.

There was no question of my being invited to become Chairman.

→ *It* was not discussed or proposed that I be invited to become Chairman.

There is/are said to be various snakes on that island.

→ *It* is said that there are various snakes on the island.

24.5B 两个句型的使用特点

1) *THERE* 与 *IT* 都能起“先行”作用,用作形式主语或宾语,而将真正的主语或宾语后置。这正符合英语句法的一个基本要求,即尾重(详见 26.3)。

2) 使用 *THERE* 或 *IT* 引导的句型表示自己的看法,可避免直接出现人称,显得口气较为委婉,因而有礼貌,或较为策略些。试比较:

You seem to have misunderstood me.

→ *There* seems to have misunderstanding between us.

→ *It* seems I have been misunderstood.

I believe that everything will be ready tomorrow.

→ *There* is belief that everything will be ready tomorrow.

→ *It* is believed that everything will be ready tomorrow.

We doubt if you can accomplish it.

→ *There* is doubt whether you can accomplish it.

→ *It* is doubted whether you can accomplish it.

第二十五章 否定

25.1 引言

英语中表示否定的形式灵活多变,既可通过词汇手段,也可通过句法手段。词汇手段主要指增加否定词缀表示否定概念,其中否定前缀较多,常见的有 an-, dis-, il-, im-, in-, non-, un- 等,否定后缀少,有 -less, -free 等。本书开头1.3A 曾提到否定转换,那属于句法范围。词汇手段和句法手段之间有一定的联系。本章着重讨论否定句子的一些基本类型及其使用中的若干问题。

25.2 英语否定结构的几种基本类型

25.2A 谓语动词的否定

1) 谓语动词的否定,指否定词出现在谓语动词部分,这是否定结构的最常见形式,称为“一般否定”(GENERAL NEGATION),例如:

She is not going to school today.

She didn't go to school yesterday.

She hasn't been to school since she went to the country.

由于谓语动词的否定通常是对整句(单句或分句)的否定,因此这种否定又叫做“句子否定”(SENTENCE NEGATION),或“分句否定”(CLAUSE NEGATION)。但是,有时由于句中其他成分(主要是状语)的影响,谓语动词否定并不表示整句的否定。例如:

She didn't go to school because she wanted a bike.

这句可作两种解释,即存在歧义:

(a) She didn't go to school, for she wanted a bike.

她因为要一辆自行车而未去学校。

(b) She went to school, but wasn't for a bike.

她并不是因为要一辆自行车而去上学的。

2) 有时句中否定词虽然出现在谓语动词部分,却不是否定谓语动词本身,而是对后面状语的否定。例如:

She didn't go to school by bike.

— She went to school, but not by bike.

The couple didn't travel for fun, but for an on-the-spot investigation.

— They traveled for an on-the-spot investigation, not for fun.

I don't come here to hear your grievances.

— I come here not to hear your grievances.

象上述句中的否定,亦称为转移否定 (TRANSFERRED NEGATION)。下面两句中对谓语动词的否定在定义上也向后边的成分发生转移:

He didn't happen to be there that day.

= He happened not to be there that day.

Don't let us do such things again.

= Let us not do such things again.

转移否定在口语中较为常见。表示“认为……不……”“觉得……不……”之类的含义时,按英语习惯均用转移否定。例如:

I don't think (that) he is wrong. 我认为他是不错的。

I don't believe (that) he will come. 我相信他不会来。

除上述 think, believe 外,其他某些表示判断或看法的动词如 expect, fancy, feel, guess, imagine, reckon, suppose, be

likely, 也常用于转移否定句型, 句中主语通常为第一人称代词。

3) 下述两种情况不适于转移否定:

一是在表示判断或看法的动词中, assume, fear, presume, surmise 等的否定仍在本身, 不向后边的分句转移, 这同我们汉语的思维表达方式一致。试比较:

I don't assume (that) he will come.

我不相信他会来。

I assume (that) he won't come.

我相信他不会来。

二是有时由于结构上的需要, 否定词只能用在从句。

例如: I think that she *can't help repeating* the story.

不可以改为: * I don't think that she can help repeating ...

又如: I believe that she *needn't* repeat the story.

I bet that she *won't* repeat the story *until* she is compelled.

I know that she *hasn't* repeated the story *yet*.

25.2B 名词短语的否定

名词短语的否定, 是指“否定”出现在担任主语、宾语、表语等的名词短语中。这类否定常见于以下几种结构:

1) 用表示否定意义的代词。例如:

Nobody passed the exam.

We could do *nothing* about it.

I wanted some string but there was *none* in the house.

2) 用 no. 例如:

No fox can be a true friend of a chicken.

I couldn't open the door because I found *no* key to it.

Be serious. It's *no* joke!

3) 用 neither, nor, 例如:

Neither side would accept any compromise.

I found *neither* explanation suitable.

She would care *neither* fame *nor* money.

4) 用 *not*, 例如:

Not a word came from his lips.

= He didn't say a word.

Not a single grain was produced by the king.

= The king didn't produce a single grain.

25.2C 双重否定

双重否定(DOUBLE NEGATION)通常见于以下两种结构:

1) 否定词 + 否定词

此结构中的两个否定词均有其独立含义,构成“否定之否定”,

即等于完全肯定句。例如:

I *never* helped *nobody*. (Meaning: I often helped people.)

I *can't not* obey. (Meaning: I have to obey.)

No one has *nothing* to offer to society.

(Meaning: Everyone has something to offer to society.)

Not many people have *nowhere* to live.

(Meaning: Most people have somewhere to live.)

2) 否定词 + 含否定意义的词首或词组

此句型属于“克制陈述句”(UNDERSTATEMENT)也是表示肯定的意思,但口气婉转。例如:

Nothing is *impossible* to a willing heart.

世上无难事,只怕有心人。

This kind of shell is *not* totally *unknown* to us.

这种贝壳,我们并不是完全不认识。

Such lawsuits are *not infrequent*.

这种诉讼并不是不常见。

I was not a little worried.

我也不是不着急呀。

No one is without his faults.

人无完人。

这里有三点值得注意。

一是在俗语或方言中，有时两个以上的否定词重复出现在一个句子里，都是加强否定，并无肯定的意思。这类结构称为“重复否定”(REPEATED NEGATION)“加重否定”(CUMULATIVE NEGATION)或“多重否定”(MULTIPLE NEGATION)。例如：

I won't trouble nobody about nothing no more.

(Meaning: I won't trouble anybody about anything any more.)

No one never said nothing.

(Meaning: No one ever said anything.)

二是在复合句中有时两个分句均以否定形式出现，含义上有时等于上边讲到的“双重否定”结构，有时却不相同，需加具体分析。例如：

It's not that I do not wish her well.

我不是不希望她一切都好呀。

I'm not saying that he's not equal to that job.

我并不是说他不能胜任那个工作。

I don't know why he isn't there.

我不知道他为什么不在那里。

I shouldn't be surprised if it wasn't right.

假如它对了，我不会感到吃惊的。

三是现在标准英语中，总是避免使用双重否定句，办法是直接省去一重否定，或将其中一个否定词语改为非否定词语。例如：

I don't never go swimming in September.

→ I *never* go swimming in September.

Jane *doesn't* want *none* of that cake.

→ Jane *doesn't* want *any* of that cake.

25.3 否定范围

25.3A 否定词的位置与否定范围

1) 一般说来, 否定词 *not*, *no*, *neither* 等的位置是在被否定的句子成分之前。句中受到否定的部分称之为“否定范围”(SCOPE OF NEGATION)。在句中其他词序不变的情况下, 否定词的位置变化会引起否定范围的不同。试比较:

He *didn't* agree to drink brandy.

他未同意喝白兰地。

cf: He agreed *not* to drink brandy.

他同意不喝白兰地。

We *haven't* decided to set sail tomorrow.

我们尚未决定明日启航。

cf: We have decided *not* to set sail tomorrow.

我们决定明日不启航。

I definitely *didn't* tell him about the plan.

我肯定未将计划告诉他。

cf: I *didn't* definitely tell him about the plan.

我还不能肯定是否将计划告诉他了。

但是, 有时否定词的位置不同并不一定表示否定范围的差异。

例如下列各组中的两句含义上没有什么不一样:

There *wasn't* a soul upstairs.

— *Not* a soul was there upstairs.

She *wouldn't* say a word.

— *Not* a word would she say.

He *never* said "no".

— *Never did he say "no"*.

2) 否定词 NOT 有时并不表示对后边成分的全部否定, 例如谚语“闪光的未必都是黄金”(All that glitters is *not* gold) 可以说成: *Not all that glitters is gold*. 这种现象叫做“部分否定”或“局部否定”(PARTIAL NEGATION)。

关于“部分否定”, 有三种常见的结构:

一是否定词 not 与 all, everyone, everything 等含不定量意义的代词搭配, 将 not 置于句首或谓语部位, 整句的意思基本相同。例如:

All are not friends that speak us fair.

(=*Not all* are friends that speak us fair.)

对我们说好话的不一定都是朋友。

Everyone in society does not work for money.

(=*Not everyone* in society works for money.)

不是社会上人人都为金钱而工作。

Everything in my country is not perfect.

(=*Not everything* in my country is perfect.)

我们国家并非一切都十全十美。

二是 NOT 与“限定词 + 名词”搭配, 能用此结构中的限定词有 all, both, every, many, much 等, 均表示不定量含义, 否定词可用在句首或谓语动词部位。例如:

All his words are not credible.

(=*Not all* his words are credible.)

他的话不尽可靠。

Both measures were not effective.

(=*Not both* measures were effective.)

两条措施不都有效。

Every answer given here is not appropriate to fill in the

blank.

(=Not every answer given here is appropriate to fill in the blank.)

这里所给的答案并非每个都适合于填这个空。

The young man does *not* have *much* experience in photo taking.

那个年轻人拍照的经验不多。

三是 NOT 与 *always*, *often* 等表示频度的副词搭配。例如：

You have to stand on your own feet, *don't always* rely on your parents.

你要自立，别老是依赖父母。

I don't know if I can meet him this time, for he *doesn't often* go there in summer.

我不知道能否见到他，他夏天不常去那里。

3) 有时须根据上下文来确定某句中的否定范围。下述例句中的否定结构从搭配形式上看符合“部分否定”，但实际意义是“全部否定”，带有 *not even* 的强调含义：

All the money in the world *won't* make you happy then.

意为“纵然全世界的金钱也不会使你感到幸福”。

It will be the loveliest mystery ever was, and *all* the police in the world *won't* solve it.

强调“即使全世界的警察都来也解不开这个谜”。

As the child used to tell lies, *everything* he said was *not* believed by others. One day when he was drowning, *all* his pals *didn't* pay any heed to his crying for help.

由于那个孩子好说谎，别人都不相信他的话，甚至连他溺水呼救也没人睬他。他的教训比《伊索寓言》中的那个牧童更为沉痛。

另外，语调也是区分全部否定或局部否定的标志。同样一个句子，使用的目的(即所表达的含义)不同，语调上也有区别：

(You have to put all your flowerpots in the greenhouse in winter.) Every 'flower 'can't 'stand the ↘cold.

(Meaning: No flower can stand the cold.)

各种花都怕冷。

cf: (Some of the flowerpots should be put in the greenhouse in winter.) 'Every flower 'can't 'stand the ↗cold.

(Meaning: Some flowers can stand the cold.)

并非每种花都怕冷。

I 'wasn't listening 'all the ↘time. (So I have no idea of what he said.)

我全都没有听。

cf: (As I had to leave earlier for class,) I wasn't 'listening 'all the ↗time.

我没有自始至终听。

25.3B 情态动词的否定范围

1) 否定句中带情态助动词时，即出现如下结构：“情态动词 + not + 主要动词”其中否定词，not 可能是针对前面的情态动词，也可能是针对后面的主要动词。产生上述区别，既与不同的情态动词有关，有时还与某情态动词在句中的具体意义有关。例如：

(a) He *can't* be at work now.

(b) He *may not* be at work now.

上述句(a)是对情态动词的否定，句(b)是对主要动词的否定，它们的含义可分别解释为：

(a) — It is *not possible* that he is at work now.

(b) — It is *possible* that he is *not* at work now.

又如：

(c) They *may not* pull it down. (表示“可能性”)

— It is possible that they *won't* pull it down.

(d) You *may not* ask me any more silly questions.

(表示“允许”)

-- You are not allowed to ask ...

兹将若干情态动词的否定范围简要列表说明如下：

与 not 搭配 的情态动词	情态动词所表示的含义	否定范围	
		主要动词	情态动词
may	“可能” (possibility)	+	
must	义务 (obligation)	+	
will	各种意义	+	
shall	“意愿”“意志” volition, insistence	+	
ought to, should	“义务” “可能” obligation, possibility	+	
would	意志 insistence	+	
may	许可 permission		+
can	各种意义		+
have	“义务” “必需” obligation, necessity		+
need	“义务”、“必需”		+

举例：

1. She *may not* come by air as the weather's bad,

- It is possible that she *won't* come by air ...
2. You *mustn't* smoke in the cinema here.
— I oblige you *not to smoke* ...
3. I *won't* fire him since he sees his fault.
— I'm willing *not to fire* him ...
Come what may, the man *won't* do what he's told.
— ... the man insists on *not doing* ...
They *won't* have received your letter yet.
— It is predictable that they *haven't received* ...
4. You *shall not* stay here, no matter what reasons you may have.
— I'll see to it that you *will not stay* here ...
5. You *shouldn't* throw rubbish on the street.
— You are obliged *not to throw* ...
As things now stand, he *shouldn't* be far away from here.
— It is a possible conclusion that he *is not* far ...
6. No matter how hard I tried to persuade him, he *wouldn't* accept my views.
— ..., he insisted on *not accepting* my views.
7. You *may not* use a dictionary in the exam.
— I *do not permit* you to use ...
8. You *can't* smoke here.
— You are *not allowed* to smoke here.
He *can't* be serious.
— It is *not possible* that he is serious.
She *can't* patch clothes.
— She is *not able* to patch clothes.

9. You *don't have to* pay the damages.
 — You are *not obliged* to pay ...
 It *doesn't always have to* be my fault.
 — It's *not necessary* for it to be ...
10. You *needn't* go into much detail.
 — You are *not obliged* to go ...
 It *needn't* always be my duty.
 — It's *not necessary* for it always to be ...

2) 有时用语调表示不同的否定范围。如当 *may not* 表示“许可”意义时，重音在 *not* 上；表示“可能”时，重音在 *may* 上。试比较：

You *may* 'not hold a court tomorrow. Wait for further instructions. (— You are *not* permitted to hold ...)

They 'may not set sail tomorrow. The weather man says there is going to be typhoon. (— It is possible that they will *not* ...)

同样，*will not* 表示“意志”时，应将 *will* 重读；表示“愿意”时可用 *will* 的缩略式 'll + not，重音落在 *not* 上。试比较：

She 'will not beg any favour of them.

(— She insists on *not* begging ...)

She'll 'not go to the dance, I'm afraid.

(— She is *not* willing to go ...)

25.4 多余否定与含蓄否定

25.4A 多余否定

有时句中的否定结构并不表示否定意义，而是一种委婉口气，整句的真正含义是肯定的。这就是“多余否定”结构 (PLEONASTIC NEGATION)。

I'm wondering if we *cannot* have another chance.

我不知道我们是否可以再有一次机会。

I am writing to ask for your help in seeing if the provisions of the agreement *cannot* be implemented in the next few weeks.

函请惠予注意协议条款是否可在今后几周内实施。

多余否定有时也见于虚拟语气句中，例如：

If the walls of the room could speak, what an amount of capricious cruelty would they *not* bear witness to!

如果屋子里的墙会讲话，它会证实多少任性的残酷行为呀！

25.4B 含蓄否定

有时句中不见明显的否定结构，但其含义都是否定的，称之为“含蓄否定”(IMPLIED NEGATION)。含蓄否定常见于以下几类句型中：

1) 带否定含义的谓语动词句型。例如：

Jane *refused* (=didn't accept) the invitation.

The doctor *forbids* (=does not allow) him to eat fat.

My team *failed* (=did not succeed) in the contest in 1978.

Father *hates* (=does not like) to be in like a lion, out like a lamb.

If one *lacks* (=has no/doesn't have) confidence in himself, he can accomplish nothing.

注意有些词语必须与谓语动词的否定结构搭配，不能与表示含蓄否定的谓语动词连用，如“..., either”, “... neither ...”, “..., not even ...”等。例如：

If one doesn't have a great aim in life, he *doesn't have* the motive to work hard, *either*.

—* ..., he *lacks* the motive ..., *either*.

I *don't believe* the story, *not even* in the least.

—* I doubt the story, not even ...

My children *are not allowed* to smoke, *neither/nor* are they allowed to drink.

—* My children are prohibited to ..., *neither/nor* are they prohibited to ...

2) 带否定含义的虚拟或条件句。例如:

I wish/I'd rather we *could* work 24 hours a day.

(The fact is that we can't do so.)

He can do it, *if* any one can.

(Meaning: If he can't do it, no one can.)

I would discuss with you in more detail, *but that* I have something urgent to attend to.

(Meaning: As I have something urgent to attend to, I can't discuss with you in more detail.)

(参阅11.4非真实条件句)

3) 反诘句, 亦称“修辞性疑问句”(RHETORICAL QUESTION)。

What is the use? (Meaning: It's no use.)

Why would the car be parked here?

(Meaning: It's not necessary to park the car here.)

Who would have thought of it?

(Meaning: No one would have thought of it.)

Can you forget that terrible scene?

(Meaning: You cannot forget that terrible scene.)

Do they show any sign of good manners and education?

(Meaning: They do not show any ...)

Am I to blame?

(Meaning: I am not to blame.)

4) 某些固定的词组或搭配, 如 *anything but*, *far from*, *too ... to* 等。例如:

This new version is *anything but* faithful to the original.

(Meaning: It is not faithful to the original.)

Our work is *far from* satisfactory.

(Meaning: Our work is not at all satisfactory.)

This pair of socks is *too tight to* wear.

(Meaning: This pair of socks is so tight that I can't wear.)

There are *few* advantages *but* have disadvantages.

(Meaning: Few advantages do not have disadvantages.)

5) 带有较强感情色彩的某些口头习惯语。例如:

Since you have so many friends, 'you will be *the last* (person) to feel lonely.

(Meaning: You will never feel lonely.)

God knows what has become of him.

(Meaning: No one knows ...)

As if anyone would believe that news!

(Meaning: No one would believe it.)

I know better.

(Meaning: I don't think so.)

Much I care!

(Meaning: I don't care at all.)

If ever I hear the like!

(Meaning: I do not hear the like.)

Me tell a lie!

(Meaning: I never tell a lie.)

I'll be damned if I'll go.

(Meaning: I won't go.)

Catch me doing that again!

(Meaning: There is no likelihood of my doing that again.)

第二十六章 替代与省略

26.1 引言

替代(SUBSTITUTION)和省略(ELLIPSIS)是常见的语法现象,前者是用替代词(PRO-FORM)去取代句子的词语,后者是将句中的可省略部分直接删去。两者形式不同,目的都是为了精简词语和避免不必要的重复,并常常在句中综合使用。例如下面的句子都是既有替代,又有省略:

Computers calculate rapidly, (*they*) do more work than man in the same time, and (*they*) threaten many jobs, but we must use *them*.

A young animal has to decide which of the things around *it* are to be eaten and (*it has to decide*) which (*of the things around it*) are to be avoided.

上述例句表明,替代与省略使句子结构更加紧凑,有利于突出句中的关键词语,从而收到言简意赅的效果。

26.2 替代与省略的几种基本类型

26.2A 名词性替代或省略

1) 替代名词短语或其中中心词。例如:

The former manager took a dislike to us because *he* objected to our being together so much. (*he: the former manager*)

George prefers a white coat to a blue *one*. (*one: coat*)

在不影响句子含义及结构完整的情况下，有时省去名词短语或其中中心词。例如：

The new comer was not sure of the work here, so (he) kept an eye on us continually.

He prefers green tea to black (tea) in summer.

2) 替代名词性分句时，so 表示肯定句，not 表示否定句。

例如：

The Youth Team said they would win. Many people believed so, but some thought not. (so: the Youth Team would win; not: the Youth Team wouldn't win.)

在对话问答中，有时用分句的替代形式，或将分句省略。例如：

(i) — Can the mite (an insect) kill red spiders?

{ — I think so. (so: it can kill red spiders.)
— Yes. (It can kill red spiders.)

(ii) — Does the goose eat meat?

{ — I think not. (not: it doesn't eat meat.)
— No. (It doesn't eat meat.)

(iii) — Is this a non-smoker?

{ — I'm afraid not. (not: this isn't a non-smoker.)
— I don't know (whether it is a non-smoker).

听到特殊疑问句时，可将回答中包含的分句省去，或者保留特殊疑问词，以该词作为分句的替代形式。例如：

(iv) — Who could have broken those tiles?

— I don't know (who could have done it).

— I can't think who.

(v) — Both sides suffered heavy casualties in the boundary conflict.

— Did you make sure *how many*?

— I didn't (make sure ...)

26.2B 动词性替代与省略

1) 替代动词短语或其中心词。例如:

Mary doesn't play bridge skillfully, but her sister *does*.

(*does*: plays it skillfully.)

You mustn't smoke here. You can *do* in the next room.

(*do*: smoke.)

上述动词性替代往往可与动词性省略交替使用。例如:

You mustn't drink before you drive, but of course you can ()/you *can do* after that.

I finally flew across the straits and joined the PLA; I had wanted to ()/to *do* so for years.

2) 动词短语中的助动词有时也可以省略。例如:

The ants have a division of jobs: Some are looking for food, some (*are*) attending the Queen and some (*are*) standing on guard, etc.

The flood was one of the worst in a hundred years. All crops were washed away and houses (*were*) deserted to ruin.

省略助动词,有时须保留被动结构中 BE 的适当形式。例如:

The people's martyrs will be commemorated while the traitors (*will*) be punished.

Some books are to be tasted, others *to be* swallowed, and some few *to be* chewed and digested; that is, some books are to be read only in parts; others *to be* read, but not curiously, and some few *to be* read wholly, and with diligence and attention.

26.3 替代与省略使用中的几点说明

26.3A 常见替代词语的使用

1) 代词为最常见的替代词,可用于替代名词性的词语,有的还能替代分句。例如:

John and Mary stole a toy from my son. *Their* mother told *them* to return *it*, but *they* said *it* was *theirs*.

Right is right, and wrong is wrong; and if a man cannot distinguish *them* properly, *he* is either a fool or a rascal: *that* is all.

Mr Food is leading in New Hampshire and it is a good thing for the Democrats. (it: Food is leading in New Hampshire.)

John says his little daughter can swim 1,000 meters, but *that* seems unbelievable. (that: she can swim 1,000 meters.)

替代词语通常出现在被替代对象之后,有时也可能出现在被替代对象之前。例如:

Though *he* turned to drama relatively late in his career, Eliot was much earlier interested in the problem of contemporary verse drama. (he: Eliot)

I would never have believed *it*. They have accepted the whole scheme. (it: They have accepted the whole scheme.)

在不影响句子结构与含义完整的情况下,代词常常省去。例如:

Without a moment's hesitation, the two kidnappers hurried down the stairs and (*they*) left the house.

As usual, I arrived at the station an hour before train

departure and therefore (*I*) could find no porter.

2) *one* 和 *ones* 分别用于替代可数名词的单复数。例如:

Customer: Have you any silk handkerchiefs? I need *one*.

Shop assistant: Oh, here are very good *ones*, and this looks *one* of the best.

上述例句中的 *I need one* 也可以理解为 *I need one handkerchief* 的省略形式。区别在于: 替代词 *one* 不重读, 而基数词 *one* 要重读。

替代词 *one/ones* 和它们所替代的名词之间虽然含义上存在同一性, 但往往并非指同一实体。例如:

If you compare the new *edition* with the old *ones*, you'll find a world of difference.

This *pair* (of shoes) is a bit too tight. Could you show me a larger *one*?

— Do you like these *plates*?

— No. I prefer plain *ones* or *ones* with a simpler pattern.

3) *some*, *any*, *each* 等用于不定代词时, 既可以看作是名词性替代词, 也可以理解为省略了其后面的 *of* 结构。例如:

His friends are all honest people. *Some* (of them) I know well too.

The boys applied for a scholarship. *Each* (of the boys) was given an application form.

Many of my acquaintances go to the same school as I do, but I don't know *any* (of them) that wants to be a doctor.

4) *the same* 通常用来替代前面已提到过的人或事物等。例如:

A good book is the best of friends, *the same* today and

forever.

— Good health!

— *The same to you!*/I wish you *the same!*

Waiter: What would you like to have?

Man: Can I have two poached eggs on toast, please?

Wife: Give me *the same*, please.

Son: I'd like *the same* but fried, please.

替代词 *the same* 有时可以理解为 *the same + N* 的省略形式。例如:

Charles won £5,000 on the football pools last month, and his brother got just *the same* (*amount of money*) yesterday.

There is in fact no freedom of speech. Everyone must say *the same* (*thing*).

Don't you know Julian and Jule are one and *the same* (*person*)?

除了作名词性替代词以外, *the same* 也可以用于形容词性或副词性替代词。例如:

The grapes are rather sour, and the pears taste *the same*. Both of you speak highly of John and I think *the same* (of him).

The gap between generations often arises from the fact that old people do not feel *the same* about these things as the younger generation.

5) kind, sort 或 piece, bit, slice 表示种类或数量的词有时也可以用作替代词。例如:

Chinese food is not *the same* as the western *kind*. (*kind; food*)

Slang disappears quickly, especially the juvenile sort.

(sort: slang)

He is not the *kind* (of person) to idle away his time.

Do you want a piece/bit of paper? Ah, here's a little *piece/bit*.

Have some more bread. Take another *slice*, will you?

上述替代词也可以看作是后边省去了 of + noun, 其中 N 通常为不可数名词, 如 a kind/sort of liquor, a piece/bit of string, a drop of water, etc.

6) do so 可以用来替代“动——宾”结构或“动——状”结构。
例如:

The man is always finding fault with people. Is his wife *doing so*? (doing so: finding fault with people.)

Just finish off watering these plants. And let me know when you've *done so*? (done so: finished off watering the plants.)

The people along the river commemorated the death of Qu Yuan on the 5th day of the fifth lunar month, and later people throughout the country *did so* every year. (did so: commemorated the death of the great patriotic poet.)

Snow intended to come for another visit, but he was struck with cancer and failed to *do so*. (do so: come for another visit.)

Your father used to work till midnight when he was in Cambridge.

Does he still *do so*? (do so: work till midnight.)

有时, do so 可以和 do the same 或者 do it/do this/do

that 等交换使用。例如：

When I was young, I noticed my parents got up early in the morning and put the room in order. Later, I *did the same/did so, too*.

The examiner asked who really put electricity to work, and my answer was: Michael Faraday, an English scientist, *did that/did so/did it/did this*.

有时，在 do so 搭配中省去 so，或在有 don't, didn't, doesn't 等助动词时将 do so 全部省去。例如：

Darwin *did not* say man is descended from the apes, as some people claim he *did*.

Under threat of torture, the old man promised to change his ideas, but in fact he *didn't (do so)*.

7) “so + do + 主语”和“so + 主语 + do”两个句型均用于口语中附和别人的话，其区别在于：

“so + do + 主语”句型中的主语与上文不相同，so 表示 the same, in the same way 一类概念。例如：

— I like swimming across the Huangpu River.

— So do I/So does my brother/So *did* my father.

“so + 主语 + do”句型中的主语通常是复指上文中的对象，so 表示 indeed, certainly 等意思。此句型中的 so 有时也能换用 that。例如：

— I hear that Zhu Jianhua broke his own world record again.

— So he *did/That he did!* And I hope he will do still better at the Olympic Games.

如表示否定含义，应改用下述句型：

— I don't speak Espanol.

— *Nor/Neither do I/does my wife. (She doesn't speak it, either.)*

— *It says John's brother committed suicide.*

— *No. His sister did that/That his sister did.*

26.3B 句中一般的省略部位

1) 在日常口语中省略现象十分普遍，有时省略部分在上下文或句子本身很容易找出。例如：

— *Sorry to trouble you. (=I'm sorry to trouble you.)*

— *Anything I can do for you? (=Is there anything I can do ...?)*

— *Hope to see the Brians. (=I hope to ...)*

— *They've gone.*

— *Gone? Gone where? (=Have they gone? They've gone where?)*

— *On a journey. (=They've gone on a journey.)*

— *When'll they be back?*

— *In a month, they said. (=They'll be back in a month ...)*

— *Oh, how awful! (=Oh, how awful it is!)*

有些省略结构已成为习惯上的固定用语，人们习以为常，不用考虑哪里省略了什么。例如：

He's as silly as an ass.

My arguments are as follows.

Come as soon as possible.

Out of sight, out of mind.

2) 在并列句中的省略大都出现在后面的分句里。例如：

John raised his hat and (he) was about to speak to her.

You should have phoned or telegraphed, and (you should)

not just have sent an air-letter, since it was something urgent.

Peter was playing a waltz and his friends (*were*) dancing to the music.

The old couple must move upstairs, or their children (*must do it*).

He is Jack of all trades but (*he is*) master of none.

We asked for fried fish, but they gave us boiled (*fish*).

但是, 宾语的省略一般出现在前面的分句。例如:

Most children like (*fancy birds*), but they don't know how to keep fancy birds.

cf: Most children like fancy birds, but they don't know how to keep them. (替代)

Jones likes (*swimming in winter*), and Jane hates, swimming in winter.

cf: Jones likes swimming in winter, and Jane hates it.

(替代)

如果是省略主语补足语或状语, 则省略既可能出现在前面的分句, 也可能在后面的分句, 须视具体情况而定, 但注意句尾可以用动词 BE 的适当形式, 而不能用其他动词。例如:

Bob was (*surprised at the news*), and his wife seemed, surprised at the news.

Mary seemed irritated, and Jack certainly was (*irritated*).

Mr Brook looks healthy, but in fact he isn't (*healthy*).

The Jones were in this hotel, but the Johnsons weren't (*in this hotel*).

My sister sings (*beautifully*), and also dances beautifully.

Peter drives (*skillfully*), but he never cycles, skillfully.

3) 在主从复合句中，定语从句的关系代词(在从句本身作宾语)或“关系代词 + be (以及 stand, lie 等)”往往省略。例如：

The violin (which) I bought belonged to a concert violinist.

The castle, (which was) built in 12th century, has dominated the valley ever since.

You shouldn't talk with a man (who is) driving the bus.

Can you see the flowers (that are) on the balcony?

A house (which stands) in such a fine position is likely to be rather expensive. (参见第22章非限定分句与限定分句的转换。)

但是，如果定语从句是一般时态(现在、过去或将来)的主动结构，或是由名词短语作表语的句型，则不能照上述办法省略。例如：

That's the man *who conducted* the orchestra.

Let's have a look at the fan *which runs* seven days and nights without trouble.

Are you going to meet the delegation *which arrives/which is to arrive/which will arrive* tomorrow morning?

cf: Are you going to meet the delegation (which is) arriving tomorrow morning?

This is the school *that is the polling booth*.

Do you still remember the lady *who was our first year teacher* at the primary school?

cf: We'll then take you to The Shanghai Mansions, a nice place for you to see the whole city.

4) 主从复合句中，状语分句和主句谓语中的相同部分可以省略，省略部位通常出现在后面的分句中。例如：

{ John will play the guitar if Julia will (play the guitar).

{ If Julia will play the guitar, John will (play the guitar), too.

{ Ada is going to look for a job though/because Adam won't (look for a job).

{ As Adam won't look for a job, Ada has to (look for a job).

{ Although he was able to swim 1,000 meters in the pool, I don't think he'll be able to (swim 1,000 meters) in the river.

{ I don't think he'll be able to swim 1,000 meters in the river, though he was (able to swim 1,000 meters) in the pool.

{ Since everyone has to go, I will (go).

{ I will go since everyone has to (go).

Since you were born there, you must know the place better than I (do=know the place).

如果状语分句和主句的主语相同，分句的谓语动词中有 BE，则往往将分句中的“主语 + BE”部分省略。例如：

While (I was) waiting in the queue, I was skimming over a back file.

If (it is) carefully done, the experiment will be successful.

When (he was) pressed to betray his motherland, the famous painter definitely declined.

The messenger threw himself from his horse and lay still as if (he had been) shot.

Unless (you are) travelling by coach, please let the se

cretary know when you expect to arrive.

The old couple were looking well though (they were) living alone in the countryside.

The tiger cubs have been growing well since (they have been) taken away from their parents.

(参见第22章非限定分句与限定分句的转换。)

26.3C 不宜省略的几种情况

1) 以 *as*, *because*, *so that*, *however*, *nevertheless*, *otherwise* 等引导的分句中不好用省略。例如:

As I was entering the zoo, I heard animals howling and roaring.

Dick failed to get a job because he was caught out in the interview.

We pretended to whisper to our colleagues, so that we gave him the impression that we were talking about him.

We told him we had both been on the premises that evening; however, we did not say that we had seen him there.

The news may be unexpected; nevertheless, it is true.

Do what you're told; otherwise, you will be punished.

2) 有时省略会引起歧义。例如:

The school master interviewed the visiting scholar this afternoon and his colleagues this evening.

(i) = *The school master interviewed the visiting scholar this afternoon and the school master will interview the scholar's colleagues this evening.*

(ii) = *The school master interviewed the visiting scholar*

this afternoon and his colleagues will interview the scholar this evening.

I like to play tennis with John better than Peter.

(i) = ... better than (I like to play it with) Peter.

(ii) = ... better than Peter (likes to play it with John).

I think the cheque is still valid. The bank can tell them.

(i) ... The bank can tell them that it is still valid.

(ii) ... The bank can tell them whether it is still valid.

Defeated in the election, he was planning to try his hand at business.

(i) When/After he was defeated in the election, he ...

(ii) Since/As he was defeated in the election, he ...

为避免歧义，须根据实际情况重复必要的词语，或者使用适当的替代形式。例如：

Rebecca wrote to her sister and then (she wrote) to her sister's husband.

I like to play bridge with John better than *with* Peter.

I like to play badminton with George than Jack *does*.

I think the cheque is still valid. The bank will tell them *so/about it*.

It seems to be an invalid claim. However, you can go to the magistrate who'll tell you *whether it is*.

Though defeated in the game, they should not have been treated like that.

第二十七章 主题与重心

27.1 引言

句子是语言使用的基本单位，它用于表达一个相对完整的思想，达到交际的目的。我们在前面的二十六章中分析了英语用词造句的一些基本规律，包括基本句子结构和句型转换等问题。本章将从整个句子含义表述的角度讨论句中的主题和重心问题。

现代英语的一个特征是具有相对固定的词序，句子成分通常出现在一定的位置，如名词短语中“限定词+名词”，动词短语中“助动词+主要动词”，基础句型中“主语+谓语（或再跟宾语或补语）”，修饰成分定语或状语的位置虽然比较灵活，也有一般规律（见第12章）。在一个句子中，首尾两部分占有突出的地位，前者通常提出该句的主题（THEME，或TOPIC），后者通常代表该句的重心（FOCUS）。

27.2 句子的主题

27.2A 主题的含义

一般的说，句子的第一个成分就是主题，有时句子的开首词即代表主题。例如：

1) 陈述句的主语：

My brother brought a second-hand camera.

2) 一般疑问句中的作用词：

Did he buy a new camera?

3) 特殊疑问句中的 wh 疑问词：

What did your brother buy?

4) 祈使句首的谓语动词:

Buy another camera!

主题是整句含义表达的出发点, 把握主题才能进行有效的交际, 例如在对话中常常根据问句的主题作简略回答:

— *Have you read An American Tragedy?*

— *Yes, I have.*

— *Who wrote it?*

— *Theodore Dreiser.*

— *When did he write it?*

— *1925.*

反之, 如果没有把主题扣紧, 就会不同程度地“离题。”例如:

A: *Could you show me some new paper cuts?*

B: *They've been spoilt by my son.*

A: *What's been spoilt by your son?*

B: *He spoilt the new paper cuts.*

上述 A 第一次用的是一般疑问句, *could* 表示客气的口吻; B 应当用 “*Yes/Certainly*”, 或 “*No/Sorry*” 一类回答, 比如: *Sorry, I can't (show you any), because they've all been spoiled by my son.* B 的第二次回答也还是不太针对问句中的主题 “*what*”, 应改用简略回答: “*The new paper cuts (have been spoiled by my son).*”

注意: 连词、连接性副词以及某些前位状语等, 它们可能也出现在某个句子 (或分句) 的开头, 但不代表该句的主题, 因为它们只是为了结构上的需要, 或表示语气, 本身并无实质性的内容。例如下述句子中的斜体部分均非主题。

If they open all the windows, then I'm leaving.

We have complained several times about the noise, *and yet* he does nothing about it.

Several of the conspirators have been arrested but their leader is as yet unknown. *Meanwhile*, the police are continuing their investigations into the political sympathies of the group.

Now the whole matter is satisfactorily settled.

• *Well*, this coat will suit you perfectly.

27.2B 主题性前置

把句子中依照一般词序较晚出现的词语移至句首，使之占据主题的位置，称为主题性前置(THEMATIC FRONTING)，这种提前的成分叫做有标记主题(MARKED THEME)，而前面 27.2A 中所述的四种情况均为无标记主题 (UNMARKED THEME)。

有标记主题都是作为强调成分在句首出现，并常常是在上下文的连接或对比中达到强调目的。例如：

1) 主语补语的前置：

We really should not resent being called paupers. *Paupers* we are, and *paupers* we shall remain.

There were now only five minutes in the second half.

Keener and keener the competition became.

You remember that man who knifed Bull Mac Gregor?

George Bailey, he's called.

—Don't tell me you're eighty-five.

—But *eighty-five* I am, every single day.

2) 宾语补语的前置：

They are now living in a villa at the seaside. *Luxury* you may call it, but happiness it isn't.

Chairman of the committee they elected Eleanor, an in-

telligent young man from Edinburgh.

I knew you were careless, but *dishonest* I never thought you.

As we drove there, not a soul was to be found. However, *scattered on the floor* we saw torn papers, emptied cans and broken glasses—obviously, the house had been hurriedly deserted not long before,

3) 宾语的前置:

Self-knowledge he seeks, and *self-respect* he keeps.

Her appearance you may not find attractive, but *her character* you will certainly admire.

有时在被前置的宾语后边加上逗号,使其地位更加突出;有时在宾语原来的位置再用一个代词。例如:

Stamps, he had collected from the pre-war period when he was then only in his teens.

That soup, I found it totally disgusting!

That man, I thought you told me, you were never going to see *him* again.

27.2C 引起倒装的主题性前置

有时主题性前置会引起主谓倒装,包括完全倒装和部分倒装:完全倒装就是整个谓语移到主语之前,部分倒装只是作用词位于主语之前。引起倒装的主题性前置主要有:

1) 主语补语前置有时引起倒装,这是由于主语较长较复杂而补语简短,须通过倒装使句子结构平稳,或为使上下文联系紧密而把补语前置。例如:

The cave was indeed a treasure house, *Everywhere* were diamonds, jades, rubies and many other precious stones, and necklaces, ear-rings, bracelets, and piles of jewel

boxes.

Every item (of the acrobatic show) was attractive, and most fascinating was the moment when the man, his wife and son were demonstrating stunt cycling.

What Uncle Coroy did was important, but more important was the way he did things.

2) 谓语句前置系指将谓语句中的主要动词(有时连同宾语或补语)移至主语之前形成倒装,原有情态助动词位置仍在主语之后,若谓语句中没有情态助动词,则须在主语后加 *do* 的适当形式。例如:

I've promised to do it, so *do it* I shall.

Finding a creek in her front, the goat wondered what to do:

swim, she dare not; return, she couldn't, for the wolf might have been in pursuit.

Knock, indeed, he *did* at door, but not with one of those gentle raps.

"He will only go and spend it." And *spend it* Sholto *did*.

3) 带有强调性修饰语的宾语前置时,也会引起部分倒装。例如:

Many a rabbit had he snared, without the game-keeper noticing it.

Greater efforts should we make to improve our insurance business.

有时,宾语前置是强调其反面的意思,带有讽刺含义,也常用部分倒装。例如:

Much good may Liverpool do you.

So much care did she take of her son that she had the child completely spoilt.

4) 状语前置引起倒装的句型有:

a) A + V + S

句型中的状语 A 多为方位或声色词, 谓语句动词 V 为 come, go 等表示位置移动的动词, 主语 S 为较长的名词短语。例如:

The door burst open and in rushed the crowd.

Higher and higher flew the white balloon till it vanished in the clouds.

Click-click went the wearing loom.

Bang! bang! bang! came three reports of fire-crackers and Philip suddenly felt his body become light.

Now came great news! Stunning news — joyous news, in fact.

如果主语为代词, 则主、谓间仍用正常词序。例如:

Lower and lower he bent till his fingers touched his toes.

Away they went into the night.

上述句型中的 A 若为方式或频度状语等, 有时可能引起局部或完全倒装。例如:

By hook or by crook did she manage to get into the upper society.

Thus began an intricate minuet between us and the Chinese.

Many a time has Mike given me good advice.

Often did we have chance to see her at the entrance.

b) Prep. Phrase + V + S

句首为表示地点的介词短语, 其后的谓语句动词有时是和处在主题位置的介词宾语保持“数”的一致。例如:

To such thermometers are attributed the accuracy of much of the work done in low-temperature physics since 1951. In this chapter will be found a partial answer.

Behind him hung his photograph, taken in Mecca.

Close by the church ran a stream, choked with green scum except where the cattle went down to drink.

C) Negator (否定词) + BE + S

句首状语为否定词或带否定含义的词语, BE 为一般现在时或过去时。例如:

No longer these days is it necessary for women to spend hours of drudgery in the kitchen.

No wider than a foot was the space between the goalkeeper and the post, but Garth banged the ball into the back of the net.

上述句型中的谓语动词若是其他的动词形式, 则采用局部倒装。例如:

Never have I been in such a tight corner.

No longer should women put up with less pay for equal work.

In no other town will you find such a wide variety of restaurants.

Hardly had he got to the office when his boss wanted to see him.

At no time during his speech did the politician mention that he had advocated the opposite policy only two years before.

I didn't agree with him yesterday, nor will I tomorrow.

To few people does such an opportunity occur.

Rarely do I get into his office alone,

使用这类句型时必须注意几点:

i) 倒装句型中的 **no** 往往是由正常词序时的 **not + any** 转化而来。例如:

I had not felt so dismayed at any other time in my life.

— **At no other time in my life, had I felt so dismayed.**

The switch must not be left on under any circumstances.

— **Under no circumstances must the switch be left on.**

ii) 如果句首否定词只用于局部否定而非全句否定 (即否定范围包括整个句子), 则一般不引起倒装。试比较:

Not until he had dropped to 1800 feet did David find himself in clear sky. (全句否定引起倒装)

Not every horse can run fast. (局部否定不引起倒装)

iii) **hardly, scarcely** 后边的谓语动词若为不及物动词, 则不引起倒装。试比较:

Hardly a single essay did he do last term, that's why he failed.

(a single essay 为及物动词 **do** 的宾语)

Hardly a day goes by without something new around us.

(go by 为不及物动词组)

iv) 如果句首状语的否定意义已为随后的另一否定词语所抵消, 有时不再引起倒装。例如:

Not infrequently they go abroad by airbus. (= They often go abroad by airbus.)

注意强调口气时仍然要倒装。例如:

Not for nothing is his collection of vintage cars famous.

(= It is perfectly reasonable that his collection of

vintage cars is famous.)

d) only + A + 局部倒装

此句型 only 后边可能跟副词、介词词组或状语分句等。

例如:

Only then did he realize that he should have booked tickets two weeks earlier.

Only through sheer luck did he manage to get so many shares in the business.

Only because there were some cancelled bookings did he get a few copies of the publications.

e) so...that

此句型中 so + 形容词或副词位于句首, 后跟局部倒装(动词为 BE 的一般现在时或过去时则应完全倒装), 然后接 that 分句。

例如:

So quickly did the workmen finish their work *that* they were given a bonus.

So small was the mark *that* I could hardly see it.

So slippery is the road *that* few people can walk there without a fall.

So much did he worry about his financial position *that* he didn't sleep a wink.

关于 so 在简短答语中表示“也是”时引起倒装, 表示“是的、确实”含义时不引起倒装的用法, 参见 26.3A7)。

27.3 句子的重心

27.3A 重心的含义

英语句子的重心通常都在尾部, 即比较重要的内容或结构较为复杂的成分一般都出现在句末。所谓“头重脚轻”的句子不好, 就是因为它不符合英语句法的一般表达习惯。为了使句子重

心置于尾部，在用词造句上也有一些讲究。

1) 通常避免或不用单一不及物动词作谓语，而用相同含义的动宾结构。例如下述右边的表达形式：

He smokes. — He smokes cigarettes.

They rested. — They took/had a rest.

The man shouted. — The man gave a shout.

She tried: — She had a try.

(Please sit.) — Please take a seat.

(I'll look.) — I'll have a look.

同样为了突出尾部重心，有时还将单纯的动宾结构改作同义的复杂动宾结构。例如：

He pushed the screen. — He gave the screen a push.

I've visited her. — I've paid her a visit.

He kicked the door — He gave the door a kick.

We'll invite her. — We'll send her an invitation.

(She often advised me.) — She often gave me advice.

(Did he answer you?) — Did he give you an answer?

2) 当句子结构较为复杂时，通常是将最重要的成分置于句尾重心部分。例如下述句子中的结构调整反映出句子重心的变化：

The cross-examination, which was expertly handled, lasted only half an hour.

The cross-examination, which lasted only half an hour, was expertly handled.

The thoroughly exhausted climbers crawled into their bags.

— The climbers crawled into their bags, thoroughly exhausted.

27.3B 后移

通过一定的句型转换，将句首或句中的某个成分移到句尾重心位置，这称为后移 (POSTPONEMENT)。

1) 主语的后移：名词性分句、非限定动词不定式，-ING 分词等作主语时，往往用 IT 作形式主语，而将真正的主语后移(参看17, 20, 24)。例如：

It is certain that virtue never grows old.

It matters not how a man dies, but how he lives,

It doesn't matter much whether we go together or separately.

It is not clear what caused the accident.

It is better to be a martyr than a confessor.

It is hard sailing when there is no wind.

注意：以 *whoever*, *whomever*, *whatever* 等引导的名词性分句作主语不能后移。例如：

Whoever visits Hangzhou will be attracted by its scenery, the magnificent view of West Lake in particular.

— * *It will be attracted ...*

Whatever I have is at your service.

— * *It is at your service ...*

2) 宾语后移：一是将直接宾语移到间接宾语、宾补或状语等成分之后；二是用 IT 作形式宾语而将真正的宾语移到后边去。例如：

She gave a minibus to her two-year-old son.

I hereby declare open the 21st annual meeting of the International Women's Federation.

We'll leave it to him to decide what measures should be taken.

The medical workers consider *it* their duty *that they must do their best to heal the wounded and rescue the dying.*

The engineer in his prime finds *it* most rewarding *applying what he has learned to the modernizations of his motherland.* •

This pamphlet has explained clearly *most of the question you've listed here.*

3) 定语或同位语的后移: 充当主语的名词短语中心词, 如果带有结构比较复杂的不定式结构、*that* 分句或介词短语作后置定语或同位语时, 常将它们移至句尾, 以保持句子结构的平衡。这种后移又称分隔 (SEPARATION), 多发生在谓语动词为不及物动词或被动结构中。例如:

The loaf *that you sold me yesterday* was stolen.

→The loaf was stolen *that you sold me yesterday.*

The time to face the facts squarely has now come.

→The time has now come *to face the facts squarely.*

Stories of how people have lived for several weeks without food are sometimes told.

→Stories are sometimes told *of how people have lived for several weeks without food.*

An order *that no language but German be taught in the school* came from Berlin.

→An order came from Berlin *that no language but German be taught in the school.*

此外, 表示“除……外”的介词词组或反身代词也往往后移。

例如:

All the essays are on literature *except Herman's.*

All the pupils have passed, *not excepting the poorest.*

Everybody thinks so *but your elder brother.*

There is nothing to be seen there *but a wide stretch of water.*

Children should learn to do their washing *themselves.*

Jean tried to dissuade **Charles** *herself.*

4) 表示比较或程度的状语分句也常常往后移。例如:

More people buy colour TV sets today than used to be in the last few years.

Pat has spent *less time on his work than he ought to have done.*

He was so *excited by the news that he did not know what to do.*

The young man was too irritated by her to restrain his *anger.*



第二十八章 变体与共核

28.1 引言

形式(FORM), 意义(MEANING)和使用(USE), 是我们语法教学中的三个环节。所谓形式, 主要指词形变化和句型结构。意义与形式密切相关。一般说来, 不同的形式表示的意义不相同, 这叫异形异义。但在许多情况下, 不同形式表示的意义却相同, 这是异形同义。另外, 同样的语言形式所表示的含义有时不同, 这是同形异义。不论同义还是异义, 不能光看形式, 而往往要结合句子的情境或上下文来分析确定, 即要结合具体使用。使用是语言形式和意义的结合, 我们学习语法的目的在于帮助我们使用语言。有时, 从词形变化和句子结构的角度看, 某个句子是正确的, 但从使用角度看, 它可能用得不恰当, 或者叫做“不得体。”当然, 如何做到使用得体, 不完全是语法问题, 本章仅从变体与共核(VARIETIES AND COMMON CORE)的角度加以初步探讨。

28.2 变体与共核的含义

28.2A 英语中的变体

英语作为一种广泛使用的国际语言, 具有种种大同小异的形式, 包括在不同的国家或地区的差别(如英国英语和美国英语), 不同的题材或交际方式中的差别(如科技英语、新闻英语、口头语、书面语等), 还有不同文化程度、不同社会地位以及不同说话态度中间的差异, 等等, 这些统称之为英语中的“变体”, 其中

“态度变体” (ATTITUDINAL VARIETIES) 又包括诸如严肃的 (rigid)、客气的 (polite)、熟悉的 (familiar)、正式的 (formal)、非正式的 (informal) 等种种不同的用法。例如:

{ He's got to stay in the county town at the weekend.
(Br E)

{ He's gotten/got to stay in the county seat on the weekend.
(AmE)

{ Shut the door, will you? (familiar)

{ would you please shut the door? (polite)

{ I wondered if you would mind shutting the door? (more polite)

{ If we didn't use water power, we would need much more coal and oil to generate electricity. (usual way of speaking)

{ But for the utilization of hydroelectric resources, much greater requirements of fuels would there be for the generation of electricity. (technical language)

{ The weather turned better, and players and spectators all enjoyed the game. (informal)

{ As the weather improved, both players and spectators enjoyed the game. (a little more formal)

{ The weather having improved, the game was enjoyed by players and spectators alike. (rather formal)

28.2B 共核

英语中的变体虽然很多,但变体之间还是存在一些基本的共同点,包括语法或其他方面的相同特征。这些称作英语中的“共核” (COMMON CORE/NUCLEUS OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE)。这里我们介绍某些介乎正式的书面语和非正式的口

语之间的词汇和句子结构形式。例如：

在 children, offspring, kids 三个词中, children (子女) 属于“共核”词汇, offspring (后裔) 用于正式场合, kids (小孩) 用于非正式英语或熟人之间的话语中。

再让我们看看下面三个句子：

(i) When his dad died, Tom had to get another job.

(ii) On the decease of his father, Mr. Brown was obliged to seek alternative employment.

(iii) After his father's death, Peter had to change his job.

上述三句的基本含义相同, 适用于不同的场合: 句 (i) 用于熟人、朋友之间的谈话, 句 (ii) 只宜用于相当正式的场合, 而句 (iii) 属于共核形式, 在比较正式的或非正式的场合都可以用, 即用在句 (i) 或句 (ii) 的场合也能过得去。

鉴于目前通用的标准英语结构复杂, 变体太多, 不易为非英语国家的学生所掌握, 英国 Quirk 教授等语言学家在阐明英语“共核”的基础上进一步提出建立“核心英语”体系的设想, 如根据通用和易学的原则严格挑选词汇, 并调整和简化语法项目, 例如用“Is that so?”这种形式取代所有的附加疑问形式, 避免使用非限制性定语从句, 以及明确规定情态助动词的使用, 等等。Quirk 认为, 设计和使用“核心英语”虽然是一件很难办的事, 但只要根据国际交往的需要, 坚持不懈地进行探索和试验, “核心英语”终将成为现实, 并成为一种理想的教学模式。

对于我们一般的英语学习者来说, 首先是要熟悉一些主要的英语变体。下面我们将美国英语与英国英语的区别以及口头英语与书面英语的区别作些简要介绍。

28.3 美国英语和英国英语

美国英语 (AmE) 和英国英语 (BrE) 从发音、拼法到句法都

有某些差别，其中词汇方面的差异较多。这里仅就词法与句法两方面作些简要对比。

28.3A 词法对比

1) 有 200 多个不同的词语，包括：

文化教育方面的不同用语，如：

AmE	BrE	AmE	BrE
alumna 女校友 (pl. -nae)	graduate	attorney 律师	barrister, solicitor
alumnus 男校友, (pl. -ni) 毕业生(有时用复数 兼指男女)		auditorium 礼堂	assembly hall
		caption 标题	heading
		commencement 毕业典礼	graduation ceremony

AmE

elective subject 选修科

faculty 全体教员

graduate student 研究生

instructor (专任) 讲师

memorize 熟记

movie (the movies) 电影

president 大学校长

principal 中小学校长

required subject 必修科

schedule 时间表

semester 学期

vocation 假期

衣、食、住等方面的不同用语，如：

clothes-pin 晒衣夹

custom clothes 定做的衣服

BrE

optional subject

staff (of a school)

postgraduate (student)

lecturer

learn by heart

film (the cinema, the pictures)

chancellor

headmaster

compulsory subject

timetable

term

holidays

clothes-peg

clothes made to measure

pants长裤	trousers
shoe-strings鞋带	[shoe-laces
shorts短(衬)裤	underpants
undershirt汗衫	vest
vest背心	waistcoat
bar酒吧间	public house
candy糖果	sweets
canned goods罐头食品	tinned goods
cracker饼干	biscuit
dessert餐后甜食	sweet course
menu菜单	bill of fare
rare meat半熟的肉	underdone meat
apartment公寓住宅	flat
basement地下室	cellar
checkroom衣帽间	cloakroom
country-house别墅	villa
elevator电梯	lift
first floor一楼	ground floor
living room起居室	sitting room
second floor(third, fourth, etc floor)二楼(三楼、四楼等)	first floor(second,third,etc. floor)
stairway楼梯	staircase
toilet盥洗室	lavatory
transom门顶窗	fanlight
garbage can垃圾箱	dustbin, rubbish-bin
(a) take-away(meal)买回家里吃	(a) carryout (meal)
交通运输及通讯方面的不同用语, 如:	
airplane飞机	aeroplane

automobile	汽车	car
baggage	行李	luggage
central office	电话总局	telephone exchange
commutation ticket	月季票	season ticket
depot	车站	station
freight train	货运列车	goods train
hang up	挂断(电话)	ring off
highway	公路	main road
locomotive engineer	火车司机	engine driver
long-distance call	长途电话	trunk call
mail(to mail a letter)	邮政	post(to post a letter)
one-way ticket	(round-trip ticket)	single ticket(return ticket)
	单程(往返)票	
package	包裹	parcel
pedestrian crossing	人行横道	zebra crossing
radio	无线电	wireless
sidewalk	人行道	pavement
street car	有轨电车	tram car
subway	地下铁道	tube, underground
telephone booth	公共电话室	public telephone box
服务行业及商业方面的不同用语, 如:		
barber-shop	理发店	barber's shop
beauty parlor	美容室	ladies' hairdresser
store	商店	shop
clerk	店员	shop assistant
drug store	药房	chemist('s), chemist's shop
eye glasses	眼镜	spectacles
flash-light	手电筒	torch

gas(oline)汽油

petrol

hardware store五金店

ironmonger's

incorporated company有限责任公司 limited(liability) company

instalment plan分期付款购货法

hire purchase

2) 有些词的拼写不同。试比较:

AmE

BrE

(-l) traveler

(-ll) traveller

leveling

levelling

(-er) center theater maneuver

(-re)centre theatre manœuvre

(-or)labor honor color

(-our)labour honour colour

(-og)dialog catalog travelog

(-ogue)dialogue catalogue

travelogue

(-ize) realize

(-ize/-ise)realize/realise

modernize

modernize/modernise

此外还有少数单词拼法上有差异, 如:

AmE

BrE

check

cheque(from a bank)

pajamas

pyjamas

plow

plough

practice(verb)

practise

program, gram

programme, gramme

cf: diagram, telegram

diagram, telegram

spocialty

speciality

tire

tyre(on a car)

story

storoy (a floor in a building)

cigaret

cigarette

3) 有些动词变化或读音不相同。例如:

AmE

eat-ate(读/eit/)

dive-dove

lean-leaned/leant

signal-signaled-signaling

spell-spelled

spit-spit-spit

4) 某些习语的组合搭配(主要是介词)有所不同。例如:

AmE

a half hour; a half dozen

atcp

cash on hand

check something out

5/12/84:May12, 1984

off-key(走调的)

scold somebody

do something over

fill in/out a form

fix up

line up

meet with somebody

protest something

stay home

visit with somebody

from September through November from September to November

yield

EBr

eat-ate(读/et/)

dive-dived/dove

lean-leant/leaned

signal-signalled-signalling

spell-spelt/spelled

spit-spat-spat

BrE

half an hour; half a dozen

on top of, at the top of

cash in hand

check something

5/12/84: December 5, 1984

out of tune

chew somebody out

do something again

fill in a form

mend, repair

queue

meet somebody

protest against something

stay at home

visit somebody

from September through November from September to November

yield
way give

28.3B 句法对比

1) 时态方面, 美国英语在口语中用一般过去时代替现在完

成体。例如：

AmE

BrE

Did you eat yet?

Have you eaten yet?

He just went home.

He's just gone home.

下述段落中的两处斜体部分为一般过去时，也应作现在完成体理解：

“Richard,” he said, and felt the boy, slumped and rubbing his eyes, go tense at his tone, “I *didn't* come to meet you just to make your life easier. I *came* because your mother and I have some news for you, and you're a hard man to go ahold of these days. It's sad news.”
(to go ahold of 为非正式用语，意思相当于 to communicate with)

2) 语气方面，美国英语中通用 BE 型虚拟式。例如：

Congress has voted that the present law *continue* to operate.

cf: Parliament has voted that the present law *should continue/continue* to operate. (BrE)

It's essential that he *be* informed.

cf: ... that he *should be* informed. (BrE)

3) 基本助动词 HAVE, AM 使用上也有些差别。例如：

I *don't* have any books. (AmE)

cf: I *haven't* any books. (BrE)

I am not to blame, *ain't* I? (AmE)

cf: ..., *aren't* I? (BrE)

另外，美国人常用 I have, I can, I might 等代替英国人的 I have done, I can do, I might do 等。美国英语中也惯于用 “have (got) to” 代替英国英语中的 “must” 表示 “义务”、“职

责”等：Do you have to do that? / Have you got to do that?

4) 集体名词作主语时，英国英语中较常用复数谓语动词相呼应，美国英语中多用单数形式的谓语动词呼应。例如：

The audience *was* (AmE) / *were* (BrE) enjoying every minute of the show.

Our Planning Committee *has* (AmE) / *have* (BrE) considered your request and you will soon be informed of the decision.

5) 动词 *get* 在英国英语里只有一种 *-ed* 形式 (*got*)，而在美国英语里则有两种 (*got, gotten*)。

6) 美国英语里较多出现冠词或介词的省略现象，如：

AmE

BrE

I met her *Tuesday*.

I met her *on Tuesday*.

He works *nights* as a fireman. He works *at night* as a stoker.

They studied math *all*

They studied maths *all the*

summer.

summer.

She'll come *day after*

She'll come *the day after*

tomorrow.

tomorrow

7) 其他日常用语中还有一些不同的表达形式，如：

AmE

BrE

Excuse me?

Sorry?

(=I beg your pardon.)

(=I beg your pardon.)

Bye now.

Cheerio.

(=Goodbye.)

(=Goodbye.)

(Speaking on the phone)

Hello, is *this* Harold?

Hello, is *that* Harold?

It looks *like* it's going to

It looks *as if* it's going to

rain.
He looked at me *real* strange.

rain.
He looked at me *really*
strange.

28.4 口语与书面语

28.4A 句法上的几点主要区别

这里所指的“口语”(SPOKEN ENGLISH), 是日常会话所用的标准英语, 也包括熟悉的人之间通讯中的英语; 而“书面语”(WRITTEN ENGLISH) 指通常在书籍、报刊文章或正式书信中用的英语, 也包括公开演说或正式会谈中所用的英语。口语和书面语的特点, 一般也代表非正式语言与正式语言的特点, 这是英语中两种最主要的、最常见的变体。

1) 口语中的句子结构比书面语来得松散, 如经常出现有省略与重复, 并常插进 *well, er(m), I think, you know, of course, and so on* 等口语补白(FILLER), 试看下面两人对话的记录;

— ... But no one wants that house, *you see*.

—*Why?*

—*Well —er—the truth, you know, the truth is— erm —*

—GO on; go on. Don't you want to sell the house? Is it in a bad state?

— Oh, no, *I mean—er—well, it's in good order. I say—er—it is—er—in good order. But—erm—*

2) 口语中的句子一般比较简短, 定语分句或状语分句都用得少, 分句间常以 *and, but, then* 和 *if* 等连接。例如:

The box was heavy *and* I couldn't carry it. (=The box was so heavy that I couldn't carry it.)

There's no doubt *but* (=that) he's the guilty one.

What shall We do, *then?* (then=in that case) Swim?

You must ask John to the party, *then* (=besides) Paul

and Mark as well.

We'll go *even if* it rains. (= We'll go ,whether it rains or not.)

与此相反，书面语的句子结构通常复杂得多，也严谨得多；即使出现“多枝共干”，也层次分明。例如：

A man *who* turned into a human torch ten days ago *after* snoozing in his locked car *while* smoking his pipe has died in hospital.

We hope *that* English Grammar for Today will serve as a valuable tool for students, *however* little their knowledge of grammatical terms, *and* also for teachers, *whether* inclined more to a traditional or a modern approach, *who* believe *that* a return to a vigilant and well-informed attitude towards the language *they use and love* is long overdue.

3) 口语中习惯用“主语+谓语”句型，附加疑问句十分常见，但很少用被动句。例如：

Mrs. Poot: What are the men doing inside the Relf building? Are they going to pull it down, do you think?

Mrs. Dill: Pull it down? I don't know, Mrs. poot. But it's a very old building, isn't it?

Mrs. Crabb: Pulling it down? Why?

Mrs. Dill: Perhaps they'll build a new school there, won't they?

Mrs. Crabb. A new school! That's good news, isn't it?

Mrs. Poot: Indeed! But everything they do here — they do it far too slowly, don't they?

28.4B 前置、后移与口语和书面语的关系

前面第26章讲到句首主题时有前置、讲到句尾重心时又有后移。不论前置或后移，都是英语句子通常语序的特殊变化，一般适用于书面语。

1) 英语句子的一般规律是重心置于尾部，主题前置多见于比较正式的书面英语中。例如：

As computers can make calculations at very high speeds,
all these problems a computer will take in its stride.
(宾语前置)

Of all the early examples of science fiction, the fantastic
stories of Jules Vern are the most remarkable. (定语前
置)

An atom is made up like a solar system. *In the center*
is something like our sun, of great mass — the nucleus.
(表语前置)

It seems yet premature to talk of failure. *Fail* the play
does when read; but who of its judges have seen it
acted? (谓语动词前置)

当然，口语中也有使用主题前置的情况，如在紧接前面的话
语时：

Don't you know his name? Well, *Joseph* his name is,
and we often call him Jo ffor short. (表语前置)

We stopped there last night and had a nice drink. *Really*
good cocktails they made at that hotel! (宾语前置)

Teacher: This time, I'll let you write a poem.

-Student: *Write a poem* I can't, sir; let me write an essay
instead. (谓语动词及宾语前置)

2) 以否定词开首的倒装句属于状语的主题性前置。这类

句型较多，用得相当普遍。它们结构紧凑，有较强的书面语味道，但也会出现在有较高文化素养者的口语中。例如：

She received her cheque for half-a-million pounds, but *not even then* could she believe it.

The problem was so complicated that *not even* after the teacher had explained it to me could I work it out myself.

Not for one minute do I think I have any hope of passing the exam, but I might as well try.

When I was at school, *on no account* were we allowed to answer the masters back.

Not only did the garage overcharge me, but they hadn't done a very good repair job either.

No wider than a foot was the space between the goalkeeper and the post, but Cruyff banged the ball into the back of the net.

No sooner had he got to the office *than* his boss wanted to see him.

Because he had overslept, *scarcely* did he have time to dress...

3) 被动结构不常用于口语，因为在较多情况下被动句是为了重心后移，即将被动执行者移到 BE + -ed 后面的 by 词组中；也可能是只强调动作而不提动作执行者。例如：

The book (The Canterbury Tales) was written *by Geoffrey Chaucer*.

So far as I know, America was discovered in the 10th or 11th century *by Norsemen*.

Such practice *must be totally done away with*, young man.

Do not rob peter to pay Paul; that *should be avoided*.

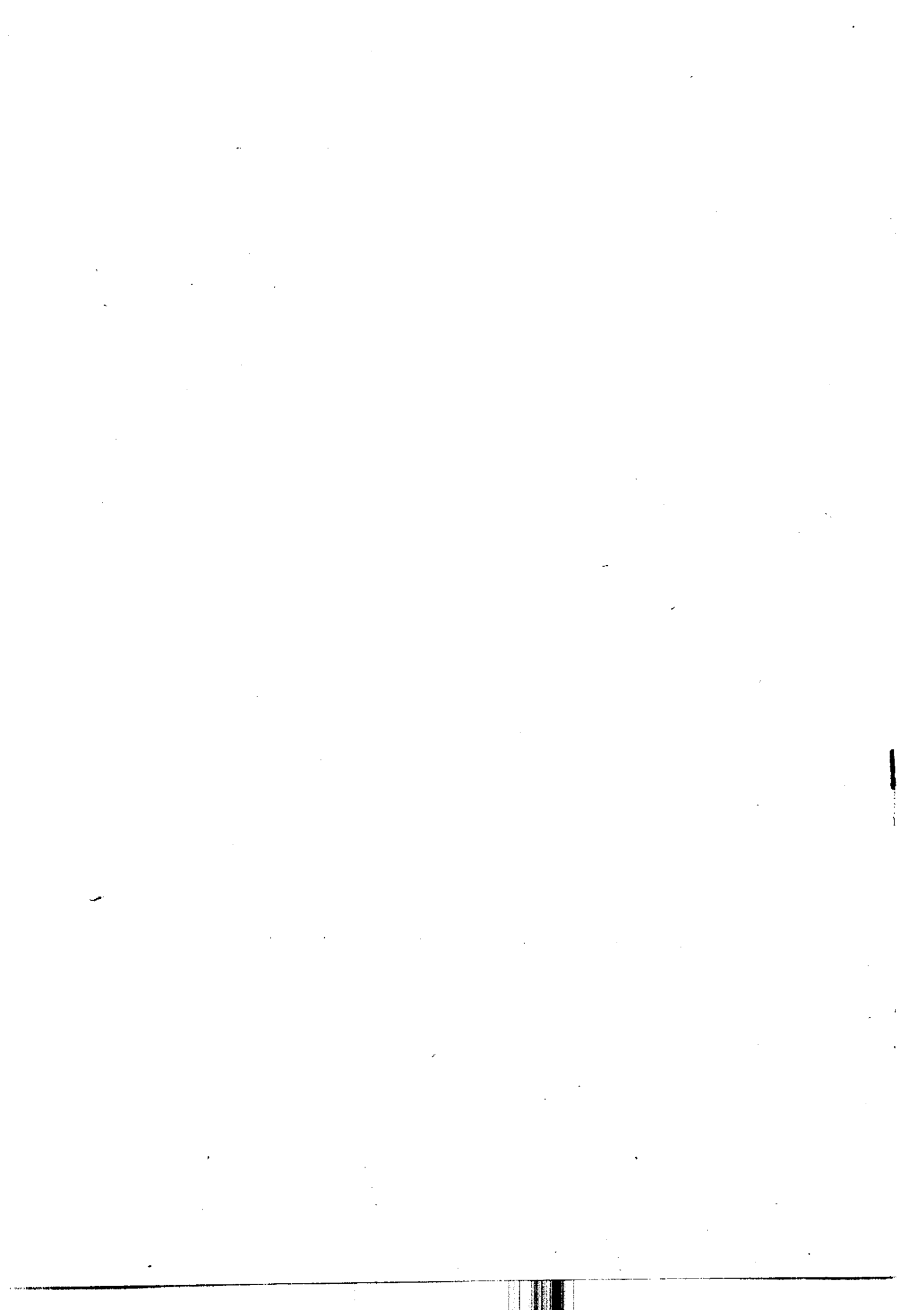
有时,使用被动结构是主题前移,即为了强调宾语,将宾语提到主题的位置。这类句中不带 by 词组。例如:

What will be dealt with tomorrow? Theme and focus
(will be dealt with tomorrow).

The man took his horse and two bags of corn to the market for sale. *His horse* was sold out but *the corn* wasn't (sold out).

Gold was discovered in northern California in 1848; and *the first railroad line* was built in 1876 to connect Los Angeles with the rest of the country...

Some major, and very significant changes have been proposed for the revision of the constitution since its draft was made public for nationwide discussion.



第二十九章 语法分析与话语分析

29.1 引言

语法分析(GRAMMATICAL ANALYSIS)和话语分析(DISCOURSE ANALYSIS)的对象有所不同:前者的对象是语句,主要讨论用词语句,而后者的对象是语段,着重研究句子如何构成语言段落或篇章。当然,两者之间又存在着密切的联系:话语分析须以句子为基础,用词造句又应结合话语分析。我们在前面各章的行文及举例中常常涉及到某种句子结构在上下文中的使用,就是联系话语分析。

话语分析可以从不同的角度进行,有的对自然会话进行解剖,有的将某个特定环境里的话语加以分析,也有的从形式与功能的关系出发开展研究,等等。本章就日常交际话语、语句衔接和话语结构等方面作些初步介绍,作为从语法分析引向话语分析的桥梁。

29.2 日常交际话语

前面一章曾经提到过,一种语言形式(或结构)可能具有不同的含义(或功能),而不同的语言形式也可用来表示同样的含义。这在英语日常会话中,是十分常见的现象。例如:

May I have a beefsteak (, please)?

Give me a beefsteak (, please).

I want a beefsteak (, please).

上述三句话形式不同,分别为疑问句、祈使句和陈述句,但

含义相似,都是为了达到一个目的:要(买)一客牛排。试比较下面四句。虽然它们都是 DON'T YOU ...? 疑问句型, 含义却不一样:

i) It's a fine book, *don't you agree?*

(这是本好书, 你同意吧?)

ii) *Don't you think we should go and see the Lunghua Pagoda?*

(你不觉得我们该去看看龙华塔?)

(iii) It's a wonderful concert. *Don't you want to go with us?*

(这是个精采的音乐会, 你(难道)不想跟我们去?)

(iv) Why are you driving so fast? *Don't you know the traffic regulations?*

(为什么开得这么快? 难道你不懂交通规则?)

上述句 (i) 表面上是询问对方意见, 实际上是要别人同意自己的看法; 句 (ii) 是以反问的形式提出建议, 流露出一种迫切心情; 句 (iii) 表示难以理解对方的态度, 带有惊异情绪; 句 (iv) 是质问, 带有批评教训别人的口吻。这说明, 即使是同一种类型的疑问句, 也会有含义上的种种不同。在日常会话中, 还有时疑问句的语序结构用降调, 成了感叹句, 而陈述句的语序结构用升调, 又成为疑问句。例如:

{ — She did not sing but only move her mouth to the music.
— *Did she look funny! / Wasn't she terrible!*
{ *The train is already in?*
{ Yes. Hurry, Sir.

以上所述形式与含义的不一致性, 是日常交际话语中的显著特点; 其另一个特点是习语很多, 例如某个场合的开头语、结束语及一些常见话题的表达均有一定的(或常用的)形式, 兹分别举

例加以说明。

29.2A 开头用语

1) 介绍别人会面时, 如果介绍人说:

Tony, this is Elaine. (informal)

Mrs Green, I'd like you to meet Mr Bridges. / Let me
introduce you to Mr Bridges. (formal)

被介绍者则可以相互说:

{ Elaine: Hello, Tony. / Hi, Tony. (USA) (informal)
{ Tony: Hello, Elaine. / Hi, Elaine.

Mr Bridges: How do you do? / How are you? (USA)
Pleased to meet you.

Mrs Green: How do you do? / How are you?
Pleased to meet you.

2) 熟人见面时打招呼:

轻松随便: Hello, Paul. / Hi, Sue. (USA)

较正式: Good morning./Good afternoon. / Good evening.

客气: A: (Nice to see you.) How are you?

B: Very well, thank you. / Fine, thanks,

And how are you? / And you?

A: Fine, thanks. / Very well, thanks.

OK, thanks. / Not too bad, thanks.

3) 打电话:

向电话员要求找某地某人通话:

Operator, please get me Paris. / I want Los Angeles, 213,
please.

/ Please put me through to New York. / I want to make
a long distance call to Mr Smith in New Delhi.

对受话人讲话:

Hello. This is Carl. / Carl here. / Carl speaking.

Can I speak to Maria? / Is Maria there, please? / Is that Tucker? / Is this Elaine? (USA)

Who's speaking? / Who am I speaking to, please?

4) 写信开首语:

对熟人称呼: Dear Brian, / Dear Mrs Moody,

对生疏者称呼: Dear Sir, / Dear Madam,

书信正文开头语:

Pardon me, though a stranger to you personally. for taking liberty to address you these few lines.

I must apologize for not having written to you previously.

I must request your indulgence for having so long neglected to reply to your last letter.

I am very sorry that I have not written to you for such a long time, since I wrote to you last.

29.2B 结束用语

1) 话别时的用语, 一般为 Goodbye, 还有一些告别用语, 如:

Well, I must be going now. / I have to go now. Goodbye, Phil.

(I'll) See you (later).

Bye! / Bye-bye! / Cheerio, / So long. (informal)

Good night. / See you tomorrow.

See you on Monday.

2) 书信结束语

对生疏人: Yours faithfully

对熟人: Yours sincerely / Sincerely yours (USA)

对好朋友: Yours ever / Yours

对亲爱者: Yours affectionately / Love (from)

在上述词语下边是写信人的签名, 上边是书信结尾时的话语, 如表示问候或祝愿:

With kind regards to your family.

My kindest regards to your family.

Pray give my best remembrances to Mr Johnson.

Pray present my kind respects to Mrs John Jones.

My wife unites with me in kind remembrance.

With best wishes to your safe arrival.

Wishing you a pleasant journey.

With every good wish!

或者使用暂告结束的话语, 如:

Adieu till then.

When I see you, I will give you the details.

As regards this, however, and other I will write more fully early next week.

或者表示感谢对方的关照, 如:

Thanking you for your courteous attention.

Most grateful for all your favour,

Please acknowledge the receipt.

或者要求对方复信, 如:

Awaiting your reply.

Write to me as soon as you can.

Please do not fail to write to me. (informal)

I shall feel (most) obliged by a reply at your earliest convenience. (formal)

Kindly favour us with an early reply. (in business)

29.1C 几种类型的常用套语

1) 表示祝愿, 包括祝人家成功的话语, 如:

All the best. / Good luck (in your new job).

I hope everything goes well for you.

I'd like to wish you every success. (more formal)

对休假、旅行或节日、生日等表示祝愿, 如:

Have a good time / holiday / journey.

Enjoy yourself in the trip / vacation.

Merry Christmas. / Happy New Year. / A happy Christmas and a happy New Year to you!

Happy birthday. / Many happy returns (of the day)!

With every good wish for a happy Christmas and a bright New Year (to you)!

2) 表示吊唁、慰问等, 如:

I heard with profound sorrow that your mother, after protracted illness, at length passed away.

How grieved I am to hear of your illness!

I am truly sorry to hear of your sickness.

With heartfelt prayers for your recovery.

3) 请求指导和提出建议, 如:

{ — Could you advise me what to do (first)?
— I think you ought to/should/had better talk to your parents.

{ — What would you do in my position?
— If I were you/If you ask me, I wouldn't leave school yet.

{ — What should I do? / What ought I to do?
— The best thing for you to do is write to your former teacher.

4) 提议(同别人一道去做某事), 如:

Shall we go for a swim?

What about/How about playing cards/a game of cards?

Why don't we/Why not lie in the sun?

Let's go for a walk (, shall we?)

对别人的提议表示附议, 如:

Good idea. / OK. / Fine. / Yes, let's do that. / Yes, why not?

对别人的提议表示推辞, 如:

Well, I was just going to do some shopping.

I don't feel like playing cards. / I don't like playing cards, actually.

I'm sorry, it's too hot for me. Let's go to the club instead.

That would be nice, but I have to meet someone at the airport.

5) 劝说(别人做某事), 如:

Why don't you join the club?

Why not? All your friends will go.

Go on. / Come on. You could try it./You might enjoy it.

对别人劝说的反应, 如:

Oh, all right then. I'll do it.

I'm sorry, I don't want to.

Well, I'll think about it. / Let me think it over.

6) 向别人发出邀请, 如:

Would you like to have dinner with us tomorrow evening?

Will you / Won't you come to my daughter's birthday party?

What about/How about coming to our new house? (informal)

Do you feel like coming / Do you want to come to join us at a tea party? (informal)

表示接受邀请，如：

That's very nice of you. Thank you.

Yes, fine. I'll look forward to it.

Yes, that'll be nice/lovely. I'd be delighted to come.

表示谢绝别人的邀请，如：

Well, that's very kind of you, but I won't be here tomorrow.

I'd love to, but I'm afraid I won't be able to come.

Well, thank you very much, but I'm afraid I can't.

I'm afraid I'll be engaged then, but thank you all the same.

29.3 语句衔接

衔接是语句构成语段或篇章的必要因素，衔接不好，就会出现“下句不接上句”的毛病。英语中的衔接手段主要是通过连接性词语衔接，通过照应关系衔接，通过替代与省略衔接，通过词汇的选用衔接，等等。这些衔接手段之间往往互相渗透(如替代与照应中的某些“重叠”(OVERLAPPING)并且通常是交织使用的。但为了区别它们的不同特点，兹分别加以叙述。

29.3 A 衔接手段之一：运用连接性词语

这里所指的连接性词语包括并列连接词，一些起连接作用的副词性词语、形容词性词语、限定词和介词短语等。它们或表示

意义的引伸、转折，或表示时间地点，等等。本书前面 19.4B 中作过概括说明，这里不再赘述，只摘引一段例子：

Walter's goal in life was to become a successful surgeon. *First*, though, he had to get through school, so he concentrated all his efforts on his studies — in particular, biology and math. *Because* he worked constantly on these subjects, Walter became very proficient in them; *however* Walter forgot that he needed to master other subjects besides those he had chosen. *As a result*, during his junior year of high school, Walter failed both English and Latin. *Consequently*, he had to repeat these subjects *and* he was almost unable to graduate on schedule. *Finally*, on June 6, Walter achieved the first step toward realizing his goal.

29.3B 衔接手段之二：照应

“照应”(REFERENCE)属于语义范畴。有些词项本身不能作语义上的解释，必须结合它们所照应(也称“所指”)的其他词项才能作出解释，于是，这种照应关系使构成衔接。根据照应词项的不同类别，可以分为人称照应、指示照应和比较照应。

1) 用于人称照应的词项包括人称代词，如 she, them, it 等；表示所属关系的限定词，如 her, their, its 等；表示所属关系的代词，如 hers, theirs 等。例如：

The eastern range of desert mountains cast long morning shadows onto the valley floor. *Its* slopes were blackened with thick stands of pinion and juniper trees ...

“Are you from Arizona?” said Diana.

There was a moment of silence after *her* question. *She* thought *she* wasn't going to get an answer ...

If people could learn to value *their* failures as well as

their successes, *they* would profit greatly and would have no time for bitterness and disappointment.

2) 用于指示照应的词项包括 *this*, *these*, *that*, *those* 和 *the* 等, 其中除 *the* 只用于限定词外, 其他几个既可用作指示代词, 也可用作特指限定词; 另外, 副词性指示词 *here*, *there*, *now* *then* 等也可用作指示照应的词项。例如:

I would be delighted if I could learn to communicate with animals. *This* talent would help me discover what animals think and feel about how humans treat them. The creature I would like to talk to the most is the whale. In order to do *this*, I would have to learn ...

He left school in 1830; *now* he was able to go and live in London. *There* he would look after his sick mother and his girl friend Lily.

Mr Norton, my algebra teacher, gave our class a final exam after he had promised as that there would be no final.

The exam contained more than a hundred problems, over half of which we had not been prepared for in the class.

3) 表示比较照应的词项除形容词、副词等的比较结构以外, 还有一些表示比较意义的词语, 如 *same*, *similar* (*ly*), *identical*(*ly*), *such*, *so*, *likewise*, etc. 表示两个比较项(人或物)之间相同, 而 *different*(*ly*), *in contrast*, *by contrast* 表示两者之间的不同。例如:

At first glance, it looks as if there is no element of "present involvement" in this use of the Present Perfect, *any more than* there is in the Simple past;

The thicker the wire, the more freely it will carry current, and the less its resistance.

It is a whole week's journey across the desert. You must pack plenty of food and water. *Likewise*, you'll need warm clothes, so pack them too.

29.3 C 衔接手段之三：替代与省略

替代与省略(参见第二十五章), 不论是属于名词性的, 动词性的还是分句性的, 都能成为句间连接的手段。凡带有替代或省略的句子, 通常可从其上下文中找到被替代或被省略的相应部分, 从而构成前后衔接。例如:

A1: Say, Carol, did you go to the dance at Mr White's last Saturday?

B1. Yes, I *did*.

A2: What kind of dance was *it*? Wasn't *it* a formal one?

B2: Oh, no, *it wasn't*. *It* was just like a discotheque.

A3: Is *that so*? You know, I was also asked to go, but *I didn't*.

B3: *Why not*?

...

上述对话中, 除第一句(A1)外, 其他各句都有替代或省略出现, 它们使话语简洁明快, 又构成句间自然衔接。如第二句(B1)中, *did* 属于动词性替代, 以免重复上句所指的动作; 如果将 *I did* 全部省去, 只答 “Yes.” 也行, 因为它可以作为整个肯定回答句的替代形式, 与上面的一般 (Yes-No) 疑问句相衔接。但是, 如果 B1 句不用上述正常的衔接形式, 而说 *I went to the dance last Saturday* 就要损害句间的衔接, 结果不是“答非所问”也会使人感到不够“对答如流”。

29.3 D 衔接手段之四：词汇选用

所谓词汇选用，主要是指重复使用某词语或用同义词、近义词或反义词等，它们能使听者或读者联系到上下文里出现的其他有关词语，从而达到衔接目的。例如：

He dressel in black that night — a woolen hat, a turtleneck sweater under a short leather flying jacket, trousers tucked into socks, rubber-soled shoes — all black. He would be almost invisible, for London, too, was blacked out.

这段描写的开头、中间和结尾，black 一词重复出现，又有 night, turtleneck, invisible 等引起“黑色”联想的词，加上 ... under ..., ... into ...等意在“暗中”或“隐蔽”的动作或状态等，既起了呼应衔接作用，又烘托出那个特务在黑夜里进行暗中活动的神秘紧张气氛。又如：

Othello has this in common with the tragedy of fortune, that the end in no way blots out from the imagination the glory of the beginning. But the end here does not merely by its darkness throw up into relief the brightness that was. On the contrary, beginning and end chime against each other. In both the value of life and love is affirmed.

当代英国文学评论家 Helen Gardner 在上面这段话中将 end 和 beginning 这对反义词重复使用，作为整段的联系纽带，这样也突出了作者的观点，即《奥赛罗》壮丽的开场和悲剧结尾是必然的，又是统一的，两者都肯定了生命与爱情的价值。

29.4 话语结构模式

话语结构有两种基本类型：线性结构 (Linear Structure) 和层次结构 (Hierarchical Structure)。

29.4A 线性结构

线性结构,是指话语的进程呈线状特征。对话(DIALOGUE)通常属于线性结构,尤其自然会话是如此。例如:

Mariana: Hello, Guillermo. How's life?

Guillermo: Oh, not so good.

Mariana: Why? What's wrong?

Guillermo: Oh, it's hard to make money here.

Felicia: I told you. One year is too short to make money.

Guillermo: In Cuba, the radio from Miami said it was easy.

Mariana: Easy? I've lived here for five years and I think it's hard.

Felicia: Can you hear American Radio in Cuba?

Guillermo: Sure, all the time. They advertise everything.

Mariana: So what's wrong today?

Guillermo: Well, I went to the doctor and paid a lot of money. In Cuba, doctors are free.

29.4B 层次结构

一般说来,文章(包括讲稿等)中都是用的层次结构,其内容往往包含几个不同的层次,层次之间可能是平行关系,也可能是主次关系。

1) 描写中的层次好象电影中一组相互关联的镜头。例如:

Almost thirty-five years have passed since that day, but I see him still, a thin, pale boy, with steel-rimmed spectacles and sandy hair parted in the middle. His mother had evidently dressed him in what she hoped would be the most respectable of outfits. He wore a brown tweed suit, with a brown cardigan underneath, neatly buttoned. His name was George Grass.

这是一段人物素描：先是总的印象，接着刻绘面部特征，然后写穿着打扮。整段描写着墨不多，然而轮廓清晰，读时如见其人。又如：

It was the coldest winter for forty-five years. Villages in the English countryside were cut off by the snow and the Thames froze over. One day in January the Glasgow-London train arrived at Euston twenty-four hours late. The snow and the blackout combined to make motoring perilous; road accidents doubled, and people told jokes about how it was more risky to drive an Austin Seven along Piccadilly at night than to take a tank across the Siegfried Line.

For several days snow fell heavily in the south of England. It lay many inches thick on the ground. The roofs of houses were white; walking through the streets was difficult; running was dangerous. But the streets of London were warmer than those in the country, and there was no snow in London.

这两段写雪景的文章颇有相似之处：开头都是雪的惊人来势，接着正面描绘冰天雪地的情景，以及冰雪给行人车辆带来的困难和危险；段末均以比较句作反衬。整段描写层层紧扣，生动逼真，给人如临其境之感。

2) “主题句 + 辅助语”构成的段落层次分明，常见于说明道理、发表议论以及某些叙述文体中。例如：

The hero as made in America is a man who has the power and yet does not abuse it; he is the practical demonstration of romantic democracy. Washington is most sublime because, after winning our freedom, he refus-

ed a crown, military dictatorship, and every personal reward. Lee is grandest because he did what he thought was his duty, failed under heartbreaking odds, and then with gentleness did his best to repair all hate and malice. Lincoln is most appealing because, in the conduct of that same desperate war which gave him the power of a czar, he never forgot his love for the common people of North and South. (Dixon Wecter, *The Hero in America*)

If we try to recall Boris Karloff's face as the monster in the film of *Frankenstein* (1931), most of us probably think of the seams holding the pieces together, and if we cannot recall other details we assume that the face evokes horror. But when we actually look at a picture of the face rather than recall a memory of it, we are perhaps more impressed by the high, steep forehead (a feature often associated with intelligence,) by the darkness surrounding the eyes (often associated with physical or spiritual weariness), the gaunt cheeks and the thin lips slightly turned down at the corners (associated with deprivation or restraint). The monster's face is of course in some ways shocking, but probably our chief impression as we look at it is that this is not the face of one who caused suffering but of one who himself is heroically undergoing suffering.

上述第一段的主题句在开头，第二段的主题句在结尾，前者由概述到分述，或者说由一般到具体；后一段相反，是在分述的基础上加以概括，即由具体到一般。这两段文章中，既有主题句

与辅助语之间的大层次，还有辅助语中间的小层次，如第一段中的三个实例(有三个人名)，第二段中的三种表情特征(带三个括号)不仅意义上而且形式上也层次分明。

29.5 话语分析与文章写作

话语分析与文章写作之间存在密切的关系：话语分析中涉及的句间衔接手段，不仅一般地适用，而且常常被实际运用到文章的段落之间；另一方面，文章的结构安排也往往可以看作是话语结构(主要指层次结构)的扩展形式。例如：

The process of gaining or losing weight can be explained by comparing your body to your car. Both run on fuel, food for your body and gasoline for your car. Both convert that fuel, first into heat, then energy, some of which is used to do work, and some emitted as waste. And just as your car uses more energy when the engine is racing than when it is idling, so does your body use more energy when you are working hard than when you are resting.

For the purpose of this comparison, however, there is one significant difference between them. Your car cannot store fuel by turning it into something else; all gasoline not used remains as gasoline. But your body stores excess fuel as fat. When the gas tank is empty, the car won't run; but your body can burn fat to provide more energy:

Therefore, if you want to gain weight, you must do either of two things: eat more calories (units of heat, therefore energy), or use less through inactivity. If you want to lose weight, you do the reverse: decrease

your input of calories or increase the amount of energy you spend. There is no other way. Gaining or losing weight is always relation between intake and output of potential energy.

这篇文章包括三个自然段落，前两段分述，第三段概括，总体上相当于“辅助语 + 主题句”的层次结构。如再进一步分析一下，段落之间又应用了句间的种种衔接手段，包括运用连接性词语(如 however, therefore)，照应词项(如 this) 比较(如 And just as..., so...; ... difference ...), 替代(如 them)，词汇选用(如重复 purpose, weight) 等。

让我们再读两篇描述性的作品。

一篇是一个学生的习作：

The thick, heavy smoke, that could be seen for miles, filled the blue July sky. Firemen frantically battled the blaze that engulfed Hempstead High School, while a crowd of people sadly looked on. Eyes slowly filled up with tears as the reality of having no school to go to started to sink in.

Students that had once downed everything that the high school stood for and did, began to realize how much they cared for their school. But it was too late, it was going up in smoke.

另一篇出自职业作家之手：

We were on the porch only a short time when I heard a lot of hollering coming from toward the field. The hollering and crying got louder and louder. I could hear Mama's voice over all the rest. It seemed like all the people in the field were running to our house. I

ran to the edge of the porch to watch them top the hill. Daddy was leading the running crowd and Mama was right behind him.

“Lord have mercy, my children is in that house!” Mama was screaming. “Hurry, Diddly!” she cried to Daddy. I turned around and saw big clouds of smoke booming out of the front door and shooting out of cracks everywhere. “There, Essie Mae is on the porch,” Mama said. “Hurry, Diddly! Get Adline outta that house!” I looked back at Adline. I couldn’t hardly see her for the smoke.

George Lee was standing in the yard like he didn’t know what to do. As Mama then got closer, he ran into the house. My first thought was that he would be burned up. I’d often hoped he would get killed, but I guess I didn’t really want him to die after all. I ran inside after him but he came running out again, knocking me down as he passed and leaving me lying face down in the burning room. I jumped up quickly and scrambled out after him. He had the water bucket in his hands. I thought he was going to try to put out the fire. Instead he placed the bucket on the edge of the porch and picked up Adline in his arms.

Moments later Daddy was on the porch. He ran straight into the burning house with three other men right behind him. They opened the large wooden windows to let some of the smoke out and began ripping the paper from the walls before the wood caught on fire,

Mama and two other women raked it into the fireplace with sticks, broom handles, and anything else available. Everyone was coughing because of all the smoke.

(Anne Moody)

这两篇都是写房子着火。前一篇文笔流畅，层次清楚，写得有景有情，但概念化的叙述较多，只能算作是一个粗线条的记事段落，而后一篇则是细腻逼真的描写文章。从该文的四个段落，我们可以看到四个生动的连续画面。文中有远景，有近景，有群众场面，有特写镜头，作家象位熟练的放映师那样让那扣人心弦的场面一幕幕展现在我们眼前。

上述比较告诉我们，写好段落是写好文章的起点，当然搞好用词造句又是整个写作的基本功。过去杰克·伦敦笔下的马丁·伊登从学语法开始成为作家，我们今天研究语法，也应当与话语分析及文章写作联系起来。



索 引

- a, an 3.4
- able 9.2B
- a good/great + amount/deal/etc. of 2.4E, 3.2A
- a few, few. 3.2B4
- a little, little 3.2B4
- a lot of, lots of 3.2A
- action verbs 4.3A
- active voice 10.1
- adjective 12,13,14
 - comparison of 14
 - formation of 13.2
 - as headword in an NP 13.3C
 - dynamic use of 13.3
 - stative use of 13.3
- adjective clause 18
 - restrictive & non-restrictive 18.2
 - choice of relatives 18.3
 - relative adverbs 18.4
 - interpretation of 18.5
- adjunct 12.5,19.2
- adverb 12,13,14
 - formation 13.2B
 - with same form as adjectives 13.2C
 - position of 13.4

comparison of 14
meaning of 13.4D
adverb clause 19
adjunct 19.2
disjunct 19.3
conjunct 19.4
omission 26.3B4
after 7.4B2, 8.4B3, 15.4C3
all 3.2, 3.3, 18.2B
always 7.3B3
American English 28.3
and 16.2
another 3.3
any 3.2 3.3 3.5, 18.2B
apposition 17.5, 22.2A2
articles 3.2A, 3.3A, 3.4, 18.2B1
as 18.3C, 19.2C 19.3A, 20.3F 7.3C3, 16.2C
as if, as though 11.3B
aspects of the verb 5.1, 7
attribute 1.4A, 12.2C1, 12.3A, 12.4
attributive clause 18, 22.3
auxiliary verbs 9
because 16.5
before 7.4C2, 8.4B3, 15.4C4, 15.4A2
be going to 6.2B
be(about)to 6.2C
both 3.2, 3.3A, 16.2B
British English 28.3

but 16.3, 15.2A1, 20.3C
can 11.5C, 25.3B
case 2.3
central determiners 3.3
clause 1.4B, 16.10
 nominal clause 17
 adjective clause 18
 adverb clause 19
 non-finite clauses 20—22
collective nouns 2.4C3, 28.3B4
coherence 29.3
common gender 2.2
comparative degree 14
compound sentence 16
complex sentence 16, 17, 18, 19
conditionals 11.5
conjuncts 12.5A, 19
co-ordinators 16
continuous aspect 7
countable nouns 2.4
dare 9.2B, 9.3B
degrees of comparison 14
determiners 2.1, 3, 18.2B
direct speech & indirect speech 8.7C, 17.6A
discourse analysis 29
disjunct 12.5A, 19
ditransitive verb 1.2, 10.2C
do 9.2, 20.3B, 26.2B, 26.3A

double genitive 2.3D
dynamic use & stative use of the verb 4.3
each 3.2, 3.3
ed participle 20-22
 used as noun, adjective or adverb 20.2B
 functions in a sentence 20.5
 semantic analysis 21.4
 transformed into attributive clause 22.3B
 transformed into adverbial clause 22.4A2, 22.4C2
 transformed into compound clause 22.5
either 3.2, 3.3
elder, eldest 14.2B
ellipsis 22, 26, 29.3C
end-position adverbs 13.4
every 3.2
except 17.3A3, 20.3C, 27.3B
farther, farthest 14.2B
few 3.2A, 3.2B4, 3.3B
finite verbs 4.2A
for 16.5
foreign plurals of the noun 2.4D
forget 21.3
formal English 27.4
forms of the verb 4.2B
formal subject "it" 20.4A, 27.3B
frequency, adverbials of 5.2C
from (used with another preposition) 15.4A3
front-position adverb 13.4

further, furthest 14.2B
future 5.1, 6, 8.6
gender of the noun 2.2
genitive case 2.3
get+ -ed (passive) 10.2B
(be) going to 6.2B
hardly, scarcely 27.2C
have 9.4A, 21.4C
if 11.5, 17.1, 17.6B (contrast with "whether")
imperative 1.3D, 8.7C
implied negative 25.4B
indefinite article 3.4
indefinite determiners 2.3D
indirect speech 8.7C, 17.6A
infinitive 20-22
 feature of the verb 20.2A
 feature of the noun, adjective & adverb 20.2B
 functions in the sentence 20.3
 without "to" 20.3B-D
 logical subject of 21.2A
 combination with the verb 21.3A, 21.3C
 semantic analysis 21.3D
 transformed into finite clauses 22
 agreement in person, number & tenses 22.2A, 22.6B
inflections of the verb 4.2B
informal English (spoken English) 27.4
-ing participle 20-22
 features of the verb 20.2A

features of the noun, adjective & adverb 20.2B
functions in the sentence 20.4
logical subject of 21.2A
combination with the verb 21.3B, 21.3C
semantic analysis 21.3D
transformed into finite clauses 22
agreement in person, number & tenses 22.2A 22.6B
interrogative sentences 1.3B
intransitive verbs 4.2A
inversion 19.2B, 27.2C, 28.4B
irregular verbs 4.2B
it 27.3B, 20.4A
last 14.2B
latest 14.2B
latter 14.2B
less 14.2B
like 11.3C, 19.2C3, 21.3C, 21.4C3
little 14.2B
main clause 16.10
many 14.2B
may, might 9.2B, 9.3-4, 9.5A
mid-position adverbs 13.4
misrelated participle/unrelated participle 12.6B
need 9.3B
negative 1.3A, 9.3, 25, 27.2C4, 28.4B2
neither 3.2A-B, 3.3A, 16.6-7, 25.2B3
non-defining clause / non-restrictive clause 18.2-4
non-finite verbs 4.2A, (see "infinitive", "-ing participle,"

“-ed participle”)
nor 16.6
not 1.3A, 25, 16.2A2
noun clause 17
number in the noun
of genitive 2.3C
older,oldest 14.2B
parts of speech 1.5
passive 1.3C, 10, 28.4B3
perfect aspect 5.1, 7.4, 8.3, 8.4, 8.6B2
phrasal verbs 10.2D, 13.2B
possessive case (of the noun) 2.3
post determiners 3.3
post modifiers to nouns 12.3B
postponement 27.3B
pre-determiners 3.3
pre-modifiers to nouns 12.3A
prepositional phrase 12.3B5, 15.2, 15.2,27.2C4
present tense, simple 6, 8.2A-B, 8.5
progressive aspect 7.3, 8.2, 8.4
reference 29.3B
regular verbs 4.2B
relative adverbs 16.10
relative clause / adjective clause 18
relative pronouns 16.10
remember 21.3, 22.2B, 4.3A4
reported speech (see indirect spech)
restrictive and non-restrictive modifiers 12.4

s genitive 2.3C
sentence patterns 1.2, 24.2A
separation 27.3B 12.6A2
series 2.4E (NOTE)
shall, will 6.2A, 6.3, 8.5, 9.2B, 9.3, 9.4B2, 9.5, 11.5B
11.5C, 22.6B
should, would 6.4, 9.2B, 9.4B2, 9.5, 11.3C, 9.3, 11.4,
11.5A, 11.5C
simple past tense 5.1, 5.3, 8.3, 8.4, 22.2A
simple present tense 5.1, 5.2, 6.2B, 8.2, 8.5, 22.2A
simple sentence 16.9A
since 7.4B3
singular & plural forms of the noun 2.4A
so 16.5, 22.4C
subjunctive mood 11
subordinate clauses 17-19
subordinators 16.10
substitution 26, 29.3C
such 22.4C, 3.3B
superlative degree 14
tag question 1.3B4, 23
tenses and aspects of the verb 5-8, 9.4C, 11.5, 22.6B
that 17, 18.3
the 3.4, 14.3C
theme 27.2A
themantic fronting 27.2B
till 19.2B
transformations

of basic sentence patterns 1.3
of tenses in the complex sentence 8.7B
from affirmative to negative 1.3, 9.3, 25
from active to passive 10
in the conditional sentence 11.5C2
in a compound sentence 16.7
from non-finite to finite clauses 22
in "there" patterns 24.2A, 24.3C
in "it" patterns 24.4
 between "there" and "it" 24.5
transition words and phrases 29.3A
transitive verbs 4.2A
try (followed by the infinitive or -ing form) 21.3D
unit nouns 2.4E
until (see till)
used to 6.4B4, 9.3B
varieties 28.2A
verbs, kinds of 4.2A
verb phrase (VP) 1.1, 1.5, 4.1
voice 10
when 7.3C3, 7.4B4
whether 17.1, 17.6B (contrast with "if")
why 7.4B4
will (see shall)
wish 8.6A, 11.3A, 21.4C3
would (see should)
would rather ('d rather) 5.3B3, 8.6A, 11.3A4
zero determiner 3.2C

编 后 记

本书是在我系顾绍熏教授的关怀和指导下编写的，也得到校内外许多同志的关心指点，书稿作教材试用时得到同学们的积极支持帮助，还有张芬千等同志帮助抄稿时也提出不少好的意见。在此谨向他们表示衷心的感谢。

国内外出版的新语法书不少，体系也不一样。我在编写过程中尽量参考了各方面有关著述，并试图从体系的安排和说明上根据现代英语的特点，将“传统体系”和“新体系”联系起来，以适合中国学生学习英语的需要。对于某些有争议的问题，如“时态”、“语气”等，或扼要介绍不同观点，或直接说明本人看法，以期引起进一步的探讨。当然，本书的着重点不在理论，而在实践，力图将语法中的结构、意义和使用结合起来。

最后，我诚恳希望各位读者发现书中缺点错误时加以批评指正。

编 者

一九八四年国庆前夕
于上海外国语学院英语系

[General Information]

书名=分析英语语法

作者=黄任编著

页数=418

SS号=10314078

出版日期=1988年02月第1版